

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

	Page
<b>SECTION I – INTRODUCTION</b>	
<b>A. Introduction</b> .....	1
Major Revisions from Previous Manuals .....	4
<b>B. Medical Certification</b> .....	8
Excerpt from U.S. Standard Certificate of Death .....	9
U.S. Standard Certificate of Death .....	10
<b>SECTION II – GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS</b>	
<b>A. Introduction</b> .....	13
1. Excessive Codes .....	13
2. Created Codes .....	15
3. “Dagger and asterisk” codes .....	26
<b>B. General coding concept</b> .....	27
1. Definitions and types of diagnostic entities .....	27
a. One-term entity .....	27
b. Multiple one-term entity .....	29
c. Adjectival modifier reported with multiple conditions .....	31
2. Parenthetical entries .....	32
3. Special diagnostic entities .....	33
4. Plural form of disease .....	34
5. Implied “disease” .....	34
6. Non-traumatic conditions .....	34
7. Drug dependent, drug dependency .....	35
<b>C. Format</b> .....	36
1. “Due to” relationships involving more than four causally related conditions .....	36
2. Connecting terms .....	36
a. “Due to” written in or implied .....	36
b. Not indicating a “due to” relationship .....	39
3. Condition entered above line I(a) .....	39
4. Condition reported between lines in Part I .....	40
5. Condition reported as due to I(a), I(b), or I(c) .....	41
6. Conditions reported in Part II .....	42
7. Deletion of “due to” on the death certificate .....	42
8. Deletion of “Part II” on death certificate .....	43
9. Numbering of causes reported in Part I .....	44
10. Punctuation marks .....	45
11. Conditions in the duration box .....	47

**Instruction Manual Part 2b**  
**Table of Contents (continued)**

---

<b>D. Doubtful diagnosis</b> .....	48
1. Doubtful qualifying expression.....	48
2. Interpretation of “either...or...” .....	49
<b>E. Conditions specified as “healed” or “history of”</b> .....	52
<b>F. Coding entries such as “same,” “ditto (’),” “as above”</b> .....	53
<b>G. Conditions qualified by “postmortem,” “rule out,”</b> <b>“ruled out,” “r/o”</b> .....	54
<b>H. Nonindexed and illegible entries</b> .....	55
1. Terms that are not indexed.....	55
2. Illegible entries .....	55
<b>I. Coding one-character reject codes</b> .....	56
1. Reject code 1-5 – Inconsistent duration.....	56
2. Reject code 9 – More than four “due to” statements .....	58
<b>J. Inclusion of additional information (AI) to mortality</b> <b>source documents</b> .....	59
<b>K. Amended certificates</b> .....	62
<b>L. Effect of age of decedent on classification</b> .....	63
1. NEWBORN OR NEONATAL means less than 28 days of age at the time of death .....	63
2. INFANT OR INFANTILE means less than 1 year of age at the time of death .....	63
3. CHILD or CHILDHOOD means less than 18 years of age at the time of death .....	64
4. Congenital anomalies (Q00-Q99) .....	64
a. Less than 28 days .....	64
b. Less than 1 year .....	64
5. Congenital syphilis.....	65
6. Age limitation.....	66
<b>M. Sex limitations</b> .....	68
<b>N. Effect of duration on assignment of codes</b> .....	69
1. Qualifying conditions as acute or chronic .....	69
2. Subacute .....	70
3. Exacerbation.....	71
4. Acute and chronic .....	71
5. Qualifying conditions as congenital or acquired .....	72
6. Two conditions with one duration .....	72
7. Conflict in durations.....	73
8. Span of dates .....	73

**Instruction Manual Part 2b**  
**Table of Contents (continued)**

---

<b>O. Relating and modifying conditions.....</b>	<b>74</b>
1. Implied site of disease.....	74
a. General instructions for implied site of a disease.....	74
b. Relating specific categories .....	77
c. Exceptions to relating and modifying instructions .....	79
2. Coding conditions classified to injuries as disease conditions .....	81
<b>SECTION III – INTENT OF CERTIFIER.....</b>	<b>85</b>
1. Other and unspecified gastroenteritis and colitis of unspecified origin (A090) .....	86
2. Spinal Abscess (A180).....	87
3. Charcot’s Arthropathy (A521).....	88
4. General Paresis (A521) .....	89
5. Viral Hepatitis (B161, B169, B171-B178).....	91
6. Organisms and Infection NOS (B99) .....	92
7. Erythremia (C940) .....	98
8. Polycythemia (D45).....	99
9. Hemolytic Anemia (D589) .....	100
10. Sideroblastic Anemia (D643) .....	101
11. Hemorrhagic Purpura NOS (D693) .....	102
12. Thrombocytopenia (D696) .....	103
13. Hyperparathyroidism (E213) .....	105
14. Hyperaldosteronism (E269).....	106
15. Lactase Deficiency (E730).....	107
16. Korsakov’s Disease, Psychosis, or Syndrome (F106).....	108
17. Drug Use NOS - Named Drug Use (F11-F16, F18-F19) .....	109
18. Tobacco Use (F179).....	112
19. Psychotic Episode NOS (F239).....	113
20. Psychosis (any F29) .....	114
21. Dissociative Disorder (F449).....	115
22. Personality Disorder (F609), Personality Change (Enduring) (F629)..	116
23. Mental Disorder (any F99) .....	117
24. Parkinson’s Disease (G20).....	118
25. Cerebral Sclerosis (G379).....	119
26. Myopathy (G729).....	120
27. Brain Damage, child (G809).....	121
28. Paralysis (any G81, G82, or G83 excluding senile paralysis).....	122
29. Cataract (H269).....	123
30. Varices NOS and Bleeding Varices (I839).....	124

**Instruction Manual Part 2b**  
**Table of Contents (continued)**

---

31. Pneumoconiosis (J64) .....	125
32. Alveolar Hemorrhage (Diffused) (K088) .....	126
33. Diaphragmatic Hernia in K44.- .....	127
34. Laennec's Cirrhosis NOS (K703).....	128
35. Biliary Cirrhosis NOS (K745) .....	129
36. Lupus Erythematosus (L930), Lupus (L930) .....	130
37. Gout (M109) .....	131
38. Polyarthrosis (M159) .....	132
39. Coxarthrosis (M169).....	133
40. Gonarthrosis (M179).....	134
41. Arthrosis (M199) .....	135
42. Kyphosis (M402) .....	136
43. Scoliosis (M419).....	137
44. Osteonecrosis (M879).....	138
45. Dysmenorrhea (N946) .....	139
46. Cesarean Delivery for Inertia Uterus (O622), Hypotonic Labor (0622), Hypotonic Uterus Dysfunction (O622), Inadequate Uterus Contraction (O622), Uterine Inertia during Labor (O622), .....	140
47. Brain Damage, newborn (P112) .....	141
48. Intracranial Nontraumatic Hemorrhage of Fetus and Newborn (P52).....	142
49. Septal Defect (atrial), (auricular), (heart), (ventricular) (Q210, Q211, Q212, Q219) .....	143
50. Hypoplasia or Dysplasia of Lung NOS (Q336).....	144
51. Injury (S000-T149) .....	145
52. Fracture (any site) (T142) .....	146
53. Starvation NOS (T730).....	148
54. Compartment Syndrome .....	149
<b>SECTION IV – CLASSIFICATION OF CERTAIN ICD CATEGORIES</b>	
<b>A. Neoplasms (C00-D48) .....</b>	<b>150</b>
A. Malignant Neoplasms (C00-C96).....	152
1. Neoplasms stated to be secondary .....	155
2. Malignant neoplasms with primary site indicated .....	155
3. Site specific neoplasms .....	157
4. Other morphological types of neoplasms .....	158

**Instruction Manual Part 2b**  
**Table of Contents (continued)**

---

5.	Independent (primary) sites .....	159
6.	Metastases .....	162
7.	Multiple sites .....	164
8.	Metastatic neoplasms .....	167
9.	Primary site unknown .....	178
10.	Implication of malignancy .....	180
11.	Sites with prefixes or imprecise definitions.....	181
12.	Malignant neoplasms described with “either/or” .....	181
13.	Mass or lesion with malignant neoplasms .....	182
<b>B.</b>	<b>Rheumatic Heart Diseases.....</b>	<b>183</b>
1.	Heart diseases considered to be described as rheumatic.....	183
2.	Distinguishing between active and chronic rheumatic heart disease .....	184
3.	Valvular diseases jointly reported.....	186
4.	Valvular diseases not indicated to be rheumatic.....	187
<b>C.</b>	<b>Pregnancy, Childbirth and the Puerperium (O00-O99) .....</b>	<b>190</b>
1.	General Information .....	190
2.	Pregnancy or childbirth without mention of complication .....	191
3.	Pregnancy with abortive outcome (O000-O089).....	192
4.	Other complications of pregnancy, childbirth and puerperium (O00-O99) .....	194
5.	Delivery reported with anesthetic death or anesthesia.....	196
6.	Operative delivery .....	197
<b>D.</b>	<b>Congenital Conditions .....</b>	<b>199</b>
<b>E.</b>	<b>Conditions of Early Infancy (P000-P969).....</b>	<b>201</b>
<b>F.</b>	<b>Sequela .....</b>	<b>203</b>
1.	B900-B909 Sequela of tuberculosis.....	204
2.	B91 Sequela of acute poliomyelitis .....	205
3.	B92 Sequela of leprosy .....	206
4.	B940 Sequela of trachoma .....	206
5.	B941 Sequela of viral encephalitis.....	207
6.	B942 Sequela of viral hepatitis .....	208
7.	B948 Sequela of other specified infectious and parasitic diseases B949 Sequela of unspecified infectious and parasitic diseases ....	208
8.	E640-E649 Sequela of malnutrition and other nutritional deficiencies.....	209
9.	E68 Sequela of hyperalimentation .....	210

10. G09 Sequela of inflammatory diseases of central nervous system.....	210
11. I690-I698 Sequela of cerebrovascular disease .....	211
12. O97 Sequela of direct obstetric cause.....	212
<b>G. Ill-Defined and Unknown Causes.....</b>	<b>213</b>
1. Sudden infant death syndrome (R95).....	213
2. Other sudden death and other unspecified cause (R960-R961, R98-R99).....	213
3. Unknown cause (R97).....	216

**SECTION V –EFFECTS OF EXTERNAL CAUSE OF INJURY AND EXTERNAL CAUSES OF INJURY AND POISONING**

<b>A. External Cause Code (E-Code) Concept .....</b>	<b>218</b>
1. Use of Index .....	219
2. Use of Tabular List.....	219
3. Place of occurrence of external cause.....	220
4. Manner of death (Item 37) on death certificate .....	220
5. Nature of injury and external cause code lists .....	222
<b>B. Placement of nature of injury and external cause codes.....</b>	<b>226</b>
<b>C. Use of ampersand.....</b>	<b>228</b>
<b>D. Certifications with mention of nature of injury and without mention of external cause .....</b>	<b>231</b>
<b>E. Conditions qualified as traumatic .....</b>	<b>234</b>
<b>F. Assumption of nature of injury code .....</b>	<b>240</b>
<b>G. Multiple injuries (T00-T07) .....</b>	<b>242</b>
<b>H. Burns: Multiple degrees of burns/percentage of body surface burned .....</b>	<b>244</b>
<b>I. Specified types and sites of injuries.....</b>	<b>246</b>
<b>J. Transportation accidents (V01-V99).....</b>	<b>247</b>
1. Use of Index and Tabular List.....	248
2. Classifying accidents as traffic or nontraffic .....	249
3. Status of victim .....	250
4. Coding categories V01-V89.....	251
5. Additional examples.....	253
6. Occupant of special all-terrain or other motor vehicle designed primarily for off-road use, injured in transport accident (V86) ....	254

**Instruction Manual Part 2b**  
**Table of Contents (continued)**

---

7.	Traffic accident of specified type but victim's mode of transport unknown (V87), Nontraffic accident of specified type but victim's mode of transport unknown (V88).....	255
8.	Water transport accidents (V90-V94).....	256
9.	Air and space transport accidents (V95-V97).....	256
10.	Miscellaneous coding instructions (V01-V99).....	257
<b>K.</b>	<b>Falls</b> .....	260
1.	Other fall on same level (W18).....	260
2.	Unspecified fall (W19).....	260
<b>L.</b>	<b>Natural and environmental factors</b> .....	261
1.	Lightning .....	261
2.	Exposure, cold exposure and hypothermia .....	261
<b>M.</b>	<b>Firearms and firearm injuries</b> .....	263
1.	Coding specific types of firearms .....	263
2.	External cause code .....	264
3.	Nature of injury code .....	265
4.	Other firearm examples.....	266
<b>N.</b>	<b>Child abuse, battering and other maltreatment (Y070-Y079)</b> .....	267
<b>O.</b>	<b>Guides for differentiating between effects of external causes classifiable to Chapters I – XVIII and Chapter XIX</b> .....	269
<b>P.</b>	<b>Threats to breathing</b> .....	271
Table 1.	Drowning and submersion .....	272
Table 2.	Hanging and mechanical strangulation (by external means).....	274
Table 3.	Fires (includes burns, gases, fumes in association with burns and fires).....	278
Table 4.	Ingestion, inhalation of gases, fumes, vapors (without fires, burns).....	282
Table 5.	Compression chest, crushed chest by external means .....	284
Table 6.	Aspiration NOS, ingestion NOS, inhalation NOS, or aspiration, ingestion, inhalation of substances or objects (W78, W79, W80) .....	286
<b>Q.</b>	<b>Poisoning</b> .....	292
1.	Poisoning by substances other than drugs .....	292
a.	Carbon monoxide poisoning .....	293
b.	Inhalation and sniffing sprays and aerosol substances .....	294

**Instruction Manual Part 2b**  
**Table of Contents (continued)**

---

c. Intoxication by certain substances or toxic poisoning due to disease .....	294
d. Condition qualified as “toxic” with poisoning reported .....	295
2. Poisoning by drugs .....	296
3. Percentage of drug(s) in blood .....	300
4. Poisoning by alcohol and drugs .....	301
5. Intoxication (acute) NOS .....	303
<b>R. Complications of medical and surgical care (Y40-Y84).....</b>	<b>304</b>
1. Drugs, medicaments, and biological substances causing adverse effects in therapeutic use (Y40-Y59).....	306
2. Surgical procedures as the cause of abnormal reaction of the patient or later complication (Y83) .....	316
a. Complications of surgical procedures.....	316
b. Condition necessitating surgery .....	330
c. Conditions qualified as postoperative.....	336
d. Complication as first entry on lowest used line in Part I.....	342
e. Ill-defined condition as first entry on lowest used line in Part I.....	346
f. Relating condition for which surgery was performed to the site of the surgery.....	356
g. Complications of amputation and amputation stump .....	358
3. Complications of medical procedures other than surgical (Y84) .....	359
4. Complications of procedures involving administration of drugs, radiation, and instruments .....	365
5. Complications of radiation during medical care (Y842) .....	367
6. Misadventures to patients during surgical and medical care (Y60-Y69) .....	370
<b>S. Sequela of injuries, poisonings, and other consequences of external causes .....</b>	<b>373</b>
1. Sequela of injuries, poisoning, and other consequences of external causes (T900-T983).....	373
2. Sequela of external causes (Y850-Y899) .....	375

<b>APPENDIX A - STANDARD ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS .....</b>	<b>379</b>
<b>APPENDIX B - SYNONYMOUS SITES/TERMS .....</b>	<b>397</b>
<b>APPENDIX C - GEOGRAPHIC CODES .....</b>	<b>398</b>
<b>APPENDIX D - CODE FOR PLACE OF OCCURRENCE.....</b>	<b>399</b>
<b>APPENDIX E - ACTIVITY CODES .....</b>	<b>408</b>
<b>APPENDIX F - INVALID AND SUBSTITUTE CODES .....</b>	<b>410</b>
<b>APPENDIX G - CODES FOR SPECIAL PURPOSES (U00-U99).....</b>	<b>411</b>
1. Terrorism Classification (*U01-*U03).....	411
2. Severe Acute Respiratory Syndrome [SARS] (U04) .....	422
<b>APPENDIX H - ADDITIONAL DRUG EXAMPLES .....</b>	<b>423</b>
<b>INDEX.....</b>	<b>431</b>



# INSTRUCTIONS FOR CLASSIFYING MULTIPLE CAUSES OF DEATH, 2010

## SECTION I

## Introduction

---

### A. INTRODUCTION

This manual provides instructions to mortality medical coders and nosologists for coding multiple causes of death from death certificates filed in the states. These mortality coding instructions are used by both the State vital statistics programs and the National Center for Health Statistics (NCHS), which is the Federal agency responsible for the compilation of U.S. statistics on causes of death. NCHS is part of the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention.

In coding causes of death, NCHS adheres to the World Health Organization Nomenclature Regulations specified in the most recent revision of the International Statistical Classification of Diseases and Related Health Problems (ICD). NCHS also uses the ICD international rules for selecting the underlying cause of death for primary mortality tabulation in accordance with the international rules.

Beginning with deaths occurring in 1999, the Tenth Revision of the ICD (ICD-10) is being used for coding and classifying causes of death. This revision of the Classification is published by the World Health Organization (WHO) and consists of three volumes. Volume 1 contains a list of three-character categories, the tabular list of inclusions, and the four-character subcategories. The supplementary Z code appears in Volume 1 but is not used for classifying mortality data. Optional fifth characters are provided for certain categories and an optional independent four-character coding system is provided to classify histological varieties of neoplasm, prefixed by the letter M (for morphology) and followed by a fifth character indicating behavior. These optional codes, except those for place of occurrence of external cause and activity code related to external cause codes, are not used in NCHS. The place code and activity code are used as supplementary codes rather than as additional characters. Volume 2 includes the international rules and notes for use in classifying and tabulating underlying cause-of-death data. Volume 3 is an alphabetical index containing a comprehensive list of terms for use in coding. Copies of these volumes may be purchased in hard-copy or on diskette from the following address:

WHO Publications Center  
49 Sheridan Avenue  
Albany, New York 12210  
Tel. 518-436-9686

# INSTRUCTIONS FOR CLASSIFYING MULTIPLE CAUSES OF DEATH, 2010

## SECTION I

## Introduction

---

NCHS has prepared an updated version of Volume 1 and Volume 3 to be used for both underlying and multiple cause-of-death coding. The major purpose of the updated version is to provide a single published source of code assignments including terms not indexed in Volume 3 of ICD-10. NCHS has included all nonindexed terms encountered in the coding of deaths during 1979-1994, under the Ninth Revision of the International Classification of Diseases (ICD-9). With the availability of the updated Volumes 1 and 3, NCHS will discontinue publishing the Part 2e manual, Nonindexed Terms, Standard Abbreviations, and State Geographic Codes Used in Mortality Data Classification, which was first published in 1983. Due to copyright considerations, the updated Volumes 1 and 3 may not be reproduced for distribution outside of NCHS and State vital statistics agencies.

The basic purpose of this manual is to document concepts and instructions for coding multiple causes of death, which were developed by NCHS for use with the Eighth Revision of the ICD adapted for use in the United States (ICDA-8), and which were updated to ICD-9, and subsequently to ICD-10. The coding concepts are generally consistent with provisions of ICD-10. Thus, this manual should be used with ICD-10, Volumes 1 and 3 as updated by NCHS. The list of abbreviations used in medical terminology (Appendix A), the list of synonymous sites (Appendix B), and the list of geographic codes (Appendix C) are included in this publication.

NCHS does not use the “dagger and asterisk” system which WHO introduced in ICD-9 and continued in ICD-10. For some medical conditions, this system provides two codes, which distinguish between the etiology or underlying disease process and the manifestation or complication for selected conditions. The etiology or underlying disease codes is denoted with a dagger (†) and the manifestation or complication code by an asterisk (\*) following the code. For example, Coxsackie myocarditis has a code (B33.2†) marked with a dagger in the chapter for infectious and parasitic diseases and a different code (I41.1\*) marked with an asterisk in the chapter for diseases of the circulatory system. Similarly, diabetic nephropathy has a dagger code (E14.2 †) in the chapter relating to endocrine disease and an asterisk code (N08.3\*) in the genitourinary system chapter. Under ICD-9, limited use was made of the asterisk codes in classifying mortality data for data years 1979-1982. Effective July 1982 the use of asterisk codes in mortality coding was discontinued and will not be used in the 10<sup>th</sup> revision for mortality coding. NCHS assigns only the dagger code to such conditions.

# INSTRUCTIONS FOR CLASSIFYING MULTIPLE CAUSES OF DEATH, 2010

## SECTION I

## Introduction

---

The multiple cause-of-death codes are used as inputs to the ACME program (Automated Classification of Medical Entities) developed by NCHS to automatically select the underlying cause of death, and the TRANSAX program (Translation of Axes) used to produce multiple cause-of-death statistics, beginning with deaths occurring in 1968. As inputs, the computer programs require codes for each condition reported on the death certificate, usually in the order in which the information is recorded.

The outputs of the ACME program are the traditional underlying cause-of-death codes selected according to the selection and modification rules of the Classification, the same cause that would be selected using manual underlying cause-of-death coding instructions specified in Instruction Manual Part 2a. Thus, a single cause is associated with each decedent.

Using the same input codes, the TRANSAX program generates two sets of outputs: “entity-axis” codes that reflect the placement of each condition on the certificate for each decedent; and “record-axis” codes that, where appropriate, link two or more diagnostic conditions to form composite codes that are classifiable to a single code, according to the provisions of the Classification. Record axis codes are preferred for multiple cause tabulation to better convey the intent of the certifier, and to eliminate redundant cause-of-death information (see Instruction Manual Part 2f).

# INSTRUCTIONS FOR CLASSIFYING MULTIPLE CAUSES OF DEATH, 2010

## SECTION I

## Introduction

---

### Major revisions from previous manuals

1. Corrections have been made to clarify instructions, spelling, and format throughout the manual. These changes are not specifically noted.
2. Section II, Part A, 2. Created Codes, The created codes involving bilateral or multiple cerebrovascular diseases have been edited to add the modifier “or similar term”. A foot note has been added to each page that includes similar terms or modifiers .
3. Section II, Part B, General coding concept, 1, b. Added the word Exception: following the third example explanation.
4. Section II, Part B, General coding concept 1, b. (2) Separated instruction # (2) into (a), (b), (c) and placed examples following specific part of instruction it demonstrates. Example (c) changed and an additional statement was added.
5. Section II, Part B, General coding concept, Added instruction # 6. Non-traumatic conditions, with instruction and example for coding conditions usually traumatic but qualified non-traumatic.
6. Section II, Part B, General coding concept, Added instruction # 7. instruction for coding drug dependent conditions.
7. Section II, Part C, Format, 10. Added instruction d. for coding conditions indexed together yet separated by a comma.
8. Section II, Part D, Doubtful diagnosis, 2. c. Following 2<sup>nd</sup> example and explanation a Note was added with instructions and examples for coding embolism and thrombosis qualified by “either... or “
9. Section II, Part L, Effect of age of decedent on classification, 2. Example was changed to code infantile osteomalacia.
10. Section II, Part O, Relating and modifying conditions, 1., b. (8) Instruction and example added to apply general instructions for relating and modifying Vasculitis NOS
11. Section II, Part O, Relating and modifying conditions, 1., c. (1) Added vascular disease NOS to list of terms that are not related.
12. Section II, Part O, Relating and modifying conditions, 2., a. Instruction was edited and bullets were added.
13. Section III, Intent of Certifier, Re-numbered each Intent of Certifier beginning with # 0 changing it to # 1.

# INSTRUCTIONS FOR CLASSIFYING MULTIPLE CAUSES OF DEATH, 2010

## SECTION I

## Introduction

---

14. Section III, Intent of Certifier, # 2. Deleted codes A190, A180, B902.
15. Section III, Intent of Certifier, # 6 Changed parovirus to parvovirus in middle column of 1<sup>st</sup> chart.
16. Section III, Intent of Certifier, # 6. a., (1) (a) Edited instruction to read: Is preceded or followed by.
17. Section III, Intent of Certifier, # 6. h. A new instruction and examples for coding one infectious condition modified by more than one organism was added as letter h. The current letter h instruction was moved down as letter i.
18. Section III, Intent of Certifier, # 46 deleted “Cervical Dystocia (O622)” from title of Intent of Certifier.
19. Section III Intent of Certifier Added a new # 54 Compartment Syndrome (T796).
20. Section IV Part C, Pregnancy, Childbirth, and the puerperium, C. 1. Added a new instruction following the 3 check boxes to use when age of decedent is greater than 54 years old.
21. Section IV Part E, Conditions of early infancy, E., 1. First instruction deleted and remaining instructions renumbered.
22. Section IV Part G, Ill-defined and unknown causes, 2., c.(4) Added a note following the Excludes and preceding the examples explaining when to code R99 only.
23. Section IV Part G, Ill-defined and unknown causes, 3. a. Corrected the numbers to reflect (1) (2).
24. Section V Part C, Use of ampersand, 1. c., Edited Exception # 1. and added three bullets to include nature of injury codes, medical and surgical care, other external causes.
25. Section V Part C, Use of ampersand, 1. c., Corrected last sentence of Exception # 2 to read as...since both exceptions (1) and (2) apply.
26. Section V Part C, Use of ampersand, 2. a. Added a Place code to 3<sup>rd</sup> example.
27. Section V Part C, Use of ampersand, 2. b. Added a Place code to all examples.
28. Section V Part C, Use of ampersand, 2. b. First paragraph separated into 2 parts and a third part added to reference alcohol intoxication reported with exposure or hypothermia.
29. Section V Part E, Conditions qualified as traumatic, 2, a. Changed a. to 3.

# INSTRUCTIONS FOR CLASSIFYING MULTIPLE CAUSES OF DEATH, 2010

## SECTION I

## Introduction

---

30. Section V Part F, Assumption of nature of injury code, Added an exception 4. If a pathological fracture and an external event are reported, no assumption of a nature of injury code is required.
31. Section V Part L, Natural and environmental factors, 2. Added an example to clarify the ampersand placement when hypothermia is reported with alcohol.
32. Section V Part Q, Poisoning, 1.b. Exception, first sentence, changed code for glue sniffing to F181.
33. Section V Part R, 1.a. (3) Added “suicide” to 2<sup>nd</sup> bullet, third line following ”accident”.
34. Section V Part R, Complications of medical and surgical care, 2. a., (3) Added a note just before Step 6., do not apply surgery Step 6 when assigning a complication code for conditions classified to R00-R99.
35. Section V Part R, Complications of medical and surgical care, 2., b. Following (4) list of surgical procedures reported and the condition necessitating the surgery is not reported: Changed code for Choledochoduodenostomy to K839.
36. Section V Part R, 2., b., Condition necessitating surgery, added a second example following the paragraph and example that states Surgical procedure that indicates an organ or site with one related condition for which the surgery could have been performed.
37. Section V Part R, 3., a., Complications of medical procedures other than surgical, Step 2, deleted example and explanation following NOTE.
38. Section V, Part R, 6., Misadventures to patients during surgical and medical care, following the Indications of Misadventures chart, ... At end of 1<sup>st</sup> paragraph a sentence was added “Apply the instructions for Condition necessitating Surgery in Section V, R, 2, b.”
39. Section V, Part R, 6., Misadventures to patients during surgical and medical care, following the Indications of Misadventures chart...the second example, line (b) changed to Colostomy and codes to &Y60 &K639. Explanation added to show since the surgery indicates a disease of the colon, code this as reason for surgery.
40. Appendix A, added HCPS, hantavirus (cardio) pulmonary syndrome, hantavirus cardiopulmonary syndrome.
41. Appendix A, added HPS, hantavirus pulmonary syndrome.
42. Appendix A, added an additional meaning to RAD, rheumatoid arthritis disease. This was placed in the first position followed by radiation absorbed dose.
43. Appendix B, Title changed to Synonymous Sites / Terms.

# INSTRUCTIONS FOR CLASSIFYING MULTIPLE CAUSES OF DEATH, 2010

## SECTION I

## Introduction

---

44. Appendix B, Added in alphabetical order, Geriatric in left column, Senile in right column.
45. Appendix B, Larynx and vocal cords were switched and placed in alphabetical order. Additional synonymous sites of larynx were added. Larynx in left column, Epiglottis, glottis, subglottis, supraglottis, vocal cords in right column.
46. Appendix B, Edited entry for Pharynx-Throat. Nasopharynx, pharynx in left column, Throat in right column.
47. Appendix D, # 1 Residential Institution, added in alphabetical order. Detox Center and Mental Hospital.
48. Appendix D, # 8 Other specified places, added in alphabetical order, Balcony and Bus stop.
49. Appendix H, Additional Drug Examples, Two new drug examples were added as 14. and 15. Remainder of Appendix H was renumbered.
50. Appendix H Additional Drug Examples, # 20 Accident added to MOD block. MOD A was added. No change in codes or explanation was required.

Other manuals relating to coding causes of death are:

Part 2a, NCHS Instructions for Classifying the Underlying Cause of Death, 2010

Part 2c, ICD-10 ACME Decision Tables for Classifying the Underlying Causes of Death, 2010

Part 2s, SuperMICAR Data Entry Instruction, 2010

# INSTRUCTIONS FOR CLASSIFYING MULTIPLE CAUSES OF DEATH, 2010

## SECTION I

## Medical Certification

---

### B. MEDICAL CERTIFICATION

The U. S. Standard Certificate of Death provides spaces for the certifying physician, coroner, or medical examiner to record pertinent information concerning the diseases, morbid conditions, and injuries which either resulted in or contributed to death as well as the circumstances of the accident or violence which produced any such injuries. The medical certification portion of the death certificate includes items 32-44. It is designed to obtain the opinion of the certifier as to the relationship and relative significance of the causes, which he reports.

A cause of death is the morbid condition or disease process, abnormality, injury, or poisoning leading directly or indirectly to death. The underlying cause of death is the disease or injury, which initiated the train of morbid events leading directly or indirectly to death or the circumstances of the accident or violence, which produced the fatal injury. A death often results from the combined effect of two or more conditions. These conditions may be completely unrelated, arising independently of each other or they may be causally related to each other; that is, one cause may lead to another which in turn leads to a third cause, etc.

The order in which the certifier is requested to arrange the causes of death upon the certification form facilitates the selection of the **underlying cause** when two or more causes are reported. He is requested to report in Part I on line (a) the immediate cause of death and the antecedent conditions on lines (b), (c), and (d) which gave rise to the cause reported on I(a), **the underlying cause** being stated lowest in the sequence of events. However, no entry is necessary on I(b), I(c), or I(d) if the immediate cause of death, stated on I(a) describes completely the sequence of events. If the decedent had more than four causally related conditions relating to death, the certifier is requested to add lines (e), (f), etc., so all conditions related to the immediate cause of death are entered in Part I with only one condition to a line.

Any other significant condition which unfavorably influenced the course of the morbid process and thus contributed to the fatal outcome but not resulting in the underlying cause given in Part I is entered in Part II.

# INSTRUCTIONS FOR CLASSIFYING MULTIPLE CAUSES OF DEATH, 2010

## SECTION I

## Medical Certification

### EXCERPT FROM U.S. STANDARD CERTIFICATE OF DEATH (Rev.11/2003)

LOCAL FILE NO.		U.S. STANDARD CERTIFICATE OF DEATH				STATE FILE NO.		
1. DECEDENT'S LEGAL NAME (Include AKA's if any) (First, Middle, Last)		2. SEX		3. SOCIAL SECURITY NUMBER				
4a. AGE-Last Birthday (Years)		4b. UNDER 1 YEAR		4c. UNDER 1 DAY		5. DATE OF BIRTH (Mo/Day/Yr)		
		Months		Days		Hours		
						Minutes		
6. BIRTHPLACE (City and State or Foreign Country)		7a. RESIDENCE-STATE		7b. COUNTY		7c. CITY OR TOWN		
7d. STREET AND NUMBER		7e. APT. NO.		7f. ZIP CODE		7g. INSIDE CITY LIMITS? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No		
8. EVER IN US ARMED FORCES? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No		9. MARITAL STATUS AT TIME OF DEATH <input type="checkbox"/> Married <input type="checkbox"/> Married, but separated <input type="checkbox"/> Widowed <input type="checkbox"/> Divorced <input type="checkbox"/> Never Married <input type="checkbox"/> Unknown		10. SURVIVING SPOUSE'S NAME (If wife, give name prior to first marriage)				
11. FATHER'S NAME (First, Middle, Last)				12. MOTHER'S NAME PRIOR TO FIRST MARRIAGE (First, Middle, Last)				
13a. INFORMANT'S NAME		13b. RELATIONSHIP TO DECEDENT		13c. MAILING ADDRESS (Street and Number, City, State, Zip Code)				
14. PLACE OF DEATH (Check only one; see instructions)								
IF DEATH OCCURRED IN A HOSPITAL: <input type="checkbox"/> Inpatient <input type="checkbox"/> Emergency Room/Outpatient <input type="checkbox"/> Dead on Arrival				IF DEATH OCCURRED SOMEWHERE OTHER THAN A HOSPITAL: <input type="checkbox"/> Hospice facility <input type="checkbox"/> Nursing home/Long term care facility <input type="checkbox"/> Decedent's home <input type="checkbox"/> Other (Specify):				
15. FACILITY NAME (If not institution, give street & number)				16. CITY OR TOWN, STATE, AND ZIP CODE		17. COUNTY OF DEATH		
18. METHOD OF DISPOSITION: <input type="checkbox"/> Burial <input type="checkbox"/> Cremation <input type="checkbox"/> Donation <input type="checkbox"/> Entombment <input type="checkbox"/> Removal from State <input type="checkbox"/> Other (Specify):				19. PLACE OF DISPOSITION (Name of cemetery, crematory, other place)				
20. LOCATION-CITY, TOWN, AND STATE				21. NAME AND COMPLETE ADDRESS OF FUNERAL FACILITY				
22. SIGNATURE OF FUNERAL SERVICE LICENSEE OR OTHER AGENT						23. LICENSE NUMBER (Of Licensee)		
<b>ITEMS 24-28 MUST BE COMPLETED BY PERSON WHO PRONOUNCES OR CERTIFIES DEATH</b>				24. DATE PRONOUNCED DEAD (Mo/Day/Yr)		25. TIME PRONOUNCED DEAD		
26. SIGNATURE OF PERSON PRONOUNCING DEATH (Only when applicable)				27. LICENSE NUMBER		28. DATE SIGNED (Mo/Day/Yr)		
29. ACTUAL OR PRESUMED DATE OF DEATH (Mo/Day/Yr) (Spell Month)		30. ACTUAL OR PRESUMED TIME OF DEATH		31. WAS MEDICAL EXAMINER OR CORONER CONTACTED? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No				
<b>CAUSE OF DEATH (See instructions and examples)</b>							Approximate interval: Onset to death	
32. PART I. Enter the <u>chain of events</u> —diseases, injuries, or complications—that directly caused the death. DO NOT enter terminal events such as cardiac arrest, respiratory arrest, or ventricular fibrillation without showing the etiology. DO NOT ABBREVIATE. Enter only one cause on a line. Add additional lines if necessary.								
IMMEDIATE CAUSE (Final disease or condition resulting in death) → a. _____ Due to (or as a consequence of):								
Sequentially list conditions, if any, leading to the cause listed on line a. Enter the <b>UNDERLYING CAUSE</b> (disease or injury that initiated the events resulting in death) <b>LAST</b> d. _____ Due to (or as a consequence of):								
PART II. Enter other <u>significant conditions contributing to death</u> but not resulting in the underlying cause given in PART I							33. WAS AN AUTOPSY PERFORMED? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	
							34. WERE AUTOPSY FINDINGS AVAILABLE TO COMPLETE THE CAUSE OF DEATH? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	
35. DID TOBACCO USE CONTRIBUTE TO DEATH? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> Probably <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> Unknown		36. IF FEMALE: <input type="checkbox"/> Not pregnant within past year <input type="checkbox"/> Pregnant at time of death <input type="checkbox"/> Not pregnant, but pregnant within 42 days of death <input type="checkbox"/> Not pregnant, but pregnant 43 days to 1 year before death <input type="checkbox"/> Unknown if pregnant within the past year		37. MANNER OF DEATH <input type="checkbox"/> Natural <input type="checkbox"/> Homicide <input type="checkbox"/> Accident <input type="checkbox"/> Pending Investigation <input type="checkbox"/> Suicide <input type="checkbox"/> Could not be determined				
38. DATE OF INJURY (Mo/Day/Yr) (Spell Month)		39. TIME OF INJURY		40. PLACE OF INJURY (e.g., Decedent's home; construction site; restaurant; wooded area)		41. INJURY AT WORK? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No		
42. LOCATION OF INJURY: State: _____ City or Town: _____								
Street & Number: _____ Apartment No.: _____ Zip Code: _____								
43. DESCRIBE HOW INJURY OCCURRED:						44. IF TRANSPORTATION INJURY, SPECIFY: <input type="checkbox"/> Driver/Operator <input type="checkbox"/> Passenger <input type="checkbox"/> Pedestrian <input type="checkbox"/> Other (Specify)		

NAME OF DECEDENT  
For use by physician or institution  
To Be Completed/Verified By:  
FUNERAL DIRECTOR

To Be Completed By:  
MEDICAL CERTIFIER

# INSTRUCTIONS FOR CLASSIFYING MULTIPLE CAUSES OF DEATH, 2010

## SECTION I

## Medical Certification

### US STANDARD CERTIFICATE OF DEATH (Rev. 11/2003)

LOCAL FILE NO.		U.S. STANDARD CERTIFICATE OF DEATH				STATE FILE NO.		
1. DECEDENT'S LEGAL NAME (include AKA's if any) (First, Middle, Last)			2. SEX		3. SOCIAL SECURITY NUMBER			
4a. AGE-Last Birthday (Years)		4b. UNDER 1 YEAR		4c. UNDER 1 DAY		5. DATE OF BIRTH (Mo/Day/Yr)		
6. BIRTH-PLACE (City and State or Foreign Country)		7a. RESIDENCE-STATE		7b. COUNTY		7c. CITY OR TOWN		
7d. STREET AND NUMBER			7e. APT. NO.		7f. ZIP CODE		7g. INSIDE CITY LIMITS? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	
8. EVER IN US ARMED FORCES? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No		9. MARITAL STATUS AT TIME OF DEATH <input type="checkbox"/> Married <input type="checkbox"/> Married, but separated <input type="checkbox"/> Widowed <input type="checkbox"/> Divorced <input type="checkbox"/> Never Married <input type="checkbox"/> Unknown		10. SURVIVING SPOUSE'S NAME (If wife, give name prior to first marriage)				
11. FATHER'S NAME (First, Middle, Last)			12. MOTHER'S NAME PRIOR TO FIRST MARRIAGE (First, Middle, Last)					
13a. INFORMANT'S NAME		13b. RELATIONSHIP TO DECEDENT		13c. MAILING ADDRESS (Street and Number, City, State, Zip Code)				
14. PLACE OF DEATH (Check only one; see instructions)								
IF DEATH OCCURRED IN A HOSPITAL: <input type="checkbox"/> Inpatient <input type="checkbox"/> Emergency Room/Outpatient <input type="checkbox"/> Dead on Arrival				IF DEATH OCCURRED SOMEWHERE OTHER THAN A HOSPITAL: <input type="checkbox"/> Hospice facility <input type="checkbox"/> Nursing home/ long term care facility <input type="checkbox"/> Decedent's home <input type="checkbox"/> Other (Specify):				
15. FACILITY NAME (if not institution, give street & number)			17. COUNTY OF DEATH					
16. METHOD OF DISPOSITION: <input type="checkbox"/> Burial <input type="checkbox"/> Cremation <input type="checkbox"/> Donation <input type="checkbox"/> Entombment <input type="checkbox"/> Removal from State <input type="checkbox"/> Other (Specify):			19. PLACE OF DISPOSITION (Name of cemetery, crematory, other place)					
20. LOCATION: CITY, TOWN, AND STATE			21. NAME AND COMPLETE ADDRESS OF FUNERAL FACILITY					
22. SIGNATURE OF FUNERAL SERVICE LICENSEE OR OTHER AGENT						23. LICENSE NUMBER (of Licensee)		
24. DATE PRONOUNCED DEAD (Mo/Day/Yr)				25. TIME PRONOUNCED DEAD				
26. SIGNATURE OF PERSON PRONOUNCING DEATH (Only when applicable)				27. LICENSE NUMBER		28. DATE SIGNED (Mo/Day/Yr)		
29. ACTUAL OR PRESUMED DATE OF DEATH (Mo/Day/Yr) (Spell Month)			30. ACTUAL OR PRESUMED TIME OF DEATH		31. WAS MEDICAL EXAMINER OR CORONER CONTACTED? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No			
32. CAUSE OF DEATH (See instructions and examples)								
PART I. Enter the chain of events--diseases, injuries, or complications--that directly caused the death. DO NOT enter terminal events such as cardiac arrest, respiratory arrest, or ventricular fibrillation without showing the etiology. DO NOT ABBREVIATE. Enter only one cause on a line. Add additional lines if necessary.							Approximate interval: Onset to death	
IMMEDIATE CAUSE (Final disease or condition resulting in death)								
Due to (or as a consequence of):								
Sequentially list conditions, if any, leading to the cause listed on line a. Enter the UNDERLYING CAUSE (disease or injury that initiated the events resulting in death) LAST								
Due to (or as a consequence of):								
Due to (or as a consequence of):								
Due to (or as a consequence of):								
PART II. Enter other significant conditions contributing to death but not resulting in the underlying cause given in PART I								
33. DID TOBACCO USE CONTRIBUTE TO DEATH? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> Probably <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> Unknown						35. WAS AN AUTOPSY PERFORMED? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No		
36. IF FEMALE: <input type="checkbox"/> Not pregnant w/in past year <input type="checkbox"/> Pregnant at time of death <input type="checkbox"/> Not pregnant, but pregnant w/in 42 days of death <input type="checkbox"/> Not pregnant, but pregnant 43 days to 1 year before death <input type="checkbox"/> Unknown if pregnant within the past year						34. WERE AUTOPSY FINDINGS AVAILABLE TO COMPLETE THE CAUSE OF DEATH? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No		
37. MANNER OF DEATH <input type="checkbox"/> Natural <input type="checkbox"/> Homicide <input type="checkbox"/> Accident <input type="checkbox"/> Pending Investigation <input type="checkbox"/> Suicide <input type="checkbox"/> Could not be determined		38. DATE OF INJURY (Mo/Day/Yr) (Spell Month)						
39. TIME OF INJURY		40. PLACE OF INJURY (e.g., Decedent's home; construction site; restaurant; wooded area)				41. INJURY AT WORK? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No		
42. LOCATION OF INJURY: State: _____ City or Town: _____						44. IF TRANSPORTATION INJURY, SPECIFY: <input type="checkbox"/> Driver/Operator <input type="checkbox"/> Passenger <input type="checkbox"/> Pedestrian <input type="checkbox"/> Other (Specify)		
43. DESCRIBE HOW INJURY OCCURRED:						45. CERTIFIER (Check only one): <input type="checkbox"/> Certifying physician-To the best of my knowledge, death occurred due to the cause(s) and manner stated. <input type="checkbox"/> Pronouncing & Certifying physician-To the best of my knowledge, death occurred at the time, date, and place, and due to the cause(s) and manner stated. <input type="checkbox"/> Medical Examiner/Coroner-On the basis of examination, and/or investigation, in my opinion, death occurred at the time, date, and place, and due to the cause(s) and manner stated.		
Signature of certifier: _____								
46. NAME, ADDRESS, AND ZIP CODE OF PERSON COMPLETING CAUSE OF DEATH (Item 32)								
47. TITLE OF CERTIFIER		48. LICENSE NUMBER		49. DATE CERTIFIED (Mo/Day/Yr)		60. FOR REGISTRAR ONLY- DATE FILED (Mo/Day/Yr)		
51. DECEDENT'S EDUCATION Check the box that best describes the highest degree or level of school completed at the time of death. <input type="checkbox"/> 8th grade or less <input type="checkbox"/> 9th - 12th grade, no diploma <input type="checkbox"/> High school graduate or GED completed <input type="checkbox"/> Some college credit, but no degree <input type="checkbox"/> Associate degree (e.g., AA, AS) <input type="checkbox"/> Bachelor's degree (e.g., BA, AB, BS) <input type="checkbox"/> Master's degree (e.g., MA, MS, MEng, MEd, MEd, MEd) <input type="checkbox"/> Doctorate (e.g., PhD, EdD) or Professional degree (e.g., MD, DDS, DVM, LLB, JD)			52. DECEDENT OF HISPANIC ORIGIN? Check the box that best describes whether the decedent is Spanish/Hispanic/Latino. Check the "no" box if decedent is not Spanish/Hispanic/Latino. <input type="checkbox"/> No, not Spanish/Hispanic/Latino <input type="checkbox"/> Yes, Mexican, Mexican American, Chicano <input type="checkbox"/> Yes, Puerto Rican <input type="checkbox"/> Yes, Cuban <input type="checkbox"/> Yes, other Spanish/Hispanic/Latino (Specify) _____			53. DECEDENT'S RACE (Check one or more races to indicate what the decedent considered himself or herself to be) <input type="checkbox"/> White <input type="checkbox"/> Black or African American <input type="checkbox"/> American Indian or Alaska Native (Name of the enrolled or principal tribe) _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Asian Indian <input type="checkbox"/> Chinese <input type="checkbox"/> Filipino <input type="checkbox"/> Japanese <input type="checkbox"/> Korean <input type="checkbox"/> Vietnamese <input type="checkbox"/> Other Asian (Specify) _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Native Hawaiian <input type="checkbox"/> Guamanian or Chamorro <input type="checkbox"/> Samoan <input type="checkbox"/> Other Pacific Islander (Specify) _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Other (Specify) _____		
54. DECEDENT'S USUAL OCCUPATION (Indicate type of work done during most of working life. DO NOT USE RETIRED.)								
55. KIND OF BUSINESS/INDUSTRY								

REV. 11/2003

# INSTRUCTIONS FOR CLASSIFYING MULTIPLE CAUSES OF DEATH, 2010

## SECTION I

## Medical Certification

---

In the following example, there are three causes reported. On line I(c) the underlying cause is entered-congenital heart disease. Congenital heart disease gave rise to congestive heart failure (line I(b)) which in turn led to a myocardial infarction (line I(a)) -- the immediate cause of death.

- I (a) Myocardial infarction
- (b) Congestive heart failure
- (c) Congenital heart disease
- (d)

II

As demonstrated by the following example, the certifier may not always list one cause per line:

- I (a) Myocardial infarction and pulmonary embolism with congestive heart failure
- (b)
- (c)
- (d)

II

Likewise, the causes may not be reported in an acceptable sequence. In the following example, cancer is reported as due to diabetes.

- I (a) Cancer
- (b) Diabetes
- (c)
- (d)

II

To date, the causes of the majority of cancers are still unknown so the causal relationship tables stored in the NCHS computers preclude the assumption that diabetes caused the cancer. Cancer is selected as the underlying cause of death from this certification for statistical purposes. However, the selection of the underlying cause of death is not relevant for this manual. For coding purposes, the order and position of each cause of death reported on the death certificate must be interpreted accurately so the computer software can then determine the correct underlying cause of death.

# INSTRUCTIONS FOR CLASSIFYING MULTIPLE CAUSES OF DEATH, 2010

## SECTION I

## Medical Certification

---

There is an average of three causes listed per certificate. Approximately 20 percent have only one cause of death and 45 percent have three or more causes. Frequently, a cause will be reported on I(a) in Part I and a cause in Part II with no other reported causes. For other records, several causes may all be reported on a single line of the certificate or they may be entered on several lines in Part I. Rarely, the only cause(s) reported may be in Part II. Representative examples follow.

- I (a) Pneumonia
- (b)
- (c)
- (d)
- II Diabetes

- I (a) Cancer
- (b)
- (c)
- (d)
- II

- I (a)
- (b)
- (c)
- (d)
- II Diabetes

- I (a)
- (b) Acute myocardial infarction
- (c)
- II Renal disease

- I (a) AMI, renal disease, pulmonary embolism

A. Introduction

Code all information reported in the medical certification section of the death certificate and any other information pertaining to the medical certification, when reported elsewhere on the certificate. In Volumes 1 and 3 of ICD-10, the fourth-character subcategories of three-character categories are preceded by a decimal point. For coding purposes, omit the decimal point.

Enter codes in the same order and location as the entries they represent appear on the death certificate. Enter the codes for entries in Part II in the order the entries are reported, proceeding from the entry reported uppermost in Part II downward and from the left to right. If the uppermost line in Part II is an obvious continuation of a line below, enter the codes accordingly.

For instructions on placement of codes when the certifier states or implies a “due to” relationship between conditions not reported in sequential order, refer to Section II, Part C, Format. For instructions on placement of nature of injury (N-code) and external cause codes (E-codes), refer to Section V, Part B, Placement of Nature of Injury and External Cause Codes.

When an identical code applies to more than one condition reported on the same line, enter the code for the first-mentioned of these conditions only. When conditions classifiable to the same code are reported on different lines of the certificate, enter the code for each of the reported conditions. (This does not apply to external cause of morbidity and mortality (E-codes)).

1. Excessive Codes

- a. When a single line in Part I or Part II requires more than eight codes, delete the excessive codes (any over eight) for the line using the following criteria in the order listed:
  - (1) Delete ill-defined conditions (I469, I959, I99, J960, J969, P285, R00-R94, R96, R98) except when this code is the first code on a line, proceeding right to left.
  - (2) Delete nature of injury codes (S000-T983) except for the first one entered on a line, proceeding right to left.
  - (3) If, after applying the preceding criteria, any single line still has more than eight codes, delete beginning with the last code on the line until only 8 remain.

## Part A

## Introduction

- I (a) I460  
 (b) I219 I739  
 (c)  
 (d)  
 II &E109 I739 T811 &Y835 R18 R33 N19 C475 N359 I490 I493 J181

After deleting excessive codes:

- I (a) I460  
 (b) I219 I739  
 (c)  
 (d)  
 II &E109 I739 T811 &Y835 N19 C475 N359 I490

Delete (1) R33, (2) R18, (3) J181 and (4) I493

- b. When a single record requires more than 14 codes, delete the excessive codes using the following criteria in the order listed:
- (1) Delete ill-defined conditions (I469, I959, I99, J960, J969, P285, R00 - R94, R96, R98) except when this code is the first code on a line, beginning with the last code in Part II, proceeding right to left then upward right to left on each line (Part II, line e, line d, line c, line b, line a).
  - (2) Delete nature of injury codes (S000-T983) except for the first one entered on a line beginning with the last code in Part II, proceeding right to left then upward right to left on each line (Part II, line e, line d, line c, line b, line a).
  - (3) Delete repetitive codes except when it is the first code on a line beginning with the last code in Part II, proceeding right to left then upward right to left on each line (Part II, line e, line d, line c, line b, line a).
  - (4) If after applying the preceding criteria, any record still has more than 14 codes, delete beginning with the last code in Part II, proceeding upward right to left on each line (Part II, line e, line d, line c, line b, line a).

- I (a) C80 I460 R570  
 (b) R098 R53  
 (c) R54 F09 F03  
 (d) I709 I635  
 II I119 C473 R200 I258 I251 D539 R798 I635

After deleting excessive codes:

- I (a) C80 I460
- (b) R098
- (c) R54 F09 F03
- (d) I709 I635
- II I119 C473 I258 I251 D539 I635

Delete (1) R798, (2) R200, (3) R53 and (4) R570

## 2. Created Codes

To facilitate automated data processing, the following ICD-10 codes have been amended for use in coding and processing the multiple cause data. Special five character subcategories are for use in coding and processing the multiple cause data; however, they will not appear in official tabulations.

- A169 Respiratory tuberculosis, unspecified  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed to A169 not qualified as respiratory or pulmonary (A1690)  
 \*A1690 Tuberculosis NOS  
**Includes:** Any term indexed to A169 not qualified as respiratory or pulmonary
- E039 Hypothyroidism, unspecified  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed to E039 qualified as advanced, grave, severe, or with a similar qualifier (E0390)  
 \*E0390 Advanced hypothyroidism  
 Grave hypothyroidism  
 Severe hypothyroidism  
**Includes:** Any term indexed to E039 qualified as advanced, grave, severe, or with a similar qualifier
- G122 Motor neuron disease  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed to G122 qualified as advanced, grave, severe, or with a similar qualifier (G1220)  
 \*G1220 Advanced motor neuron disease  
 Grave motor neuron disease  
 Severe motor neuron disease  
**Includes:** Any term indexed to G122 qualified as advanced, grave, severe, or with a similar qualifier

- 
- G20 Parkinson's disease  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed to G20 qualified as advanced, grave, severe, or with a similar qualifier (G2000)  
\*G2000 Advanced Parkinson's disease  
Grave Parkinson's disease  
Severe Parkinson's disease  
**Includes:** Any term indexed to G20 qualified as advanced, grave, severe, or with a similar qualifier
- I219 Acute myocardial infarction, unspecified  
**Excludes:** Embolism of any site classified to I219  
\*I2190 Embolism cardiac, heart, myocardium or a synonymous site  
**Includes:** Embolism of any site classified to I219
- I420 Dilated cardiomyopathy  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed to I420 qualified as familial, idiopathic, or primary (I4200)  
\*I4200 Familial dilated cardiomyopathy  
Idiopathic dilated cardiomyopathy  
Primary dilated cardiomyopathy  
**Includes:** Any term indexed to I420 qualified as familial, idiopathic, or primary
- I421 Obstructive hypertrophic cardiomyopathy  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed to I421 qualified as familial, idiopathic, or primary (I4210)  
\*I4210 Familial obstructive hypertrophic cardiomyopathy  
Idiopathic obstructive hypertrophic cardiomyopathy  
Primary obstructive hypertrophic cardiomyopathy  
**Includes:** Any term indexed to I421 qualified as familial, idiopathic, or primary
- I422 Other hypertrophic cardiomyopathy  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed to I422 qualified as familial, idiopathic, or primary (I4220)  
\*I4220 Familial other hypertrophic cardiomyopathy  
Idiopathic other hypertrophic cardiomyopathy  
Primary other hypertrophic cardiomyopathy  
**Includes:** Any term indexed to I422 qualified as familial, idiopathic, or primary

- 
- I425 Other restrictive cardiomyopathy  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed to I425 qualified as familial, idiopathic, or primary (I4250)  
\*I4250 Familial other restrictive cardiomyopathy  
Idiopathic other restrictive cardiomyopathy  
Primary other restrictive cardiomyopathy  
**Includes:** Any term indexed to I425 qualified as familial, idiopathic, or primary
- I428 Other cardiomyopathies  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed to I428 qualified as familial, idiopathic, or primary (I4280)  
\*I4280 Familial other cardiomyopathies  
Idiopathic other cardiomyopathies  
Primary other cardiomyopathies  
**Includes:** Any term indexed to I428 qualified as familial, idiopathic, or primary
- I429 Cardiomyopathy, unspecified  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed to I429 qualified as familial, idiopathic, or primary (I4290)  
\*I4290 Familial cardiomyopathy  
Idiopathic cardiomyopathy  
Primary cardiomyopathy  
**Includes:** Any term indexed to I429 qualified as familial, idiopathic, or primary
- I500 Congestive heart failure  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed to I500 qualified as advanced, grave, severe, or with a similar qualifier (I5000)  
\*I5000 Advanced congestive heart failure  
Grave congestive heart failure  
Severe congestive heart failure  
**Includes:** Any term indexed to I500 qualified as advanced, grave, severe, or with a similar qualifier

- 
- I514 Myocarditis, unspecified  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed to I514 qualified as arteriosclerotic (I5140)  
 \*I5140 Arteriosclerotic myocarditis  
**Includes:** Any term indexed to I514 qualified as arteriosclerotic
- I515 Myocardial degeneration  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed to I515 qualified as arteriosclerotic (I5150)  
 \*I5150 Arteriosclerotic myocardial degeneration  
**Includes:** Any term indexed to I515 qualified as arteriosclerotic
- I600 Subarachnoid hemorrhage from carotid siphon and bifurcation  
**Excludes:** Ruptured carotid aneurysm (into brain) (I6000)  
 \*I6000 Ruptured carotid aneurysm (into brain)
- I606 Subarachnoid hemorrhage from other intracranial arteries  
**Excludes:** Ruptured aneurysm (congenital) circle of Willis (I6060)  
 \*I6060 Ruptured aneurysm (congenital) circle of Willis
- I607 Subarachnoid hemorrhage from intracranial artery, unspecified  
**Excludes:** Ruptured berry aneurysm (congenital) brain (I6070)  
 Ruptured miliary aneurysm (I6070)  
 \*I6070 Ruptured berry aneurysm (congenital) brain  
 Ruptured miliary aneurysm
- I608 Other subarachnoid hemorrhage  
**Excludes:** Ruptured aneurysm brain meninges (I6080)  
 Ruptured arteriovenous aneurysm (congenital) brain (I6080)  
 Ruptured (congenital) arteriovenous aneurysm cavernous sinus (I6080)  
 \*I6080 Ruptured aneurysm brain meninges  
 Ruptured arteriovenous aneurysm (congenital) brain  
 Ruptured (congenital) arteriovenous aneurysm cavernous sinus
- I609 Subarachnoid hemorrhage, unspecified  
**Excludes:** Ruptured arteriosclerotic cerebral aneurysm (I6090)  
 Ruptured (congenital) cerebral aneurysm NOS (I6090)  
 Ruptured mycotic aneurysm brain (I6090)  
 \*I6090 Ruptured arteriosclerotic cerebral aneurysm  
 Ruptured (congenital) cerebral aneurysm NOS  
 Ruptured mycotic aneurysm brain

## Part A

## Introduction

- 
- I610 Intracerebral hemorrhage in hemisphere, subcortical  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed to I610 qualified as bilateral, multiple, or similar term<sup>1</sup> (I6100)  
 \*I6100 Bilateral, multiple [or similar term<sup>1</sup>] intracerebral hemorrhages in hemisphere, subcortical  
**Includes:** Any term indexed to I610 qualified as bilateral, multiple, or similar term<sup>1</sup>
- I611 Intracerebral hemorrhage in hemisphere, cortical  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed to I611 qualified as bilateral, multiple, or similar term<sup>1</sup> (I6110)  
 \*I6110 Bilateral, multiple [or similar term<sup>1</sup>] intracerebral hemorrhages in hemisphere, cortical  
**Includes:** Any term indexed to I611 qualified as bilateral, multiple, or similar term<sup>1</sup>
- I612 Intracerebral hemorrhage in hemisphere, unspecified  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed to I612 qualified as bilateral, multiple, or similar term<sup>1</sup> (I6120)  
 \*I6120 Bilateral, multiple [or similar term<sup>1</sup>] intracerebral hemorrhages, unspecified  
**Includes:** Any term indexed to I612 qualified as bilateral, multiple, or similar term<sup>1</sup>
- I613 Intracerebral hemorrhage in brain stem  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed to I613 qualified as bilateral, multiple, or similar term<sup>1</sup> (I6130)  
 \*I6130 Bilateral, multiple [or similar term<sup>1</sup>] intracerebral hemorrhages in brain stem  
**Includes:** Any term indexed to I613 qualified as bilateral, multiple, or similar term<sup>1</sup>
- I614 Intracerebral hemorrhage in cerebellum  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed to I614 qualified as bilateral, multiple, or similar term<sup>1</sup> (I6140)  
 \*I6140 Bilateral, multiple [or similar term<sup>1</sup>] intracerebral hemorrhages in cerebellum  
**Includes:** Any term indexed to I614 qualified as bilateral, multiple, or similar term<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Similar terms include modifiers such as many, numerous, recurrent, repeated, serial, series, or several.

- 
- I615 Intracerebral hemorrhage, intraventricular  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed to I615 qualified as bilateral, multiple, or similar term<sup>1</sup> (I6150)  
 \*I6150 Bilateral, multiple [or similar term<sup>1</sup>] intracerebral hemorrhages, intraventricular  
**Includes:** Any term indexed to I615 qualified as bilateral, multiple, or similar term<sup>1</sup>
- I618 Other intracerebral hemorrhage  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed to I618 qualified as bilateral, multiple, or similar term<sup>1</sup> (I6180)  
 \*I6180 Bilateral, multiple [or similar term<sup>1</sup>] other intracerebral hemorrhages  
**Includes:** Any term indexed to I618 qualified as bilateral, multiple, or similar term<sup>1</sup>
- I619 Intracerebral hemorrhage, unspecified  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed to I619 qualified as bilateral, multiple, or similar term<sup>1</sup> (I6190)  
 \*I6190 Bilateral, multiple [or similar term<sup>1</sup>] intracerebral hemorrhages, unspecified  
**Includes:** Any term indexed to I619 qualified bilateral, multiple, or similar term<sup>1</sup>
- I630 Cerebral infarction due to thrombosis of precerebral arteries  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed to I630 qualified as bilateral, multiple, or similar term<sup>1</sup> (I6300)  
 \*I6300 Cerebral infarction due to bilateral, multiple [or similar term<sup>1</sup>] thrombi of precerebral arteries  
**Includes:** Any term indexed to I630 qualified as bilateral, multiple, or similar term<sup>1</sup>
- I631 Cerebral infarction due to embolism of precerebral arteries  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed to I631 qualified as bilateral, multiple, or similar term<sup>1</sup> (I6310)  
 \*I6310 Cerebral infarction due to bilateral, multiple [or similar term<sup>1</sup>] emboli of precerebral arteries  
**Includes:** Any term indexed to I631 qualified as bilateral, multiple, or similar term<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Similar terms include modifiers such as many, numerous, recurrent, repeated, serial, series, or several.

- 
- I632 Cerebral infarction due to unspecified occlusion or stenosis of precerebral arteries  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed to I632 qualified as bilateral, multiple, or similar term<sup>1</sup> (I6320)  
 \*I6320 Cerebral infarction due to bilateral, multiple [or similar term<sup>1</sup>] unspecified occlusions or stenosis of precerebral arteries  
**Includes:** Any term indexed to I632 qualified as bilateral, multiple, or similar term<sup>1</sup>
- I633 Cerebral infarction due to thrombosis of cerebral arteries  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed to I633 qualified as bilateral, multiple, or similar term<sup>1</sup> (I6330)  
 \*I6330 Cerebral infarction due to bilateral, multiple [or similar term<sup>1</sup>] thrombi of cerebral arteries  
**Includes:** Any term indexed to I633 qualified as bilateral, multiple, or similar term<sup>1</sup>
- I634 Cerebral infarction due to embolism of cerebral arteries  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed to I634 qualified as bilateral, multiple, or similar term<sup>1</sup> (I6340)  
 \*I6340 Cerebral infarction due to bilateral, multiple [or similar term<sup>1</sup>] emboli of cerebral arteries  
**Includes:** Any term indexed to I634 qualified as bilateral, multiple, or similar term<sup>1</sup>
- I635 Cerebral infarction due to unspecified occlusion or stenosis of cerebral arteries  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed to I635 qualified as bilateral, multiple, or similar term<sup>1</sup> (I6350)  
 \*I6350 Cerebral infarction due to bilateral, multiple [or similar term<sup>1</sup>] unspecified occlusions or stenosis of cerebral arteries  
**Includes:** Any term indexed to I635 qualified as bilateral, multiple, or similar term<sup>1</sup>
- I636 Cerebral infarction due to cerebral venous thrombosis, nonpyogenic  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed to I636 qualified as bilateral, multiple, or similar term<sup>1</sup> (I6360)  
 \*I6360 Cerebral infarction due to bilateral, multiple [or similar term<sup>1</sup>] cerebral venous thrombi, nonpyogenic  
**Includes:** Any term indexed to I636 qualified as bilateral, multiple, or similar term<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Similar terms include modifiers such as many, numerous, recurrent, repeated, serial, series, or several.

- 
- I638 Other cerebral infarction  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed to I638 qualified as bilateral, multiple, or similar term<sup>1</sup> (I6380)  
 \*I6380 Bilateral, multiple [or similar term<sup>1</sup>] other cerebral infarctions  
**Includes:** Any term indexed to I638 qualified as bilateral, multiple, or similar term<sup>1</sup>
- I639 Cerebral infarction, unspecified  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed to I639 qualified as bilateral, multiple, or similar term<sup>1</sup> (I6390)  
 \*I6390 Bilateral, multiple [or similar term<sup>1</sup>] cerebral infarctions, unspecified  
**Includes:** Any term indexed to I639 qualified as bilateral, multiple, or similar term<sup>1</sup>
- I64 Stroke, not specified as hemorrhage or infarction  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed to I64 qualified as bilateral, multiple, or similar term<sup>1</sup> (I6400)  
 \*I6400 Bilateral, multiple [or similar term<sup>1</sup>] strokes, not specified as hemorrhage or infarction  
**Includes:** Any term indexed to I64 qualified as bilateral, multiple, or similar term<sup>1</sup>
- I691 Sequelae of intracerebral hemorrhage  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed to I691 qualified as bilateral, multiple, or similar term<sup>1</sup> (I6910)  
 \*I6910 Sequela of bilateral, multiple [or similar term<sup>1</sup>] intracerebral hemorrhages  
**Includes:** Any term indexed to I691 qualified as bilateral, multiple, or similar term<sup>1</sup>
- I693 Sequelae of cerebral infarction  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed to I693 qualified as bilateral, multiple, or similar term<sup>1</sup> (I6930)  
 \*I6930 Sequela of bilateral, multiple [or similar term<sup>1</sup>] cerebral infarctions  
**Includes:** Any term indexed to I693 qualified as bilateral, multiple, or similar term<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Similar terms include modifiers such as many, numerous, recurrent, repeated, serial, series, or several.

- 
- I694 Sequelae of stroke, not specified as hemorrhage or infarction  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed to I694 qualified as bilateral, multiple, or similar term<sup>1</sup> (I6940)  
 \*I6940 Sequela of bilateral, multiple [or similar term<sup>1</sup>] strokes, not specified as hemorrhage or infarction  
**Includes:** Any term indexed to I694 qualified as bilateral, multiple, or similar term<sup>1</sup>
- J101 Influenza with other respiratory manifestations, influenza virus identified  
**Excludes:** Influenza, flu, grippe (viral), influenza virus identified (without specified manifestations) (J1010)  
 \*J1010 Influenza, flu, grippe (viral), influenza virus identified (without specified manifestations)
- J111 Influenza with other respiratory manifestations, virus not identified  
**Excludes:** Influenza, flu, grippe (viral), influenza virus not identified (without specified manifestations) (J1110)  
 \*J1110 Influenza, flu, grippe (viral), influenza virus not identified (without specified manifestations)
- J841 Other interstitial pulmonary diseases with fibrosis  
**Excludes:** Chronic pneumonia, not elsewhere classified (J8410)  
 \*J8410 Chronic pneumonia, not elsewhere classified
- J849 Interstitial pulmonary disease, unspecified  
**Excludes:** Interstitial pneumonia, not elsewhere classified (J8490)  
 \*J8490 Interstitial pneumonia, not elsewhere classified
- J984 Other disorders of lung  
**Excludes:** Lung disease (acute) (chronic) NOS (J9840)  
 \*J9840 Lung disease (acute) (chronic) NOS
- K319 Disease of stomach and duodenum, unspecified  
**Excludes:** Disease, stomach NOS (K3190)  
 Lesion, stomach NOS (K3190)  
 \*K3190 Disease, stomach NOS  
 Lesion, stomach NOS

---

<sup>1</sup> Similar terms include modifiers such as many, numerous, recurrent, repeated, serial, series, or several.

## Part A

## Introduction

- 
- K550 Acute vascular disorders of intestine  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed to K550 qualified as embolic (K5500)  
 \*K5500 Acute embolic vascular disorders of intestine  
**Includes:** Any term indexed to K550 qualified as embolic
- K631 Perforation of intestine (nontraumatic)  
**Excludes:** Intestinal penetration, unspecified part (K6310)  
 Intestinal perforation, unspecified part (K6310)  
 Intestinal rupture, unspecified part (K6310)  
 \*K6310 Intestinal penetration, unspecified part  
 Intestinal perforation, unspecified part  
 Intestinal rupture, unspecified part
- K720 Acute and subacute hepatic failure  
**Excludes:** Acute hepatic failure (K7200)  
 \*K7200 Acute hepatic failure
- K721 Chronic hepatic failure  
**Excludes:** Chronic hepatic failure (K7210)  
 \*K7210 Chronic hepatic failure
- K729 Hepatic failure, unspecified  
**Excludes:** Hepatic failure (K7290)  
 \*K7290 Hepatic failure
- M199 Arthrosis, unspecified  
**Excludes:** Any term indexed to M199 qualified as advanced, grave, severe, or with a similar qualifier (M1990)  
 \*M1990 Advanced arthrosis  
 Grave arthrosis  
 Severe arthrosis  
**Includes:** Any term indexed to M199 qualified as advanced, grave, severe, or with a similar qualifier
- Q278 Other specified congenital malformations of peripheral vascular system  
**Excludes:** Congenital aneurysm (peripheral) (Q2780)  
 \*Q2780 Congenital aneurysm (peripheral)
- Q282 Arteriovenous malformation of cerebral vessels  
**Excludes:** Congenital arteriovenous cerebral aneurysm (nonruptured) (Q2820)  
 \*Q2820 Congenital arteriovenous cerebral aneurysm (nonruptured)

## Part A

## Introduction

- 
- Q283 Other malformations of cerebral vessels  
**Excludes:** Congenital cerebral aneurysm (nonruptured) (Q2830)  
\*Q2830 Congenital cerebral aneurysm (nonruptured)
- R58 Hemorrhage, not elsewhere classified  
**Excludes:** Hemorrhage of unspecified site (R5800)  
\*R5800 Hemorrhage of unspecified site
- R99 Other ill-defined and unspecified causes of mortality  
**Excludes:** Cause unknown (R97)  
\*R97 Cause unknown

3. “Dagger and asterisk” codes

ICD-10 provides for the classification of certain diagnostic statements according to two different axes—etiology or underlying disease process and manifestation or complication. Thus, there are two codes for diagnostic statements subject to dual classification. The etiology or underlying disease codes are marked with a dagger (†) and the manifestations or complication codes are marked with an asterisk (\*) following the code. The terms classified to codes with an asterisk are to be coded to the dagger code for the term only. These codes will not appear in official tabulations on multiple cause data.

I (a) Salmonella meningitis A022

Use only the dagger code for multiple cause-of-death coding.

Do not use the following ICD-10 codes for multiple cause coding:

D63*	H03*	I68*	M36*
D77*	H06*	I79*	M49*
E35*	H13*	I98*	M63*
E90*	H19*	J17*	M68*
F00*	H22*	J91*	M73*
F02*	H28*	J99*	M82*
G01*	H32*	K23*	M90*
G02*	H36*	K67*	N08*
G05*	H42*	K77*	N16*
G07*	H45*	K87*	N22*
G13*	H48*	K93*	N29*
G22*	H58*	L14*	N33*
G26*	H62*	L45*	N37*
G32*	H67*	L54*	N51*
G46*	H75*	L62*	N74*
G53*	H82*	L86*	P75*
G55*	H94*	L99*	
G59*	I32*	M01*	
G63*	I39*	M03*	
G73*	I41*	M07*	
G94*	I43*	M09*	
G99*	I52*	M14*	

B. General coding concept

The coding of cause-of-death information for the ACME system consists of the assignment of the most appropriate ICD-10 code(s) for each diagnostic entity that is reported on the death certificate. In order to arrive at the appropriate code for a diagnostic entity, code each entity separately. Do not apply provisions in ICD-10 for linking two or more diagnostic terms to form a composite diagnosis classifiable to a single ICD-10 code.

I (a) Cholecystitis with cholelithiasis K819 K802

Code each entity separately even though the Index has provided for a combination code for cholecystitis with cholelithiasis.

I (a) Malignant neoplasm of colon with rectum C189 C20

Code malignant neoplasm of colon and malignant neoplasm of rectum separately even though the Index has provided for a combination code for malignant neoplasm of colon with rectum.

<u>Place</u>	I (a) Injury of intra-abdominal and intrathoracic organs	S369	S279
9	II	&X599	

Code injury of each site separately even though the Index has provided for a combination code for intra-abdominal and intrathoracic injury.

1. Definitions and types of diagnostic entities

A diagnostic entity is a single term or a composite term, comprised of one word or of two or more adjoining words, that is used to describe a disease, nature of injury, or other morbid condition. In this manual diagnostic entity and diagnostic term are used interchangeably. A diagnostic entity may indicate the existence of a condition classifiable to a single ICD-10 category or it may contain elements of information that are classifiable to different ICD-10 categories. For coding purposes, it is necessary to distinguish between two different kinds of diagnostic entities – a “one-term entity,” and a “multiple one-term entity.”

a. One-term entity

- (1) A one-term entity is a diagnostic entity that is classifiable to a single ICD-10 code.

I (a) Pneumonia	J189
(b) Arteriosclerosis	I709
(c) Emphysema	J439

These terms are codable one-term entities.

## Part B

## General Coding Concept

I (a) Allergic vasculitis D690

This condition is indexed as one-term entity under “vasculitis.”

I (a) Cerebral arteriosclerosis I672

This condition is indexed as one-term entity.

- (2) A diagnostic term that contains one of the following adjectival modifiers indicates the condition modified has undergone certain changes and is considered to be a one-term entity.

adenomatous	hypoxemic
anoxic	hypoxic
congestive	inflammatory
cystic	ischemic
embolic	necrotic
erosive	obstructed, obstructive
gangrenous	ruptured
hemorrhagic	

(These instructions apply to these adjectival modifiers **only**).

For code assignment, apply the following criteria in the order stated.

- (a) If the modifier and lead term are indexed together, code as indexed.

I (a) Embolic nephritis N058

Code Nephritis, embolic. The adjectival modifier “embolic” is indexed under nephritis.

- (b) If the modifier is not indexed under the lead term, but “specified” is, use the code for specified (usually .8).

I (a) Obstructive cystitis N308

Code Cystitis, specified NEC. The adjectival modifier “obstructive” is not indexed under cystitis.

- (c) If neither the modifier nor “specified” is indexed under the lead term, refer to Volume 1 under the NOS code for the lead term and look for a specified 4<sup>th</sup> character subcategory.

I (a) Hemorrhagic cardiomyopathy I428

Code hemorrhagic cardiomyopathy to I428, Other cardiomyopathies. “Hemorrhagic” is not indexed under cardiomyopathy, neither is Cardiomyopathy, specified NEC indexed. The Classification does provide a code, I428, for “Other cardiomyopathies” in Volume 1.

- (d) If neither (a), (b), or (c) apply, code the lead term without the modifier.

I (a) Adenomatous bronchiectasis J47

“Adenomatous” is not an index term qualifying bronchiectasis. Code bronchiectasis only, since there is no provision in the Classification for coding “other bronchiectasis.”

b. Multiple one-term entity

A multiple one-term entity is a diagnostic entity consisting of two or more contiguous words on a line for which the Classification does not provide a single code for the entire entity but does provide a single code for each of the components of the diagnostic entity. Consider as a multiple one-term entity if each of the components can be considered as separate one-term entities, i.e., they can stand alone as separate diagnosis. Code each component of the multiple one-term entity as indexed and on the same line where reported.

I (a) Myocardial infarction I219  
 (b) Uremic acidosis N19 E872  
 (c) Chronic nephritis N039

“Uremic acidosis” is not indexed as a one-term entity. Code “uremia” and “acidosis” as separate one-term entities, each of which can stand alone as a diagnosis.

I (a) Uremia N19  
 (b) Diabetic heart disease E149 I519  
 (c)

“Diabetic heart disease” is not indexed as a one-term entity. Code “diabetic” and “heart disease” as separate one-term entities, each of which can stand alone as a diagnosis.

## Part B

## General Coding Concept

I (a) Senile cardiovascular disease, MI	R54	I516	I219
(b)			
(c)			

“Senile cardiovascular disease.” is not indexed as a one-term entity. Code “senile” and “cardiovascular disease” as separate one-term entities each of which can stand alone as a diagnosis.

**Exception:**

When any condition classifiable to I20-I25, except I250, or I60-I69 is qualified as “hypertensive,” code to I20-I25 or I60-I69 **only**.

I (a) Hypertensive arteriosclerotic cerebrovascular disease	I672
I (a) Hypertensive myocardial ischemia	I259

(1) Code an adjective reported at the end of a diagnostic entity as if it preceded the entity. This applies whether reported in Part I or II.

I (a) Arteriosclerosis, hypertensive	I10	I709
(b)		
(c)		

The complete term is not indexed as a one-term entity. “Hypertensive” is an adjectival modifier; code as if it preceded the arteriosclerosis.

I (a) MI	I219
(b)	
(c)	
II Coronary occlusion, arteriosclerotic	I709 I219

“Coronary occlusion, arteriosclerotic” is not indexed as a one-term entity. Arteriosclerotic is an adjectival modifier; code as if it preceded the coronary occlusion.

- (2)(a) When a multiple one-term entity indicates a condition involving different sites or systems for which the Classification provides different codes, code the condition of each site or system separately.

I (a) Cardiac, respiratory, hepatic, renal failure I509 J969 K7290 N19

Code each site separately since the Classification provides a different code for each site.

- (b) Where there is provision for coding the condition of one or more but not all of the sites or systems, code the conditions of the site(s) or system(s) that are indexed. Disregard the site(s) or system(s) for which the Classification does not provide a code.

I (a) Cerebro-hepatic failure K7290

“Hepatic failure” is the only term indexed. Do not enter a code for “cerebral failure.”

- (c) When a site is not indexed and the Classification provides an NOS code for the condition, assign this code.

I (a) Ischemia colon, liver and spleen K559 I99  
(b)

“Ischemia colon” is the only term indexed. Since liver and spleen are not indexed and the condition has an NOS code, assign the NOS code for these terms.

c. Adjectival modifier reported with multiple conditions

- (1) If an adjectival modifier is reported with more than one condition, modify only the first condition.

I (a) Arteriosclerotic cardiomyopathy I251 N059  
and nephritis

I (a) Diabetic coma and gangrene E140 R02

- (2) If an adjectival modifier is reported with one condition and more than one site is reported, modify all sites.

I (a) Diabetic gangrene of hands and feet E145

I (a) Arteriosclerotic cardiovascular and I250 I672  
cerebrovascular disease



3. Special diagnostic entities

a. When a condition is qualified as “HIV-related,” “AIDS-related,” or is modified by “AIDS,” or “HIV,” disregard the indexing of these conditions and code as separate one-term entities.

I (a) HIV-related encephalopathy	B24	G934
I (a) AIDS-related tuberculosis	B24	A1690
I (a) AIDS encephalopathy	B24	G934
I (a) HIV encephalopathy	B24	G934

b. Alzheimer’s dementia: Consider the following terms as one term entities and code as indicated:

When reported as:

Code

Endstage Alzheimer’s, senile dementia	}	G301
Senile dementia, Alzheimer’s		
Senile dementia, Alzheimer’s type		
Senile dementia of the Alzheimer’s		

When reported as:

Alzheimer’s, dementia	}	G309
Alzheimer’s; dementia		
Alzheimer’s disease (dementia)		
Dementia Alzheimer’s		
Dementia, Alzheimer’s		
Dementia-Alzheimer’s		
Dementia, Alzheimer’s type		
Dementia of Alzheimer’s		
Dementia-Alzheimer’s type		
Dementia; Alzheimer’s type		
Dementia, probable Alzheimer’s (disease)		
Dementia syndrome, Alzheimer’s type		
Endstage dementia (Alzheimer’s)		

4. Plural form of disease

Do not use the plural form of a disease or the plural form of a site to indicate multiple.

I (a) Cardiac arrest	I469
(b) Congenital defects	Q899

Code I(b) Q899 (congenital defect); do not code as multiple (Q897).

5. Implied “disease”

When an adjective or noun form of a site is entered as a separate diagnosis, i.e., it is not part of an entry immediately preceding or following it, assume the word “disease” after the site and code accordingly.

I (a) Congestive heart failure	I500
(b) Myocardial	I515

Code I(b) to I515, myocardial disease. The site “myocardial” is not indexed with congestive heart failure.

I (a) Coronary	I251
(b) Hypertension	I10

Code I(a) to I251, coronary disease. Coronary hypertension is not indexed.

I (a) Renal	I129
(b) Hypertension	

Code I(a) to I129, renal hypertension. Consider the site, renal, to be a part of the condition that immediately follows it on line b, since Hypertension, renal is indexed.

6. Non-traumatic conditions

Consider conditions that are usually but not always traumatic in origin to be qualified as non-traumatic when reported due to or on the same line with disease.

I (a) Fat embolism	I749
(b) Pathological fracture	M844

Code line (a) as non-traumatic since reported due to disease.

7. Drug dependent, drug dependency

When drug dependent or drug dependency modifies a condition, consider as a non-codable modifier unless indexed.

- |       |                          |      |
|-------|--------------------------|------|
| I (a) | Perforated gastric ulcer | K255 |
| (b)   | Steroid-dependent COPD   | J449 |

Code I(a) as indexed. Code I(b) to J449, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease NOS. Consider the “steroid dependent” to be a non-codable modifier.

C. Format1. “Due to” relationships involving more than **four** causally related conditions

**Four** lines, (a), (b), (c), **and (d)** have been provided in Part I of the death certificate for reporting conditions involved in the sequence of events leading directly to death and for indicating the causal relationship of the reported conditions. In cases where the decedent had more than four causally related conditions leading to death, certifiers have been instructed to report all of these conditions and to add line, (e), to indicate the relationship of the conditions. In the ACME system, provision has been made for identifying conditions reported on the additional “due to” line in Part I. Code conditions reported on line (e) or in equivalent “due to” positions as having been reported on separate lines. (Refer to Section II, Part I, 2, Reject code 9 - More than four “due to” statements, for instructions for coding certificates with conditions reported on more than **five** “due to” lines.)

I (a)	Shock due to pneumonia	R579
(b)	Rupture of esophageal varices	J189
(c)	Cirrhosis of liver due to alcoholism	I859
(d)		K746
(e)		F102

2. Connecting termsa. “Due to” written in or implied

When the certifier has stated that one condition was due to another or has used another connecting term that implies a due to relationship between conditions in Part I, enter the codes as though the conditions had been reported, one due to the other, on separate lines. Code the conditions on each of the remaining lines in Part I, if there are any, as though they had been reported on the succeeding line. (Refer to Section II, Part I, 2, Reject code 9 - More than four “due to” statements, for instructions for coding certificates with more than four “due to” statements).

I (a)	Myocardial infarction as a result of	I219
(b)	ASHD	I251

Interpret “as a result of” as “due to” and code the ASHD on I(b).

I (a)	Stomach hemorrhage from gastric ulcer	K922
(b)	Cholecystitis	K259
(c)		K819

Because of the implied “due to,” code the gastric ulcer on I(b) and the cholecystitis on I(c).

- (1) The following connecting terms should be interpreted as meaning “due to” or “as a consequence of” when the entity immediately preceding and following these terms is a disease condition, nature of injury, or an external cause.

after	incident to	received in
arising in or during	incurred after	resulting from
as (a) complication of	incurred during	resulting when
as a result of	incurred in	secondary to (2°)
because of	incurred when	subsequent to
caused by	induced by	sustained as
complication(s) of	occurred after	sustained by
during	occurred during	sustained during
etiology	occurred in	sustained in
following	occurred when	sustained when
for	occurred while	sustained while
from	origin	
in	received from	

I (a) Myocardial infarction	I219
(b) Nephritis due to arteriosclerosis	N059
(c) Hypertension from toxic goiter	I709
(d)	I10
(e)	E050

Both “due to” and “from” indicate the conditions following these terms are moved to the next due to position.

I (a) Neurological devastation due to stroke	
(b)	I64

Neurological devastation is a disease condition. Move stroke down to the next due to position.

I (a) Death from heart attack	I219
(b)	

Death is not a disease condition, nature of injury, or external cause. Do not reformat heart attack.

I (a) Complication from diabetes	E149
----------------------------------	------

Complication is not a disease condition, nature of injury, or external cause. Do not reformat diabetes.

## Part C

## Format

- (2) When one of the previous terms is the first entry in Part II, indicating that the following entry is a continuation of Part I, code in Part I in next due to position.

I (a) Respiratory failure	J969
(b) Cardiac arrest	I469
(c) Coronary occlusion	I219
(d)	I251
II due to ASHD	

Since Part II is indicated to be a continuation of Part I, code the ASHD on I(d).

- (3) Certain connecting terms imply that the condition following the connecting term was “due to” the condition preceding it. In such cases, enter the code for the condition following the connecting term on the line above that for the condition that preceded it.

Interpret the following connecting terms as meaning that the condition following the term was due to the condition that preceded it:

as a cause of	manifested by
cause of	producing
caused	resulted in
causing	resulting in
followed by	underlying
induced	with resultant
leading to	with resulting
led to	

I (a) Myocardial infarction	I469
(b) followed by cardiac arrest	I219
(c)	

Code the cardiac arrest on I(a) since “followed by” indicates it was due to the myocardial infarction.

I (a) Respiratory arrest	R092
(b) Pulmonary edema	J81
(c) Bronchitis with resulting pneumonia	J189 I469
(d) and cardiac arrest	J40

Code the pneumonia and cardiac arrest on I(c) since “with resulting” indicates they were due to the bronchitis.

b. Not indicating a “due to” relationship

When conditions are separated by “and” or by another connecting term that does not imply a “due to” relationship, enter the codes for these conditions on the same line in the order that the conditions are reported on the certificate.

The following terms imply that conditions are meant to remain on the same line. They are separated by “and” or by another connecting term that does not **imply** a “due to” relationship:

and	consistent with
accompanied by	with ( $\bar{c}$ )
also	precipitated by
associated with	predisposing (to)
complicated by	superimposed on
complicating	

I (a) Acute bronchitis superimposed on	J209	J439
(b) Emphysema		
(c) Tobacco abuse (smokes 3 packs a day)	F171	F179

Interpret “superimposed on” as “and.” Enter the code for the condition on I(b) as the second code on I(a). Do not enter a code on I(b).

I (a) MI	I219
(b) ASHD	I251
(c) Hypertension	I10
(d) Diabetes	E149 E142
II also diabetic nephropathy	

Consider “also” as a connecting word that does not imply “due to” and code Part II as a continuation of I(d).

3. Condition entered above line I(a)

When a condition is reported on the certificate above line I(a), enter the code for this condition on I(a). Code the condition(s) entered on line I(a) on line I(b); then code the conditions entered on each of the remaining line(s) in Part I as though they had been reported on the succeeding lines.

Part C

Format

Myocardial infarction

- |       |                              |      |
|-------|------------------------------|------|
| I (a) | Pulmonary embolism           | I219 |
|       | (b) Congestive heart failure | I269 |
|       | (c) Congenital heart disease | I500 |
|       | (d)                          | Q249 |

Code the condition entered above I(a) on I(a), then code the condition entered on I(a) on I(b); then code the conditions entered on each of the remaining line(s) in Part I as though they had been reported on the succeeding lines.

4. Condition reported between lines in Part I

When a condition is reported between I(a) and I(b) or I(b) and I(c) or I(c) and I(d), without a connecting term, enter the code for this condition on the following “due to” line. Code the conditions entered on each of the remaining line(s) in Part I as though they had been reported on the succeeding line.

- |       |                    |      |
|-------|--------------------|------|
| I (a) | Pneumonia          | J189 |
|       | Bronchitis         |      |
|       | (b) Emphysema      | J40  |
|       | (c) Cancer of lung | J439 |
|       | (d)                | C349 |

Code the condition reported between lines I(a) and I(b) in the next “due to” position, and move the codes for conditions reported on lines I(b) and I(c) downward.

When a condition is reported between I(a) and I(b) or I(b) and I(c) or I(c) and I(d) with a connecting word, consider as a continuation of the line above and code accordingly unless there is a definite indication that it is a continuation of the line below.

- |       |                               |      |     |
|-------|-------------------------------|------|-----|
| I (a) | Cerebral hemorrhage           | I619 | I64 |
|       | $\bar{c}$ CVA                 |      |     |
|       | (b) Cerebral arteriosclerosis | I672 |     |

Code the condition entered between I(a) and I(b) as a continuation of I(a).

- |       |                               |          |
|-------|-------------------------------|----------|
| I (a) | Cerebral hemorrhage           | I619     |
|       | $\bar{c}$ CVA                 |          |
|       | (b) Cerebral arteriosclerosis | I672 I64 |
- 

Since the certifier indicated by an arrow that the condition entered between I(a) and I(b) was a continuation of I(b), code the CVA on I(b).

## Part C

## Format

I (a)	Cerebrovascular accident due to cerebral hemorrhage	I64
(b)	Cerebral arteriosclerosis	I619
(c)		I672

Consider the condition entered between I(a) and I(b) as a continuation of I(a) and code accordingly.

5. Condition reported as due to I(a), I(b), or I(c)

When a condition(s) in Part I is reported with a specific statement interpreted or stated as “due to” another on lines I(a), I(b), I(c), or I(d), rearrange the codes according to the certifier’s statement. **Do not apply** this instruction to such statements reported in Part II.

I (a)	Myocardial failure	I249
(b)	Pneumonia	I509
(c)	Myocardial ischemia	J189
	due to (a)                      3wks	

Accept the certifier’s statement that the condition reported on I(c) is “due to” the condition on I(a). Move the codes for conditions reported on I(a) and I(b) downward. (Apply the duration on I(c) to the myocardial ischemia).

I (a)	Heart failure	I509	N19
(b)	Pneumonia	J189	
(c)	Uremia due to (b)		

Take into account the certifier’s statement on I(c) and code the condition reported on I(c) as the second entry on I(a).

I (a)	Carcinomatosis	I469
(b)	Cancer of lung	C80
(c)	Cardiorespiratory arrest due to above	C349

Take into account the certifier’s statement and code the cardiorespiratory arrest on I(a), then move the codes for the remaining conditions downward.

I (a)	Coronary thrombosis	I219
(b)	Chronic nephritis	N039
(c)	Arteriosclerosis	I709
II	Uremia caused by above	N19

Disregard the certifier’s statement, “caused by above,” reported in Part II.

6. Conditions reported in Part II

Enter the codes for entries in Part II in the order the entries are reported, proceeding from the entry reported uppermost in Part II downward and from left to right, if there is more than one entry on the same line. If the conditions are numbered, code in numerical order.

I (a) MI	I219			
(b) ASHD	I251			
(c)				
II Pneumonia				
Heart murmur, arteriosclerosis	J189	R011	I709	

7. Deletion of “due to” on the death certificate

When the certifier has indicated that conditions in Part I were not causally related by marking through items I(a), I(b), I(c), and /or I(d), or through the printed “due to, or as a consequence of” which appears below items I(a) – I(c) on the death certificate, proceed as follows:

- a. If the deletion(s) indicates that none of the conditions in Part I were causally related, consider as though all of the conditions had been reported on the uppermost used line. In determining the order of the codes, proceed from I(a) downward and from left to right if more than one condition is reported on a line.

I <del>(a)</del> Heart disease	I519	I10	N039	
<del>(b)</del> Malignant hypertension				
<del>(c)</del> Chronic nephritis				
II Cancer of kidney	C64			
I (a) Cardiac failure	I509	I251	J439	J40
<del>(b)</del> Arteriosclerotic heart disease				
<del>(c)</del> Emphysema and bronchitis				
(d)				

- b. If only item I(b), I(c), or I(d) or the printed “due to, or as a consequence of” which appears below lines I(a), I(b), or I(c) is marked through, consider the condition(s) reported on the crossed out line as though reported as the last entry (or entries) on the preceding line.

**SECTION II**

**General Instructions**

**Part C**

**Format**

I	(a) Diabetes (b) (c) BPH	E149	N40
I	(a) Cardiac arrest (b) Cirrhosis of liver (c) Alcoholism	I469	K746 F102
I	(a) Congestive failure (b) ASHD (c)	I500	I251
II	Pneumonia	J189	
I	(a) Heart block (b) Degenerative myocarditis (c) Cerebral hemorrhage	I459 I514	I619
II	Bronchopneumonia	J180	

c. If only one part of the printed “due to, or as a consequence of” which appears below I(a), I(b), and I(c) is marked through, consider the condition(s) reported on that line as though reported as the last entry (or entries) on the preceding line.

I	(a) Cardiorespiratory failure Due to, or as a consequence of	R092	
	(b) Infarction of brain <del>Due to, or as a consequence of</del>	I639	I259
	(c) Ischemic heart disease Due to, or as a consequence of		

Code ischemic heart disease as though reported as second entry on I(b).

8. Deletion of “Part II” on death certificate

When the certifier has marked through the printed Part II, code the condition(s) reported in Part II as the last entry on the lowest used line in Part I.

I	(a) Apoplectic coma	I64	
	(b) Ruptured aneurysm, brain	I6090	
	(c) Arteriosclerosis	I709	
	(d) ESRD	N180	I10
II	and hypertension		

Since Part II is indicated to be a continuation of I(d), code hypertension as last entry on I(d).

## Part C

## Format

I (a) Myocarditis	I514	I219	I500	I250	E149
<del>(b) M.I.</del>					
<del>(c) CHF</del>					
<del>(d) Cardiovascular arteriosclerosis</del>					
H Diabetes					
I (a) M.I.		I219			
(b) Uremia		N19			
(c) Arteriosclerosis		I709			
(d) Hypertension		I10	N059		
H Nephritis					

9. Numbering of causes reported in Part I

- a. When the certifier has numbered all causes or lines in Part I, that is 1, 2, 3, etc., code these entries as if reported on the same line. This instruction applies whether or not the numbering extends into Part II, and it also applies whether or not the “due to” below lines I(a) and/or I(b) and/or I(c) are marked through.

I (a) 1. Coronary thrombosis	I219	I250	I10	I709	N289	J1110
(b) 2. ASCVD						
(c) 3. Hypertension and arteriosclerosis						
(d) 4. Renal disease						
II 5. Influenza						

Code all the entries on I(a).

- b. When part of the causes in Part I are numbered, make the interpretation for coding such entries on an individual basis.

I (a) 1. Bronchopneumonia	J180	C169
(b) 2. Cancer of stomach		
(c) Chronic nephritis	N039	

Enter the codes for the conditions numbered “1” and “2” on I(a) in the order indicated by the certifier. Do not enter a code on I(b); however, enter the code for the condition on I(c) on that line.

I (a) Bronchopneumonia	J180
(b) 1. Cancer of stomach	C169 N039
(c) 2. Chronic nephritis	

Enter the codes for conditions numbered “1” and “2” on I(b) in the order indicated by the certifier. Do not enter a code on I(c).

## Part C

## Format

I	(a)	Congestive heart failure	I500		
	(b)	Influenza	J1110		
	(c)	1. Pulmonary emphysema	J439	J449	C349
	(d)	2. COPD			
II		3. Cancer of lung			

Enter the codes for the conditions numbered 1, 2, and 3 on I(c) in the order indicated by the certifier. Do not enter a code on I(d) or in Part II.

- c. When the causes in Part I are numbered, and an entry is stated or implied as “due to” another, enter the code(s) connected by the stated or implied “due to” in the next “due to” position, followed by the codes for the **remaining numbered** causes.

I	(a)	1. Bronchopneumonia due to	J180		
	(b)	influenza	J1110	J841	J40
	(c)	2. Pulmonary fibrosis 3. Bronchitis			

Enter the code for the condition followed by the stated “due to” on I(b), followed by codes for the conditions numbered “2” and “3.” Do not enter a code on I(c).

I	(a)	1. Pneumonia	J189		
	(b)	MI	I219	I251	
	(c)	2. ASHD			

Code the condition numbered “2” as a continuation of I(b). Leave I(c) blank.

10. Punctuation marks

- a. Disregard punctuation marks such as a period, comma, semicolon, colon, dash, slash, question mark, or exclamation mark when placed at the end of a line in Part I. Do not apply this instruction to a hyphen (-), which indicates a word is incomplete.

I	(a)	Myocardial infarct?	I219		
	(b)	Meningitis, mastoiditis	G039	H709	
	(c)	Otitis media	H669		

Disregard the punctuation marks and code the conditions reported on I(a), I(b), and I(c) as indicated by the certifier.

## Part C

## Format

I (a) Chronic rheu -	I099	I958
(b) matic heart disease, chronic hypotension		
(c) Cancer	C80	

Regard the conditions reported on I(b) as a continuation of I(a). Do not enter a code on I(b).

- b. When conditions are separated by a slash (/), code each condition as indexed.

I (a) Cardiac arrest/respiratory arrest/pneumonia	I469	R092	J189
(b) ASHD	I251		

Disregard the slash and code conditions as indexed.

- c. When a dash (-) or slash (/) is used to separate sites reported with one condition and the combination of the sites is indexed to a single ICD-10 code, disregard the punctuation and code as indexed. This does not apply to commas.

I (a) Cardiac-respiratory arrest	I469
----------------------------------	------

Code as one code assignment since the 2 sites are indexed as Arrest, cardiorespiratory.

I (a) Cardiac, respiratory arrest	I469	R092
-----------------------------------	------	------

Code each site separately since this instruction does not apply to commas.

I (a) Cardiac respiratory arrest	I469
----------------------------------	------

Code as one code assignment since the 2 sites are indexed as Arrest, cardiorespiratory.

- d. When conditions are indexed together yet separated by a comma, code conditions separately. If the term following the comma is an adjective, refer to Section II, Part B, 1, b (1).

I (a) Cancer, cachexia	C80	R64
(b) Anxiety, depression	F419	F329

Code each term separately even though indexed together.

---

11. Conditions in the duration box

When a condition is entered in the duration block, code the condition on the same line where it is reported.

	<u>Duration</u>		
I (a) Arteriosclerotic heart disease	CVA	I251	I64
(b)			
(c)			
II Arteriosclerosis		I709	

Code the condition reported in the duration block as the last entry on I(a).

## Part D

## Doubtful Diagnosis

D. Doubtful diagnosis1. Doubtful qualifying expression

- a. When expressions such as “apparently,” “presumably,” “?”, “perhaps,” and “possibly,” qualify any condition, disregard these expressions and code condition as indexed.

I (a) ? hemorrhage of stomach	K922
(b) Possible ulcer of stomach	K259

Disregard “?” and code hemorrhage of stomach on I(a) as reported.  
Disregard “possible” and code ulcer of stomach on I(b) as reported.

I (a) Heart disease, probable ASHD	I519 I251
------------------------------------	-----------

Disregard “probable” and code heart disease and ASHD on I(a).

<u>Place</u> I (a) Pneumonia, probably aspiration	J189 T179 &W80
9	

Disregard the “probably” and code both pneumonia and aspiration as indexed.

- b. When these expressions are reported at the end of a line in Part I, **do not** consider to be a continuation of the next lower line.

I (a) Heart disease probably	I519
(b) Acute myocardial infarction	I219

Disregard “probably” and code heart disease on I(a) and acute myocardial infarction on I(b).

I (a) Cardiovascular disease presumably	I516
(b) Cerebral thrombosis	I633

Disregard “presumably” and code each condition on the line where it is reported.

## Part D

## Doubtful Diagnosis

- c. When these expressions are reported at the beginning of a line in Part I, **do not** consider to be a continuation of the line above it.

I	(a) Heart disease	I519
	(b) Possibly acute myocardial infarction	I219

Disregard “possibly” and code each condition on the line where it is reported.

- d. When these expressions are reported at the beginning of Part II, **do not** consider to be a continuation of Part I.

I	(a) Heart disease probably	I519
	(b)	
	(c)	
II	Probably MI	I219

Disregard “probably” and code heart disease on I(a) and MI in Part II.

2. Interpretation of “either...or...”

Consider the following as a statement of “either or:”

- Two conditions reported on **one** line and **both** conditions qualified by expressions such as “apparently,” “presumably,” “?,” “perhaps,” and “possibly”
- Two or more conditions connected by “or” or “versus”

Code using the following instructions:

- a. When a condition of more than one site is qualified by a statement of “either...or...” and both sites are classified to the **same system**, code the condition to the residual category for the **system**.

I	(a) Pneumonia	J189
	(b) Cancer of kidney or bladder	C689

Code I(b) C689, malignant neoplasm of other and unspecified urinary organs.

I	(a) Heart failure	I509
	(b) Coronary or pulmonary blood clot	I749

Code I(b) I749, blood clot.

## Part D

## Doubtful Diagnosis

- b. When a condition of more than one site is qualified by a statement of “either...or...” and these sites are in different systems, code to the residual category for the disease or condition specified.

I (a) Cardiac arrest	I469
(b) Carcinoma of gallbladder or kidney	C80

Code I(b) C80, malignant neoplasm without specification of site.

I (a) Respiratory failure	J969
(b) Congenital anomaly of heart or lungs	Q899

Code I(b) Q899, anomaly, congenital, unspecified.

- c. When conditions are qualified by a statement of “either...or...” and **only one site/system** is involved, code to the residual category for the site/system.

I (a) Apparently stroke, perhaps heart attack	I99
---	-----

Since both conditions are preceded by a doubtful qualifying expression, consider as a statement of “either...or...” Stroke and heart attack are classified to the circulatory system. Code to Disease, circulatory system, NEC.

I (a) Pulmonary edema	J81
(b) Tuberculosis or cancer of lung	J9840

Code I(b) J9840, lung disease NOS.

**Note:** When embolism and thrombosis are qualified by a statement of “either...or...,” code to Clot (I749)

I (a) Cardiac thrombosis vs pulmonary embolism	I749
--	------

Code I(a) I749, Clot (blood). Embolism and thrombosis are both blood clots, and Clot NOS is a more specific category than Disease, circulatory system.

## Part D

## Doubtful Diagnosis

- d. When conditions are classified to the same three character category with different fourth characters, code to the three character category with fourth character “9.”

I (a) ASCVD vs ASHD I259

Code to I259 the residual category. ASCVD and ASHD are both classified to I25.-, chronic ischemic heart disease.

- e. When conditions are classified to different three character categories and Volume 1 provides a residual category for the diseases in general, code to that residual category.

I (a) MI vs coronary aneurysm I259

Code to I259 the residual category for ischemic heart disease. MI and coronary aneurysm are both classified as “ischemic heart diseases.”

- f. When conditions involving different systems are qualified by “either... or...,” and cannot be classified to the residual category for the disease, code R688, other specified general symptoms and signs.

I (a) Coma R402  
 (b) ? gallbladder colic ? coronary R688  
 thrombosis

Code I(b) R688, other ill-defined conditions. (Consider the two question marks on a single line as “either...or...”).

- g. When diseases and injuries are qualified by “either... or...,” code R99, other unknown and unspecified cause, provided this is the only entry on the certificate. When other classifiable entries are reported, omit R99.

I (a) Head injury or CVA R99

Code I(a) R99, other unknown and unspecified cause.

- h. For doubtful diagnosis in reference to “either... or...” **accidents**, **suicides**, and **homicides**, refer to Section V, Part A, External Cause Code Concept.

## Part E

Conditions Specified as “Healed” or “History of”

---

E. Conditions specified as “healed” or “history of”

The Classification provides sequela categories for certain conditions qualified as “healed” or “history of.” Refer to Section IV, Part F, Sequela. When the Classification does not provide a code or a sequela category for a condition qualified as “healed” or “history of,” code the condition as though not qualified by this term.

I (a) Myocardial infarction	I219
(b)	
(c)	
II Gastritis, healed	K297

Code K297, gastritis NOS in Part II.

## Part F

Coding Entries Such as “Same,” “Ditto (”),” “As Above”

---

F. Coding entries such as “same,” “ditto (”),” “as above”

When the certifier enters “same,” “ditto mark (”),” “as above,” etc., in a “due to” position to a specified condition, do not enter a code for that line.

I (a) Coronary occlusion	I219
(b) Same	
(c) Hypertension	I10

Do not enter a code on I(b) for the entry “same.”

I (a) Pneumonia	J189
(b) ”	
(c) Emphysema	J439

Do not enter a code on I(b) for the “ ditto mark (”).”

Part G

Conditions Qualified by “Postmortem,” “Rule Out,” “Ruled Out,” “R/O”

---

G. Conditions qualified by “postmortem,” “rule out,” “ruled out,” “r/o”

When a condition is qualified by “postmortem,” “rule out,” “ruled out,” or “r/o,” etc., **do not** enter a code for the condition.

## Part H

Nonindexed and Illegible Entries

---

H. Nonindexed and illegible entries1. Terms that are not indexed

When a term is reported that does not appear in the ICD-10 Index, refer the term to the supervisor.

2. Illegible entries

When an illegible entry is the **only** entry on the certificate, code R99. When an illegible entry is reported with other classifiable entries, disregard the illegible entry and code the remaining entries as indexed.

Part I

Coding One-Character Reject Codes

I. Coding one-character reject codes

When a death record qualifies for more than one reject code, code only one in this order: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 9.

1. Reject code 1-5–Inconsistent duration

When a duration of an entity in a “due to” position is shorter than that of an entity reported on a line above it and only **one** codable entity is reported on each of these lines, enter a reject code (1-5) in the appropriate data position. When more than one codable entity is reported on the same line, disregard the duration entered on that line. Use the appropriate reject code even though there are lines without a duration or with more than one codable entity between the entities with the inconsistent duration; in such cases, consider the inconsistency to be between the line immediately above and the line with the shorter duration.

If the inconsistent duration is between:

Lines	<u>Enter Reject Code</u>
I (a) and I (b).....	1
I (b) and I (c).....	2
I (c) and I (d).....	3
I (d) and I (e) .....	4
Inconsistent durations between more than two lines in Part I, or any situation where reject codes 1-4 would not be applicable .....	5

**Do not** enter a reject code if the only inconsistency is between the durations of malignant neoplasms classifiable to C00-C96.

I (a) ASHD	10 yrs.	I251
(b) Chronic nephritis and hypertension	5 yrs.	N039 I10
(c) Diabetes	5 yrs.	E149

Reject 2

Disregard the duration on I(b), since more than one codable entity is reported on this line. Only **one** codable entity is reported on lines I(a) and I(c) and the duration of the diabetes was shorter than that of ASHD. For the purposes of assigning the reject code, consider the duration on I(b) to be at least as long as the duration on I(a). Therefore, enter reject code 2 denoting an inconsistency between I(b) and I(c).

## Part I

## Coding One-Character Reject Codes

I (a) ASHD	5 yrs	I251	
(b) Chronic nephritis and hypertension	10 yrs	N039	I10
(c) Diabetes	5 yrs	E149	

**Do not** enter reject code 2. The duration on I(b) is disregarded. The duration of diabetes on I(c) was not shorter than that of ASHD on I(a).

I (a) Cardiac arrest		I469	
(b) Congestive heart failure	1 week	I500	
(c) Cancer of stomach	1 year	C169	
(d) Metastatic cancer of lung	6 months	C780	

**Do not** use reject code 3 since the inconsistent duration is between malignant neoplasms.

I (a) Basilar artery thrombosis	7 weeks	I630	
(b) Renal failure	4 weeks	N19	
(c) Pneumonia	1 week	J189	

Reject 5

Enter reject code 5 since the inconsistent durations are between more than 2 lines.

Age 1 yr.

I (a) Congenital nephrosis	life	N049	
(b)			
(c) Intestinal hemorrhage	1 day	K922	

Reject 5

Enter reject code 5 since reject codes 1-4 are not applicable.

## Part I

## Coding One-Character Reject Codes

2. Reject code 9 – More than four “due to” statements

When certifier’s entries or reformatting result in more than **four** statements of “due to,” continue the remaining codes horizontally on the **fifth** line and enter reject **code 9** in the appropriate position.

I (a)	Terminal pneumonia	J189
(b)	Congestive heart failure	I500
(c)	Myocardial infarction	I219
(d)	ASHD	I251
(e)	Generalized arteriosclerosis	I709 E039
(f)	Myxedema	

Reject 9

Enter the code for the myxedema reported on the fifth “due to” line, I(f), following the code for the condition reported on this line (generalized arteriosclerosis). Enter reject code 9 in the appropriate data position.

If there are more than four “due to” statements in Part I and there is no codable condition reported on one or more lines, consider the condition(s) on each subsequent “due to” line as though reported on the preceding line. Enter reject code 9 only if, after reformatting, there are codable conditions on more than five lines.

I (a)	Pneumonia	J189
(b)	Debilitating illness	G839
(c)	Paralysis following CVA	I64
(d)	Hypertension due to	I10
(e)	adrenal adenoma	D350

Do not enter reject code 9. Since debilitating illness is not a codable condition, enter the code for paralysis on I(b), the code for CVA on I(c), etc. As a result of the rearrangement of the conditions, there are codable conditions on only five lines.

When a death record qualifies for more than one reject, prefer a reject code for inconsistent durations over reject code 9.

## Part J

Inclusion of Additional Information (AI)  
to Mortality Source DocumentsJ. Inclusion of additional information (AI) to mortality source documents

Code supplemental information when it modifies or supplements data on the original mortality source document.

1. When additional information (AI) **states** the underlying cause of a **specified disease in Part I**, code the additional information (AI) in a “due to” position to the specified disease.

I	(a) Pulmonary edema	J81
	(b) Congestive heart failure	I500
	(c) Arteriosclerosis	I251
	(d)	I709

## II

AI The underlying cause of the congestive heart failure was ASHD.

Since the certifier **states** the underlying cause of the congestive heart failure is ASHD, code I251 on I(c) and move the condition on I(c) to the next “due to” position.

2. When additional information (AI) **modifies** a disease condition, use the AI and code the disease modified by the AI in the position **first** indicated by the certifier.

I	(a) Pneumonia	J181
	(b)	
	(c)	
AI	Lobar pneumonia	

Code lobar pneumonia as the **specified** type of pneumonia on I(a) only.

3. When there is a stated or implied complication of surgery and the additional information indicates the condition for which surgery was performed, code this condition in a “due to” position to the surgery when reported in Part I and following the surgery when reported in Part II. Precede this code with an ampersand (&).

I	(a) Coronary occlusion	T818
	(b) Gastrectomy	&Y836
	(c)	&K259
AI	Gastrectomy done for gastric ulcer.	

Code the condition necessitating the surgery on I(c) and precede this code with an ampersand.

## Part J

Inclusion of Additional Information (AI)  
to Mortality Source Documents

---

I (a)	Respiratory arrest	R092		
(b)	Septicemia	T814		
(c)				
II	Uremia, cholecystectomy	N19	&Y836	&K802
AI	Surgery for gallstones			

Code the condition necessitating the surgery following the E-code for surgery in Part II.

4. When additional information (AI) **states** a certain condition is the **underlying cause** of death, **code** this condition in Part I in a “due to” position (on a separate line) to the conditions reported on the original death record.

I (a)	Cardiac arrest	I469
(b)	MI	I219
(c)	ASHD	I251
(d)		E149
II		
AI	U.C. was diabetes	

Accept the certifier’s statement that the underlying cause of death was “diabetes,” and code this condition on I(d) in a “due to” position to the conditions originally reported in Part I.

5. When any morphological type of neoplasm is reported in Part I with no mention of a “site” and additional information specifies a site, **code** the specified site **only** on the line where the morphological type is reported.

I (a)	Cancer	C349
(b)		
(c)		
II		
AI	Cancer of lung	

Code only the specified cancer (lung) on I(a).

## Part J

Inclusion of Additional Information (AI)  
to Mortality Source Documents

6. When additional information states the primary site of a malignant neoplasm, code this condition in a “due to” position to the other malignant neoplasms reported in Part I.

I (a)	Metastatic neoplasm	C80
(b)	Metastasis to liver	C787
(c)		C189

## II

AI Colon was primary site.

Code the stated primary site on I(c) in a “due to” position to the other neoplasms reported in Part I.

I (a)	Carcinomatosis	C80
(b)		C61
(c)		

## II

AI Prostate was probably the primary site.

Code the presumptive primary site (prostate) on I(b) in a “due to” position to the stated neoplasm reported on the original death certificate.

7. When the additional information **does not modify** a condition on the certificate, or **does not state** that this condition is the underlying cause, code the AI as the last condition(s) in Part II. Code AI reported on the certificate beginning with the uppermost downward and from left to right.

I (a)	Coronary thrombosis	I219
(b)	HASCVD	I119
(c)		
II	Hypertension	I10 I709 I64 I258
AI	Arteriosclerosis, CVA, old MI	

The additional information does not modify conditions on the certificate. Code as the last entries in Part II.

	Male, 30 minutes-Twin B	
I (a)	Immature	P073
(b)		
(c)		
II	Atelectasis	P281 P015 P070

Code the additional information in the order reported, uppermost downward and from left to right.

K. Amended certificates

When an “amended certificate” is submitted, **code** the conditions reported on the amended certificate only.

## Part L

## Effect of Age of Decedent on Classification

L. Effect of age of decedent on classification

Always note the **age of the decedent** at the time the causes of death are being coded. Certain groups of categories are provided for certain age groups. There are several conditions within certain categories which cannot be properly classified unless the **age** is taken into consideration. Use the following terms to identify certain age groups:

1. NEWBORN OR NEONATAL means **less than 28 days** of age at the time of death.

Code any index term with the indentation of “newborn,” “neonatal,” “neonatorum,” “perinatal,” “perinatal period,” “fetus or newborn,” or “fetal” ( in this priority order) to the newborn category if the decedent is less than 28 days of age or there is evidence the condition originated in the first 27 days of life, even though death may have occurred later.

Female, 4 hours

I (a) Anoxia		P219
(b) Cerebral hemorrhage		P524

Since the age of decedent is less than 28 days, code anoxia of newborn, and cerebral hemorrhage of newborn.

Male, 31 days

I (a) Pulmonary hemorrhage	<u>Duration</u> 26 days	P269
(b)		

Since the condition originated in the first 27 days of life, code as a newborn.

2. INFANT or INFANTILE means **less than 1 year** of age at the time of death.

Male, 9 months

I (a) Pneumonia		J189
(b) Osteomalacia		E550

Since the decedent is less than 1 year of age at the time of death, code Osteomalacia, infantile.

## Part L

## Effect of Age of Decedent on Classification

3. CHILD or CHILDHOOD means **less than 18 years of age** at the time of death.

Male, 11 years

I (a) Asthma J450

Code as Asthma, childhood.

4. Congenital anomalies (Q00-Q99)

Regard the conditions listed below as congenital and code to the appropriate congenital category if death occurred within the age limitations stated, provided there is no indication that they were acquired after birth.

- a. Less than 28 days:

heart disease NOS  
hydrocephalus NOS

Male, 27 days

I (a) Renal failure N19  
(b) Hydrocephalus Q039

Code the hydrocephalus as congenital since the decedent was less than 28 days of age at the time of death.

- b. Less than 1 year:

aneurysm (aorta) (aortic)	cyst of brain
(brain) (cerebral) (circle of Willis) (coronary)	deformity
(peripheral) (racemose)	displacement of organ
(retina) (venous)	ectopia of organ
aortic stenosis	hypoplasia of organ
atresia	pulmonary stenosis
atrophy of brain	valvular heart disease (any valve)

Female, 3 months

I (a) Pneumonia J189  
(b) Cyst of brain Q046

Code cyst of brain as congenital since the age of the decedent is less than 1 year.

## Part L

Effect of Age of Decedent on Classification

---

5. Congenital syphilis

Regard syphilis and conditions that are qualified as syphilitic as congenital and code to the appropriate congenital syphilis category if the decedent was less than two years of age.

Male, 16 mos

I (a) Syphilitic pneumonia	A500
(b)	
(c)	

Code congenital syphilitic pneumonia since age is less than 2 years.

## Part L

## Effect of Age of Decedent on Classification

6. Age limitation

Some categories in ICD-10 are limited by provisions of the Classification to certain ages. Code the categories listed below only if the age at the time of death was as follows:

## a. Age 28 days or over

A32	E14	J13	R00
A35	E162	J14	R01
A40	E561	J15	R048
A41	E63	J16	R090
A56	E834	J18	R092
A74	E835	J43	R11
B30	F10	J80	R17
B370	F11	J849	R230
B371	F12	J96	R233
B372	F13	J981	R290
B373	F14	J982	R40
B374	F15	J984	R50
B375	F16	J988	R53
B376	F17	K27	R56
B377	F18	K631	R58
B378	F19	K65	R60
B379	G473	K92	R633
D65	G700	L01	R680
D751	I48	L10	R681
E05	I49	L50	
E10	I50	L530	
E11	I61	M34	
E12	I62	N390	
E13	J12	N61	

Male, age 25 days

I (a) Urinary tract infection P393  
(b)

Code urinary tract infection, newborn since age is less than 28 days.

## Part L

## Effect of Age of Decedent on Classification

Female, age 27 days

I (a) Respiratory failure	P285
(b)	
(c)	

Code respiratory failure, newborn since age is less than 28 days.

Female, age 28 days

I (a) Atelectasis	J981
(b)	
(c)	

Code atelectasis, J981 since age is reported as 28 days.

b. Age under 1 year:

R95

c. Age 1 year or over:

R960

Age 1 year

I (a) Sudden infant death syndrome	R960
------------------------------------	------

d. Age 5 years or over:

X60-X84

Age 4 years

<u>Place</u> I (a) GSW to head Suicide	S019 &W34
--	-----------

9

M. Sex limitations

Certain categories in ICD-10 are limited to one sex:

For Males Only

B260  
C60-C63  
D074-D076  
D176  
D29.-  
D40.-  
E29.-  
E895  
F524  
I861  
L291  
N40-N50  
Q53-Q55  
Q98  
R86  
S312-S313

For Females Only

A34	M830
B373	N70-N98
C51-C58	N992-N993
C796	O00-O99
D06.-	P546
D070-D073	Q50-Q52
D25-D28	Q96
D39.-	Q97
E28.-	R87
E894	S314
F525	S374-S376
F53.-	T192-T193
I863	T833
L292	Y424
L705	Y425
M800-M801	Y76.-
M810-M811	

---

If the cause of death is inconsistent with the sex, code the cause of death to R99, other ill-defined and unspecified causes of mortality (R99).

Female, age 32

- I (a) Cancer of prostate  
(b)  
(c)

R99

Code other ill-defined and unspecified causes of mortality (R99).

## Part N

## Effect of Duration on Assignment of Codes

N. Effect of duration on assignment of codes

Before assigning codes, take into account any statements entered on the certificate in the spaces for duration since these statements may affect the code assignments for certain conditions.

1. Qualifying conditions as acute or chronic

- a. Usually the duration should **not** be used to qualify the condition as “acute” or “chronic.”

	<u>Duration</u>	
I (a) Nephritis	2 years	N059

Code nephritis as indexed. Do not use the duration to qualify the nephritis as chronic.

- b. However, when assigning codes to certain conditions classified as “ischemic heart diseases” the Classification provides the following specific guidelines for classifying a condition with a **stated** duration as acute or chronic:

- acute or with a stated duration of 4 weeks or less
- chronic or with a stated duration of over 4 weeks

	<u>Duration</u>	
I (a) Acute myocardial infarction	3 mos.	I258
(b)		
(c)		

Code Infarction, myocardium, chronic or with a stated duration of over 4 weeks, I258.

## Part N

## Effect of Duration on Assignment of Codes

- (1) For the purpose of interpreting these instructions:

Consider these terms:	To mean:
brief days hours immediate instant minutes recent short sudden weeks (few) (several)	4 weeks or less or acute
longstanding 1 month	over 4 weeks or chronic

	<u>Duration</u>	
I (a) Aneurysm heart	weeks	I219
(b)		
(c)		

Code Aneurysm, heart, acute or with a stated duration of 4 weeks or less, I219. “Weeks” is interpreted to mean 4 weeks or less.

- c. When the duration is stated to be “acute” or “chronic,” consider the condition to be specified as acute or chronic.

	<u>Duration</u>	
I (a) Heart failure	1 hour	I509
(b) Bronchitis	acute	J209

Code “acute” bronchitis on I(b).

2. Subacute

In general, code a disease that is specified as subacute as though qualified as acute if there is provision in the Classification for coding the acute form of the disease but **not** for the subacute form.

I (a) Subacute pyelonephritis	N10
-------------------------------	-----

Code subacute pyelonephritis to N10, acute pyelonephritis since there is no code for subacute pyelonephritis.

3. Exacerbation

Interpret “exacerbation” as an acute phase of a disease. Code “exacerbation” of a chronic specified disease to the acute and chronic stage of the disease if the Classification provides separate codes for “acute” and “chronic.”

I (a) Exacerbation of leukemia	C950
(b) Chronic lymphocytic leukemia	C911
I (a) Exacerbation of chronic	C910 C911
(b) lymphocytic leukemia	
I (a) Chronic leukemia with conversion to	C951 C950
(b) acute phase	
I (a) Exacerbation of chronic	N10 N119
(b) pyelonephritis	
I (a) Exacerbation of bronchitis	J209
(b)	
I (a) Acute exacerbation of chronic	J209 J42
(b) bronchitis	
I (a) Exacerbation of chronic	J441 J449
(b) obstructive lung disease	

Code the preceding examples to the acute and chronic stages of each specified disease since the Classification provides separate codes for the “acute” and “chronic.”

4. Acute and chronic

Sometimes the terms acute and chronic are reported preceding two or more diseases. In these cases, use the term (“acute” or “chronic”) with the condition it **immediately** precedes.

I (a) Chronic renal and liver failure	N189 K7290
---------------------------------------	------------

Code renal failure, chronic and liver failure NOS.

## Part N

## Effect of Duration on Assignment of Codes

5. Qualifying conditions as congenital or acquired

Code conditions classified as congenital in the Classification as congenital, even when not specified as congenital if the interval between onset and death and the age of the decedent indicate that the condition existed from birth.

	<u>Duration</u>	
Female, age 2 years		
I (a) Pneumonia	1 week	J189
(b) Heart disease	2 years	Q249

Code the condition on I(b) as congenital since the age of the decedent and the duration of the condition indicate that the heart disease existed at birth.

Do not use the interval between onset and death to qualify conditions that are classified to categories Q00-Q99, congenital anomalies, as acquired.

	<u>Duration</u>	
Male, 62 years		
I (a) Renal failure	3 months	N19
(b) Pulmonary stenosis	5 years	Q256

**Do not** use the duration to qualify the pulmonary stenosis as acquired.

6. Two conditions with one duration

When two or more conditions are entered on the same line with one duration, disregard the duration and code the conditions as indexed.

	<u>Duration</u>		
I (a) Myocardial ischemia and congestive heart failure	3 weeks	I259	I500
(b) Hypertension	5 years	I10	

Disregard the duration on I(a) and code the myocardial ischemia as indexed.

	<u>Duration</u>	
I (a) MI due to nephritis	3 months	I219
(b) Arteriosclerosis		N059
(c)		I709

Disregard the duration on I(a) and code myocardial infarction as indexed.

## Part N

## Effect of Duration on Assignment of Codes

7. Conflict in durations

When conflicting durations are entered for a condition, give preference to the duration entered in the space for interval between onset and death.

		<u>Duration</u>	
I (a) Ischemic heart disease	2 weeks	years	I259

Use the duration in the block to qualify the ischemic heart disease.

8. Span of dates

Interpret dates that are entered in the spaces for interval between onset and death separated by a slash (/), dash (-), etc., as meaning from the first date to the second date. Disregard such dates if they extend from one line to another and there is a condition reported on both of these lines since the span of dates could apply to either condition.

Date of death		<u>Duration</u>	
10-6-98	I (a) MI	10/1/98 -	I219
	(b) Ischemic heart disease	10/6/98	I259

Disregard duration and code each condition as indexed since the dates extend from I(a) to I(b).

Date of death		<u>Duration</u>	
10-6-98	I (a) Aneurysm of heart	10/1/98 - 10/6/98	I219
	(b)		

Since there is only one condition reported, apply the duration to this condition.

Date of death		<u>Duration</u>	
10-6-98	I (a) Ischemic heart disease	10/1/98 - 10/6/98	I249
	(b) Arteriosclerosis		I709

Apply the duration to I(a).

## Part O

## Relating and Modifying Conditions

O. Relating and modifying conditions1. Implied site of disease

Certain conditions are classified in the ICD-10 according to the site affected, e.g.:

atrophy	enlargement	obstruction
calcification	failure	perforation
calculus	fibrosis	rupture
congestion	gangrene	stenosis
degeneration	hypertrophy	stones
dilatation	insufficiency	stricture
embolism	necrosis	

(This list is not all inclusive)

Occasionally, these conditions are reported without specification of site. Relate conditions such as these for which the Classification does not provide a NOS code. Also relate conditions which are usually reported of a site. Generally, it may be assumed that such a condition was of the same site as another condition if the Classification provides for coding the condition of unspecified site to the site of the other condition. These coding principles apply whether or not there are other conditions reported on other lines in Part I. Apply the following instructions when relating a condition of unspecified site to the site of a specified condition:

a. General instructions for implied site of a disease(1) Conditions of unspecified site reported on the same line:

- (a) When conditions are reported on the same line, with or without a connecting term that implies a due to relationship, assume the condition of unspecified site was of the same site as the condition of specified site.

I (a) Congestive heart failure	I500
(b) Infarction with myocardial degeneration	I219 I515
(d) Coronary sclerosis	I251

Code the infarction as myocardial, the site of the condition reported on the same line.

## Part O

## Relating and Modifying Conditions

I	(a)	Aspiration pneumonia	J690
	(b)	Cerebrovascular accident due to	I64
	(c)	thrombosis	I633

Code the thrombosis as cerebral, the site of the condition reported on the same line.

I	(a)	Duodenal ulcer with internal hemorrhage	K269	K922
---	-----	---	------	------

Code Hemorrhage, duodenal (K922). Relate the internal hemorrhage to the site of the condition reported on the same line.

I	(a)	CVA with hemorrhage	I64	I619
	(b)	MI	I219	

Code Hemorrhage, cerebral (I619). Relate the hemorrhage to the site of the condition reported on the same line.

- (b) When conditions of different sites are reported on the same line, assume the condition of unspecified site was of the same site as the condition immediately preceding it.

I	(a)	ASHD, infarction, CVA	I251	I219	I64
	(b)				
	(c)				

Code Infarction, heart (I219). Relate the infarction to the site of the condition immediately preceding it.

- (2) Conditions of unspecified site reported on a separate line:

- (a) If there is only one condition of a specified site reported either on the line above or below it, code to this site.

I	(a)	Massive hemorrhage	K922
	(b)	Gastric ulceration	K259

Code the hemorrhage as gastric. Relate hemorrhage to the site of the condition reported on I(b).

## Part O

## Relating and Modifying Conditions

I (a) Uremia	N19
(b) Chronic prostatitis	N411
(c) Benign hypertrophy	N40

Code the hypertrophy as prostatic. Relate hypertrophy to prostate, the site of the condition reported on I (b).

I (a) Internal hemorrhage	K868
(b) Pancreatitis	K859

Code Hemorrhage, pancreas (K868). Relate the internal hemorrhage to the site of the condition reported on I(b).

- (b) If there are conditions of different specified sites on the lines above and below it **and** the Classification provides for coding the condition of unspecified site to only one of these sites, code to that site.

I (a) Intestinal fistula	K632
(b) Obstruction	K566
(c) Carcinoma of peritoneum	C482

Code the obstruction as intestinal since the Classification does not provide for coding obstruction of the peritoneum.

- (c) If there are conditions of different specified sites on the lines above and below it **and** the Classification provides for coding the condition of unspecified site to both of these sites, code the condition unspecified as to site.

I (a) CVA	I64
(b) Thrombosis	I829
(c) ASHD	I251

Code Thrombosis NOS on I(b). Do not relate the thrombosis since the Classification provides codes for both sites reported.

- (3) Do not relate conditions which are not reported in the first position on a line to the line above. It is acceptable to relate conditions not reported as the first condition on a line to the line below.

I (a) Kidney failure	N19
(b) Vascular insufficiency $\bar{c}$ thrombosis	I99 I219
(c) ASHD	I251

Code Thrombosis, cardiac (I219). Relate thrombosis to line below.

## Part O

## Relating and Modifying Conditions

- (4) When relating conditions to sites start at the top of the certificate and work down.

I (a) Hemorrhage	R5800
(b) Necrosis	K729
(c) Hepatoma	C220

The hemorrhage cannot be related. Relate necrosis to liver (K729), the site of the hepatoma.

b. Relating specific categories

- (1) When ulcer, site unspecified or peptic ulcer NOS is reported causing, due to, or on the same line with gastrointestinal hemorrhage, code peptic ulcer NOS (K279).

I (a) Gastrointestinal hemorrhage	K922
(b) Peptic ulcer	K279
(c)	

Code peptic ulcer (K279). Do not relate to gastrointestinal.

I (a) Ulcer causing gastrointestinal hemorrhage	K922
(b)	K279

Code ulcer to peptic ulcer (K279).

- (2) When ulcer NOS (L984) is reported causing, due to, or on the same line with diseases classifiable to K20-K22, K30-K31, and K65, code peptic ulcer NOS (K279).

I (a) Peritonitis	K659
(b) Ulcer	K279

Code Ulcer, peptic (K279).

- (3) When hernia (K40-K46) is reported with disease(s) of unspecified site(s), relate the disease of unspecified site to the intestine.

I (a) Hernia with hemorrhage	K469 K922
------------------------------	-----------

Code Hemorrhage, intestine.

## Part O

## Relating and Modifying Conditions

- (4) When calculus NOS or stones NOS is reported with pyelonephritis, code to N209 (urinary calculus).

I (a) Pyelonephritis with calculus N12 N209

Code calculus (N209) since it is reported with pyelonephritis.

- (5) When arthritis (any type) is reported with

- contracture – code contracture of the site
- deformity – code deformity acquired of the site

If no site is reported or if site is not indexed, code contracture or deformity, joint.

I (a) Phlebitis I809  
 (b) Contractures M245  
 (c) Osteoarthritis lower limbs M199

Code Contracture, joint (M245) since contracture lower limb is not indexed.

I (a) Pulmonary embolism I269  
 (b) Multiple deformities M219  
 (c) Arthritis in both hips M139

Code deformity (acquired) of hip.

- (6) When embolism, infarction, occlusion, thrombosis NOS is reported

- from a specified site - code the condition of the site reported
- of a site, from a specified site – code the condition to both sites reported

I (a) Congestive heart failure I500  
 (b) Embolism from heart I2190  
 (c) Arteriosclerosis I709

Code I(b) embolism of heart (I2190).

I (a) Pulmonary embolism from leg veins I269  
 (b) I803  
 (c)

Code I(a) pulmonary embolism (I269) and I(b) leg veins embolism (I803).

## Part O

## Relating and Modifying Conditions

- (7) Relate a condition of unspecified site to the complete term of a multiple site entity. If it is not indexed together, relate the condition to the site of the complete indexed term.

I (a) Cardiorespiratory arrest  $\bar{c}$  failure I469 R092

Code Failure, cardiorespiratory (R092). Relate failure to the complete term.

I (a) Cardiorespiratory arrest I469 I509  
(b)  $\bar{c}$  insufficiency

Code Insufficiency, heart (I509) since cardiorespiratory arrest is indexed to a heart condition. Relate insufficiency to the site of the complete term.

- (8) When vasculitis NOS is reported, apply the general instructions for relating and modifying.

I (a) Renal failure N19  
(b) Vasculitis I778

Code Vasculitis, kidney (I778). Relate vasculitis to the site reported on line I(a).

c. Exceptions to relating and modifying instructions

- (1) Do not relate the following conditions:

Arteriosclerosis	Neoplasms
Congenital anomaly NOS	Paralysis
Hypertension	Vascular disease NOS
Infection NOS (refer to Section III, #6)	

I (a) Arteriosclerosis with CVA I709 I64  
(b)  
(c)

Code Arteriosclerosis NOS (I709).

I (a) Cardiac arrest I469  
(b) Congenital anomaly Q899  
(c)

Code congenital anomaly NOS (Q899).

## Part O

## Relating and Modifying Conditions

I (a) Pneumonia J189  
 (b) Infection  
 (c)

Code Pneumonia (J189) on I(a). Do not enter a code on I(b).

I (a) Perforation esophagus K223  
 (b) Cancer C80  
 (c)

Code cancer NOS (C80).

- (2) Do not relate hemorrhage when causing a condition of a specified site. Relate hemorrhage to site of disease reported on **same** line or on line **below** only.

I (a) Respiratory failure J969  
 (b) Hemorrhage R5800

Code Hemorrhage NOS. Do not relate to respiratory.

I (a) Respiratory failure J969  
 (b) Hemorrhage K922  
 (c) Gastric ulcer K259

Relate hemorrhage on I(b) to gastric on I(c) and code gastric hemorrhage.

- (3) Do not relate conditions classified to R00-R99 except:

Gangrene and necrosis	R02
Hemorrhage	R5800
Regurgitation	R11
Stricture and stenosis	R688

I (a) Myocardial infarction with anoxia I219 R090

Code anoxia as indexed. Do not relate to heart since anoxia is classified to R090.

I (a) Pneumonia with gangrene J189 J850

Code the gangrene as pulmonary, the site of the disease reported on the same line since gangrene is one of the exceptions.

## Part O

## Relating and Modifying Conditions

- (4) Do not relate a disease condition that, by the name of the disease, implies a disease of a specified site unless it is obviously an erroneous code. If not certain, refer to supervisor.

I (a) Cirrhosis, encephalopathy K746 G934

Do not relate encephalopathy to liver since the name of the disease implies a disease of a specific site, brain.

I (a) Pulmonary embolism I269  
(b) Thrombophlebitis I809

Code thrombophlebitis (I809) as indexed. Do not relate thrombophlebitis since it is not usually reported of any site other than extremities.

I (a) Cerebral hemorrhage  $\bar{c}$  herniation I619 G935

Relate herniation to brain since hernia NOS is classified to a disease of the digestive system (K469) and it seems illogical to have a brain disease paired with a digestive system disease.

Refer to Section V, Part D, Implied site of injury for instructions on relating the site of injuries to another site.

2. Coding conditions classified to injuries as disease conditions

- a. Some conditions (such as injury, hematoma or laceration) of a specified organ are indexed directly to a traumatic category but may not always be traumatic in origin. Consider these types of conditions to be qualified as nontraumatic when reported:

- due to or on the same line with a disease
- due to: drug poisoning  
drug therapy

If there is provision in the Classification for coding the condition that is considered to be qualified as nontraumatic as such, code accordingly. Otherwise, code to the category that has been provided for "Other" diseases of the organ (usually .8).

## Part O

## Relating and Modifying Conditions

I (a) Laceration heart	I518
(b) Myocardial infarction	I219
(c)	

Code to myocardial infarction (I219) selected by General Principle. Since laceration heart is reported due to myocardial infarction, consider the laceration to be nontraumatic.

I (a) Subdural hematoma	I620
(b) CVA	I64
(c)	

Code Hematoma, subdural, nontraumatic (I620) as indexed.

I (a) Injury liver	K768
(b) Viral hepatitis	B199
(c)	

Code injury, liver as nontraumatic (K768) other specified diseases of liver.

I (a) Cardiorespiratory failure	R092
(b) Intracerebral hemorrhage	I619
(c) Meningioma, subdural hematoma	D329 I620

Code subdural hematoma as nontraumatic since it is reported on the same line with a disease.

I (a) Liver failure	K7290
(b) Cirrhosis with injury to liver	K746 K768
(c)	

Code injury to liver as nontraumatic since it is reported on the same line with a disease.

I (a) Cerebral arteriosclerosis with	I672 I620
(b) subdural hematoma	

Code subdural hematoma as nontraumatic since it is reported on the same line with a disease.

- b. Some conditions are indexed directly to a traumatic category but the Classification also provides a nontraumatic code. When these conditions are reported due to or with a disease and an external cause is reported on the record or the Manner of Death box is checked as Accident, Homicide, Suicide, Pending Investigation or could not be determined, code the condition as traumatic.

Part O

Relating and Modifying Conditions

<u>Place</u> 9	I (a) Subdural hematoma (b) CVA (c)	S065 I64
<u>MOD</u> A	II	&W18
	Accident	Fell while walking

Code the subdural hematoma as traumatic since the manner of death is accidental.

<u>Place</u> 0	I (a) Cardiorespiratory arrest (b) Subdural hematoma (c) Arteriosclerosis	I469 S065 I709
<u>MOD</u> A	II Advanced age	R54 &W18
	Accident	Home
	Fell in her room striking head	

Code the subdural hematoma as traumatic since the manner of death is accidental.

<u>Place</u> 9	I (a) Cerebral hematoma with (b) cerebral arteriosclerosis (c)	S068 I672
<u>MOD</u> A	II	&X599
	Accident	

Code the cerebral hematoma as traumatic since the manner of death is accidental.

- c. Some conditions are indexed directly to a traumatic category, but the Classification also provides a nontraumatic code. When these conditions are reported and the Manner of Death is Natural, code condition as nontraumatic unless the condition is reported due to or on the same line with an injury or external cause. This instruction applies only to conditions with the term “nontraumatic” in the Index. It does not apply to conditions in Section III, Intent of Certifier.

<u>Place</u> 9	I (a) Subdural hematoma (b)	I620
<u>MOD</u> N	II	
	Natural	

Code I(a) as nontraumatic since Manner of Death box states “Natural.”

**SECTION II**

**General Instructions**

**Part O**

**Relating and Modifying Conditions**

---

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Subdural hematoma	I620	
2		(b)		
		(c)		
<u>MOD</u>	II	Hip fracture	S720	&W19
N				
		<input type="text" value="Natural"/>		<input type="text" value="Fell in hospital"/>

Code I(a) as nontraumatic since Manner of Death box states “Natural.”

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Subdural hematoma	S065	
2		(b) Open wound of head	S019	
<u>MOD</u>	II	Fell in hospital	&W19	
N				
		<input type="text" value="Natural"/>		

Code subdural hematoma as traumatic since it is reported due to an injury, disregarding Natural in the Manner of Death box.

In order to assign the most appropriate code for a given diagnostic entity, it may be necessary to take other recorded information and the order in which the information is reported into account. It is important to interpret this information properly so the meaning intended by the certifier is correctly conveyed. The objective is to code each diagnostic entity in accordance with the intent of the certifier without combining separate codable entities. The following instructions help to determine the intent of the certifier. Apply Intent of Certifier instructions to “See also” terms in the Index as well.

1. Other and unspecified gastroenteritis and colitis of unspecified origin (A090)a. Code A090 (Gastroenteritis and colitis of infectious origin)

When reported due to:

A000-C97  
 R75  
 Y431-Y434  
 Y632  
 Y842

I	(a) Enteritis	A090
	(b) Listeriosis	A329

Code I(a) gastroenteritis and colitis of infectious origin, A090, since enteritis is reported due to a condition classified to A329.

b. Code K529 (Noninfective gastroenteritis and colitis, unspecified)

When reported due to:

C000-K929  
 L272  
 M000-N999  
 P000-R749  
 R760-Y430  
 Y435-Y631  
 Y633-Y841  
 Y843-Y899

I	(a) Enteritis	K529
	(b) Abscess of intestine	K630

Code I(a) noninfective gastroenteritis and colitis, unspecified, K529, since enteritis is reported due to a condition classified to K630.

I	(a) Colitis	A099
---	-------------	------

Code I(a) gastroenteritis and colitis of unspecified origin, A099, as indexed.

2. Spinal Abscess (A180)Code M462 (Nontuberculous spinal abscess):

When reported due to:

A400-A419	H650-H669	M910-M939
A500	H950-H959	M960-M969
A509	J00-J399	N10-N12
A527	J950-J959	N136
A539	K650-K659	N151
B200-B24	K910-K919	N159
B89	L00-L089	N288
B99	M000-M1990	N340-N343
C412	M320-M351	N390
C760	M359	N700-N768
C795	M420-M429	N990-N999
C810-C969	M45-M519	R75
D160-D169	M600	S000-T983
D480	M860-M889	
D550-D589	M894	

I (a) Spinal Abscess	M462
(b) Staphylococcal septicemia	A412

Code I(a) nontuberculous spinal abscess, M462, since spinal abscess is reported due to a condition classified to A412.

3. Charcot's Arthropathy (A521)

Code G98 (Arthropathy, neurogenic, neuropathic (Charcot's), nonsyphilitic):

When reported due to:

A30	Leprosy	G608	Hereditary sensory neuropathy
E10-E14	Diabetes mellitus	G901	Familial dysautonomia
E538	Subacute combined degeneration (of spinal cord)	G950	Syringomyelia
F101	Alcohol abuse	Q059	Spina bifida, meningo-myelocele
F102	Alcoholism	Y453	Indomethacin
G600	Hypertrophic interstitial neuropathy	Y453	Phenylbutazone
G600	Peroneal muscular atrophy	Y427	Corticosteroids

I	(a) Charcot's arthropathy	G98
	(b) Diabetes	E149

4. General Paresis (A521)a. Code G839 (Paralysis)

When reported due to or on the same line with:

A022	A988	B690	D180-D181	I159
A040	B003-B004	B719	D210	I600-I709
A051	B010-B011	B75	D233-D234	I748
A066	B020-B022	B832	D320-D339	J108
A078	B03-B04	B888	D352	J118
A170-A179	B050-B051	B89	D355	M000-M1990
A180	B060	B900	D360-D367	M420-M429
A190-A191	B200-B24	B901-B909	D420-D439	M45-M519
A203	B258	B91	D443	M860-M949
A228	B259	B92-B940	D446	N000-N399
A260-A289	B261-B262	B941	D448	O100-O16
A321-A329	B268	B948-B949	D45-D479	O740-O749
A368	B270-B279	C470	D487	O900-O909
A390-A394	B334-B338	C479	D489	O95
A398-A399	B375	C700-C729	E713	O994
A428	B384	C751	E750-E756	P000-Q079
A440-A539	B428	C754	F449	Q750-Q799
A544	B450-B459	C758	G000-G239	Q860-Q999
A548	B461	C760	G300-G379	R270-R278
A680-A689	B49-B64	C770	G450-G459	R75
A692	B673	C793-C794	G540-G729	
A800-A959	B676	C798-C97	G839-G98	
A981-A982	B679	D170	I10	

- I (a) CVA with general paresis  
 (b)  
 (c)

I64 G839

- b. Code T144 (Paralysis, traumatic)  
Refer to Section V, Part S, Sequela of injuries, poisonings, and other consequences of external causes, if a sequela is indicated.

When reported due to or on the same line with:

S000-T149	W81-X39
T20-T35	X50-X599
T66-T79	X70-X84
T90-T95	X91-Y09
T981-T982	Y20-Y369
V010-W43	Y850-Y872
W45-W77	Y890-Y899

I (a) General paresis	T144
(b) Brain injury	S069
(c)	
II Auto accident	&V499

5. Viral Hepatitis (B161, B169, B171-B178)Code:

<b>For Viral Hepatitis in Categories</b>	<b>Code Chronic Viral Hepatitis</b>
B161	B180
B169	B181
B171	B182
B172	B188
B178	B188

When reported as causing liver conditions in:

K721, K7210

K740-K742

K744-K746

I (a) Cirrhosis of liver

K746

(b) Viral hepatitis B

B181

Code I(b) B181, chronic viral hepatitis B, since reported as causing a condition classified to K746.

6. Organisms and Infections NOS (B99)**Organisms**

Bacterial organisms classified to A49.-	Viral organisms classified to B34.-	Organisms classified to <i>other</i> than A49.- or B34.-
Escherichia coli Haemophilus influenzae Pneumococcal Staphylococcal Streptococcal	Adenovirus Coronavirus Coxsackie Enterovirus Parvovirus	Aspergillus Candida Cytomegalovirus Fungus Meningococcal

**Infectious conditions**

Abscess Bacteremia Empyema	Infection Pneumonia Pyemia	Sepsis, Septicemia Septic Shock Words ending in "itis"
----------------------------------	----------------------------------	--

These lists are NOT all inclusive. Use them as a guide.

In order to determine which instruction to use, refer to the Index under the named organism or under Infection, named organism.

- a. Bacterial organisms and infections classified to A49 and Viral organisms and infections classified to B34
  - (1) When an infectious or inflammatory condition is reported and
    - (a) Is preceded or followed by condition classified to A49 or B34 **or**
    - (b) A condition classifiable to A49 or B34 is reported as the only entry or first entry on the next lower line **or**
    - (c) Is followed by a condition classified to A49 or B34 separated by a connecting term not indicating a due to relationship

- (i) If a single code is provided for the infectious or inflammatory condition modified by the condition classified to A49 or B34, use this code. Do not assign a separate code for the condition classifiable to A49 or B34. It may be necessary to use "due to" or "in" in the Index to assign the appropriate code.

I (a) E. coli diarrhea A044

Code as indexed under Diarrhea, due to, Escherichia coli.

I (a) Pneumonia J129  
(b) Viral infection

Code as indexed under Pneumonia, viral.

I (a) Meningitis and sepsis G000 A413  
(b) H. influenzae

Code as indexed under Meningitis, Haemophilus (influenzae) and Septicemia, Haemophilus influenzae.

I (a) Sepsis with staph A412

Code as staphylococcal sepsis as indexed under Septicemia, staphylococcal.

I (a) Pneumonia  $\bar{c}$  MRSA J152

Code as methicillin resistant staphylococcal aureus pneumonia as indexed under Pneumonia, MRSA.

- (ii) If (i) does not apply, and the Index provides a code for the infectious or inflammatory condition qualified as "bacterial," "infectious," "infective," or "viral," assign the appropriate code based on the reported type of organism. Do not assign a separate code for the condition classified to A49 or B34.

I (a) Coxsackie virus pneumonia J128

Coxsackie virus is a specified virus. Code as indexed under Pneumonia, viral, specified NEC.

- I (a) Peritonitis K650  
 (b) Campylobacter

Campylobacter is a specified bacteria. Code as indexed under Peritonitis, bacterial.

- I (a) Pneumonia with coxsackie virus J128

Code as coxsackie virus pneumonia. Since coxsackie virus is a specified virus, code as indexed under Pneumonia, viral, specified NEC.

- (iii) If (i) and (ii) do not apply, assign the NOS code for the infectious or inflammatory condition. Do not assign a separate code for the condition classified to A49 or B34.

- I (a) Klebsiella urinary tract infection N390

The Index does not provide a code for Infection, urinary tract specified as bacterial, infectious, infective, or Klebsiella. Therefore, code Infection, urinary tract.

- I (a) Pyelonephritis N12  
 (b) Staphylococcus

The Index does not provide a code for pyelonephritis specified as bacterial, infectious, infective, or staphylococcal. Therefore, code Pyelonephritis as indexed.

- I (a) Pyelonephritis and pseudomonas N12

The Index does not provide a code for pyelonephritis specified as bacterial, infectious, infective or pseudomonas. Therefore, code pyelonephritis as indexed.

---

b. Organisms and infections classified to categories other than A49 and B34

(1) When an infectious or inflammatory condition is reported and

(a) Is preceded by a condition classifiable to Chapter I other than A49 or B34

- (i) Refer to the Index under the infectious or inflammatory condition. If a single code is provided for this condition, modified by the condition from Chapter I, use this code. It may be necessary to use “due to” or “in” in the Index to assign the appropriate code.

I (a) Cytomegaloviral pneumonia                      B250

Code as indexed under Pneumonia, cytomegaloviral.

- (ii) If (i) does not apply, refer to Volume 1, Chapter I to determine if the Classification provides an appropriate fourth character for the organism. Indications of appropriate fourth characters for sites would be “of other sites,” “other specified organs,” or “other organ involvement.”

I (a) Candidiasis peritonitis                              B378

Since this term is not indexed together, refer to Volume I, Chapter I and select the fourth character, .8, candidiasis of other sites.

- (iii) If (i) and (ii) do not apply, code as two separate conditions.

I (a) Mononucleosis pharyngitis                      B279 J029

Since this term is not indexed together and Volume I, Chapter I does not provide an appropriate fourth character under B27.-, code as two separate conditions.

- (b) A condition from Chapter I other than A49 or B34 is reported as the only entry or the first entry on the next lower line

- (i) Code each condition as indexed where reported.

I (a) Peritonitis    K659

(b) Candidiasis    B379

Since candidiasis is classified to a condition other than A49 or B34, code each condition as indexed.

(c) A condition from Chapter I other than A49 or B34 is reported separated by a connecting term not indicating a due to relationship

(i) Code each condition as indexed where reported.

I (a) Pneumonia with candidiasis J189 B379

Since candidiasis is classified to a condition other than A49 or B34, code each condition as indexed.

c. Do not use HIV or AIDS to modify an infectious or inflammatory condition. Code as two separate conditions.

I (a) HIV pneumonia B24 J189

d. When an infectious or inflammatory condition is reported and a specified organism or specified nonsystemic infection is not the only entry or the first entry on the next lower line.

◆ Code the infectious or inflammatory condition and the organism or infection separately.

I (a) Pneumonia J189  
(b) Emphysema & viral infection J439 B349

I (a) Peritonitis K659  
(b) Gastric ulcer and staphylococcal infection K259 A490

e. When an infectious or inflammatory condition is reported and

(1) Infection NOS is reported as the only entry or the first entry on the next lower line

◆ Code the infectious or inflammatory condition where it is entered on the certificate and do not enter a code for infection NOS, but take into account if it modifies the infectious condition.

I (a) Cholecystitis & hepatitis K819 B159  
(b) Infection

I (a) Meningitis G039  
(b) Infection & brain tumor D432

(2) Infection NOS is not the only entry or the first entry on the next lower line

- ◆ Code the infectious or inflammatory condition where it is entered on the certificate and code infection NOS separately.

I (a) Septicemia	A419
(b) Diabetes & infection	E149 B99

f. When a noninfectious or noninflammatory condition is reported and infection NOS is reported on a lower line

- ◆ Code the noninfectious or noninflammatory condition as indexed and code infection NOS (B99) where entered on the certificate.

I (a) ASHD	I251
(b) Infection	B99

g. When an organism is reported preceding two or more infectious conditions reported consecutively on the same line

- ◆ Code each of the infectious conditions modified by the organism.

I (a) Staphylococcal pneumonia and	J152 G003
(b) meningitis	

h. When one infectious condition is modified by more than one organism, modify the condition by all organisms.

I (a) Strep, Klebsiella and MRSA pneumonia	J154 J150 J152
--	----------------

I (a) Strep pneumonia, MRSA	J154 J152
-----------------------------	-----------

I (a) Sepsis enterococcus, MRSA	A402 A412
---------------------------------	-----------

i. When any condition is reported and a generalized infection such as bacteremia, fungemia, sepsis, septicemia, systemic infection, or viremia is reported on a lower line

- ◆ Code both the condition and the generalized infection where entered on certificate. Do not modify the condition by the infection.

I (a) Bronchopneumonia	J180
(b) Septicemia	A419

I (a) Pneumonia	J189
(b) Viremia	B349

7. Erythremia (C940)

Code D751 (Secondary erythremia):

When reported due to:

A000-D489	F55	L710-L719	N700-N768	R730-R739
D510-D619	G000-G419	L930-L932	N980	R75
D751	G450-G459	L950-L959	N990-Q999	R780
D760-E149	G600-G979	M000-M1990	R030	R826
E240-E279	I00-J989	M300-M359	R040-R049	R893
E65-E678	K20-L00	M420-M549	R090-R098	S000-Y899
E890	L100-L139	M800-M949	R160-R162	
E896-E899	L230-L309	M960-M969	R31	
F100-F199	L500-L599	N000-N399	R58-R5800	

- |                  |      |
|------------------|------|
| I (a) Septicemia | A419 |
| (b) Erythremia   | D751 |
| (c) Polycythemia | D45  |



9. Hemolytic Anemia (D589)

Code D594 (Secondary hemolytic anemia):

When reported due to:

A000-D489	F180-F199	Q200-Q289
D594	G000-G09	R75
D65-D699	I00-I519	R780
D760	I776	R823
D800-D899	J09-J22	R826
E201	K700-K769	R893
E280-E289	M000-M359	S000-Y899
E40-E46	N000-N399	
E700-E899	O000-O998	
F100-F169	P550-P579	

I (a) Hemolytic anemia	D594
(b) Hairy cell leukemia	C914
(c)	
I (a) Hemolytic anemia	D589
(b)	
(c)	
II Hypogammaglobulinemia	D801
I (a) Secondary hemolytic	D594
(b) anemia	

10. Sideroblastic Anemia (D643)a. Code D641 (Secondary sideroblastic anemia due to disease):

When reported due to:

A000-C97	E230	F180-F182	J069	M023
D45	E531	F190-F192	J65	M101
D461	E539	F55	K700-K703	M352
D471	E798	G030	K709	N143
D510-D599	E800-E802	G040	K721	N188-N19
D640-D643	E831	G361	K730-K746	N341
D648	E880	G933	K760	O980-O981
D731	E890	I330	K761	R162
D748	F100-F102	I423	K766	R75
D758	F109-F112	I729	K769	R780
D860-D869	F119-F122	I888	K908	R826
D892	F130-F132	J00	L081	R893
E018-E02	F140-F142	J020	L448	R897
E032-E0390	F150-F152	J030	L946	
E050-E059	F160-F162	J040-J042	M021	

I (a) Pneumonia	J189
(b) Sideroblastic anemia	D641
(c) Alcoholic cirrhosis	K703

b. Code D642 (Secondary sideroblastic anemia due to drugs or toxins):

When reported due to:

D642	X60-X69
T510-T659	Y10-Y19
T97	Y400-Y599
X40-X49	Y86-Y880

I (a) CHF	I500
(b) Sideroblastic anemia	&D642
(c) Chloramphenicol	Y402

11. Hemorrhagic Purpura NOS (D693)

Code D690 (Hemorrhagic purpura not due to thrombocytopenia):

When reported due to:

A000-C97	F119	I771-I779	N19	Q848
D45-D460	F120	I872	N200-N219	Q872-Q873
D462-D469	F121-F122	I878	N250-N311	Q878
D471	F130-F132	I879 -I889	N312-N319	R104
D510	F140	I898-I899	N320-N390	R162
D511-D581	F141-F142	I99-J00	N392	R233
D582	F150	J020	N398-N399	R238
D588-D618	F151-F152	J030	N719	R291
D619	F160-F162	J040-J042	N897	R31
D648	F180-F181	J069	N910-N939	R398
D65-D692	F182	J65	N948	R72
D698-D71	F190-F191	K658	N950-N959	R75
D720	F192	K660	N991	R780
D721	G000-G032	K700-K769	P070-P073	R826
D728	G038-G039	K908	P219	R893
D729-D759	G040	L081	P221-P289	R897
D860-D869	G042-G049	L272	P546	T360-T658
D892	G060	L448	P916	T659
E240	G061-G09	L573	Q458	T780-T784
E241	G312	L80-L819	Q680	T789
E242	G361	L946	Q740-Q741	T806
E243	G373-G374	L958	Q758	T818
E248	G540	L959	Q772	T881
E249	G92	M021-M023	Q775-Q776	T885
E301	G933	M050-M089	Q778	T886-T887
E54	G958	M101	Q779-Q783	T96-T97
E569	G961	M120	Q785	T981
E642	I00-I019	M138	Q788-Q789	X20-X29
E648	I10	M159	Q791	X40-X48
E703	I159	M300	Q794-Q795	X49
E798	I308	M301-M352	Q796	X60-X69
E850-E859	I330-I339	M358	Q798	Y10-Y19
E871	I400-I409	M359	Q808	Y400-Y599
E880	I423	M898	Q810-Q819	Y86
F100	I729	N000-N078	Q820	Y870
F101-F102	I749	N079	Q821-Q825	Y871
F110-F112	I770	N10-N189	Q828	Y872

I (a) CVA	I64
(b) Hemorrhagic purpura	D690
(c) Leukemia	C959

12. Thrombocytopenia (D696)Code D695 (Secondary thrombocytopenia):

When reported due to:

A000-D447	F110	J030	P350 -P399	T752
D448	F111-F112	J040-J042	P550 -P560	T780-T783
D449-D509	F119	J069	P570	T784
D510	F120	J09-J118	P610	T788-T789
D511-D691	F121-F122	J65	P614	T803-T804
D692	F130	K658	P916	T808-T809
D693-D699	F131-F132	K660-K661	Q204 -Q205	T818
D730-D752	F140	K700-K769	Q206	T881
D758	F141-F142	K908	Q208	T882 -T883
D759-D763	F150	K920-K921	Q209	T885
D814	F151-F152	K922	Q210	T886 -T888
D820	F160	L081	Q220 -Q246	T889
D821	F161-F162	L448	Q248	T950 -T97
D840	F180-F181	L590	Q249	T981
D841-D848	F182	L818	Q289	T983
D860-D892	F190-F191	L946	Q758	V010-V99
E000-E009	F192	M021	Q775-Q776	W00-W53
E018-E02	F55	M023	Q778	W54-W56
E031-E033	G000-G032	M050-M089	Q779-Q783	W57
E034	G038-G039	M101	Q788-Q789	W58-W87
E035-E0390	G040	M120	Q798	W88-W93
E055	G042-G048	M138	Q828	W94-X19
E059	G049-G060	M159	Q850	X20-X32
E071	G061-G09	M199-M1990	R001	X34-X39
E230	G312	M219	R008	X40-X48
E349	G361	M300	R012	X49-X599
E46	G373-G374	M301-M329	R161-R162	X65
E538	G450-G452	M352	R233	X69-Y369
E539-E54	G454-G459	M898	R291	Y400-Y601
E560-E639	G540	N000-N078	R31	Y603
E642	G903	N079	R398	Y605
E648	G92	N10-N219	R58-R5800	Y610-Y611
E649	G933	N250-N311	R75	Y613
E713	G936	N312-N319	R771	Y615
E740	G938	N320-N390	R780	Y617
E750	G951	N392	R788	Y620-Y621
E752	G958	N398-N399	R798	Y623
E753	G961	N980-N989	R825	Y625

**SECTION III****Intent of Certifier**

---

E755-E756	I00-I019	N991	R826	Y630-Y633
E768-E779	I10-I629	O360-O369	R827-R828	Y640-Y655
E782	I630-I6300	O430-O431	R829	Y658
E798	I631-I6310	O438	R893	Y66-Y831
E803	I633-I677	O439-O469	R897	Y840
E835	I678-I679	O60	T200	Y842
E871	I690-I891	O670-O689	T201-T289	Y848-Y849
E880	I898	O700-O719	T300	Y850-Y872
E888	I899-I972	O908	T301-T329	Y880-Y881
E890	I978	O980-O981	T360-T658	Y890-Y891
E898	I99	P070-P073	T659	Y899
F100	J00	P219	T66-T670	
F101-F102	J020	P221-P289	T68	

I (a) Multiple hemorrhages	R5800
(b) Thrombocytopenia	D695
(c) Cancer lung	C349

13. Hyperparathyroidism (E213)

Code E211 (Secondary hyperparathyroidism):

When reported due to:

A180	D136-D137
A187	D300-D309
A188	D351-D353
B650-B839	D410-D419
B902-B908	D442-D444
C250-C259	E130-E139
C64-C689	E15-E215
C750-C752	E240-E259
C788	E270-E279
C790-C791	E892
C798	M880-M889
C900-C902	N000-N399
D017	Q600-Q649
D090-D091	Q770-Q789
D093	Q798
I (a) Hypercalcemia	E835
(b) Hyperparathyroidism	E211
(c) Cancer parathyroid gland	C750

14. Hyperaldosteronism (E269)Code E261 (Secondary hyperaldosteronism)

When reported due to:

A220-A229	E270-E46	I500-I509	T96-T97
B500-B54	E511-E519	I701	T983
B560-B575	E660-E669	I778	X40-X49
C740-C749	E713	K700-K709	X60-X69
C797	E86	K721-K7210	X85-X90
D093	E871	K730-K746	Y10-Y19
D350	E880	K850-K851	Y400-Y599
D441	E890	K853-K859	Y86-Y880
D448-D449	E892	N000-N399	
D840-D849	E895-E899	T360-T659	
E000-E249	I10-I150	T783	
E250-E269	I159	T880-T889	

I (a) MI	I219
(b) Hyperaldosteronism	E261
(c) Renal artery stenosis	I701

15. Lactase Deficiency (E730)

Code E731 (Secondary lactase deficiency):

When reported due to:

E730-E749	K590-K599
K500	K630
K508-K510	K633
K519-K529	K639
K570	K900-K902
K574	K912
K580-K589	N200-N209

I (a) Severe diarrhea	K529
(b) Lactase deficiency	E731
(c) Celiac disease	K900

Code I(b) secondary lactase deficiency, E731, since reported due to celiac disease.

16. Korsakov's Disease, Psychosis, or Syndrome (F106)

Code F04 (Nonalcoholic Korsakov's disease, psychosis, or syndrome):

When reported due to :

A000-D591	L920	S710-S729	T904
D592	L928-L932	S740-S799	T905
D593-D610	L951	S810-S829	T908
D611	L980-L981	S840-S899	T909
D612-E243	M000-N459	S910-S929	T910
E248-E519	N490-N809	S940-S999	T911-T915
E52	N990-N992	T012-T029	T918
E530-F09	N994-Q999	T041-T08	T919-T922
F200-G311	R54	T091	T924-T926
G318-G619	R75	T093-T10	T928
G620	S010-S029	T111	T929-T932
G622	S040-S050	T113-T12	T934-T936
G628-G720	S052-S099	T131	T938
G722-G98	S110-S129	T133-T139	T939
I00-I4250	S140-S199	T141-T142	T940-T953
I427-J989	S210-S229	T144-T329	T954
K20-K291	S240-S299	T340-T349	T958-T959
K293-K669	S310-S328	T351-T399	T96-X40
K710-K851	S340-S399	T410-T422	X43-X44
K853-K859	S410-S429	T425-T426	X46-Y449
K861-L109	S440-S499	T427	Y451-Y468
L129-L449	S510-S529	T428	Y480-Y485
L510-L599	S540-S599	T440-T509	Y500-Y899
L710-L719	S610-S628	T520-T889	
L88	S640-S699	T901-T903	

- |                               |      |
|-------------------------------|------|
| I (a) Korsakoff's psychosis   | F04  |
| (b) Wernicke's encephalopathy | E512 |
| (c)                           |      |

---

 17. Drug Use NOS - Named Drug Use (F11-F16, F18-F19)

Code drug use NOS, F199, when reported anywhere on the certificate. Code use of named drug, F11-F16, F18-F19 with fourth character “9,” when reported anywhere on the certificate and the named drug is listed in Volume 3, under Addiction/Dependence. If the named drug is not listed in Volume 3 under Addiction/Dependence, do not enter a code.

**Exceptions:**

- (1) Complication(s) reported due to (named) drug use. Code the (named) drug use to the appropriate external cause code for adverse effects of drugs in therapeutic use unless the drug is one not used for medical care purposes. Refer to Section V, Part R, 1, Drugs, medicaments, biological substances causing adverse effects in therapeutic use (Y40-Y59) for coding instructions.
- (2) There is mention of drug poisoning anywhere on the certificate, code the (named) drug use to F11-F16, F18-F19, with fourth character “9,” if listed in Volume 3 under Addiction/Dependence. If (named) drug is not indexed in Volume 3 under Addiction/Dependence, code F19, specified drug NEC with fourth character “9.” Refer to Section V, Part Q, 2, Poisoning by drugs.

I (a) Chronic alcoholism	F102
(b)	
(c)	
II Drug use	F199

Code drug use to F199. There is no complication reported due to the drug use.

I (a) Cancer of pancreas	C259
(b)	
(c)	
II Methadone use	F119

Code methadone use to F119 as listed under Dependence in Volume 3. There is no complication reported due to the methadone use.

I (a) Systemic lupus erythematosus	M329
(b)	
(c)	
II Steroid use	

Do not code steroid use. Steroid is not listed in Volume 3 under Addiction/Dependence and no complication is reported due to the steroid use.

- I (a) Diabetes E139
- (b) Steroid use Y427
- (c)
- II Rheumatoid arthritis &M069

Code the diabetes as a complication of the steroids given in therapeutic use for rheumatoid arthritis. Refer to Section V, Part R, 1, Drugs, medicaments, biological substances causing adverse effects in therapeutic use (Y40-Y59) for coding complications of drugs during therapeutic use.

- I (a) Bacterial endocarditis &I330
- (b) Use of morphine Y450
- (c)

Code the bacterial endocarditis as a complication of the morphine given in therapeutic use. Precede the complication with an ampersand since the condition requiring the drug is not reported. Refer to Section V, Part R, 1, Drugs, medicaments, biological substances causing adverse effects in therapeutic use (Y40-Y59) for coding complications of drugs during therapeutic use.

- Place I (a) Acute cocaine poisoning T405 &X42
- 9 (b)
- (c)
- MOD II Cocaine use F149 T405
- A
 

Accident	Ingested cocaine
----------	------------------

Code cocaine use to F149 as listed under Dependence in Volume 3 since reported on the certificate with drug poisoning. Refer to Section V, Part Q, 2, Poisoning by drugs for instructions in coding drug poisoning.

- Place I (a) Respiratory failure J969
- 9 (b) Acute drug use F199
- (c)
- MOD II &X42 T402
- A
 

Accident	Overdose of morphine
----------	----------------------

Code acute drug use to F199 since reported on the certificate with drug poisoning.

**SECTION III**

**Intent of Certifier**

---

<u>Place</u>	I (a) Poisoning by drugs	T509 &X44
9	(b)	
	(c)	
	II Use of sedatives	F139

Code use of sedative to F139 as listed under Dependence in Volume 3 since reported on the certificate with drug poisoning.

18. Tobacco Use (F179)

Code F179 (Tobacco use):

When the certifier selects “Yes” or “Probably” in the tobacco box on the US Standard Certificate of Death.

Did tobacco use contribute to death?

Yes	<input type="checkbox"/>	Probably	<input type="checkbox"/>
No	<input type="checkbox"/>	Unknown	<input type="checkbox"/>

The F179 should follow the last code in Part II.

I (a) Pneumonia	J189
(b) Lung cancer	C349
II COPD	J449 F179

Did tobacco use contribute to death?

Yes	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Probably	<input type="checkbox"/>
No	<input type="checkbox"/>	Unknown	<input type="checkbox"/>

19. Psychotic Episode NOS (F239)

Code F068 (Psychotic episode, organic NEC):

When reported due to or on the same line with conditions classifiable to the following categories:

A000-E899	L88	R042-R048
F068	L920	R060-R065
G000-G98	L92-L932	R068
H600-H709	L951	R090-R091
H720-H739	L980-L981	R291
I00-J989	M000-N459	R54
K20-L109	N490-N809	R600-R609
L120-L449	N990-N992	R75
L510-L599	N994-Q999	
L710-L719	R02	

I (a) TIA's with psychotic episodes	G459 F068
(b) Cerebral arteriosclerosis	I672
(c) Arteriosclerosis	I709

Code psychotic episode on I(a) F068, since reported on the same line with TIA (G459). It could also be coded to F068 since reported due to cerebral arteriosclerosis (I672).

20. Psychosis (any F29)

Code F09 (Psychosis, organic NEC):

When reported due to or on the same line with conditions classifiable to the following categories:

A000-E899	R75	S840-S899	T909
F09	S010-S029	S910-S929	T910
G000-G98	S040-S050	S940-S999	T911-T915
I00-J989	S052-S099	T012-T029	T918
K20-L109	S110-S129	T041-T08	T919-T922
L120-L449	S140-S199	T091	T924-T926
L510-L599	S210-S229	T093-T10	T928
L710-L719	S240-S299	T111	T929-T932
L88	S310-S328	T113-T12	T934-T936
L920	S340-S399	T131	T938
L928-L932	S410-S429	T133-T139	T939
L951	S440-S499	T141-T142	T940-T953
L980-L981	S510-S529	T144-T329	T954
M000-N459	S540-S599	T340-T349	T958-T959
N490-N809	S610-S628	T351-T889	T96-Y899
N950-N959	S640-S699	T901-T903	
N990-N992	S710-S729	T904	
N994-Q999	S740-S799	T905	
R54	S810-S829	T908	

I (a) Pneumonia	J189
(b) Psychosis – cerebrovascular arteriosclerosis	F09 I672
(c) Arteriosclerosis	I709

21. Dissociative Disorder (F449)

Code F065 (Organic dissociative disorder):

When reported due to conditions classifiable to the following categories:

A000-E899	L88	R042-R048
F065	L920	R060-R065
G000-G98	L928-L932	R068
H600-H709	L951	R090-R091
H720-H739	L980-L981	R291
I00-J989	M000-N459	R54
K20-L109	N490-N809	R600-R609
L120-L449	N990-N992	R75
L510-L599	N994-Q999	S000-Y899
L710-L719	R02	

I (a) Dissociative disorder	F065
(b) Chronic subdural hematoma	T905
(c) Car accident	&Y850

Code I(a) organic dissociative disorder, F065, since reported due to an injury.

I (a) Dissociative disorder	F065
(b) Senility	R54

Code I(a) organic dissociative disorder, F065, since reported due to senility.

22. Personality Disorder (F609)  
Personality Change (Enduring) (F629)

Code F070 (Organic personality disorder):

When reported due to conditions classifiable to the following categories:

A000-E899	N490-N809	S440-S499	T093-T10
F070	N990-Q999	S510-S529	T111
G000-G98	R54	S540-S599	T113-T12
I00-J989	R75	S610-S628	T131
K20-L109	S010-S029	S640-S699	T133-T139
L120-L449	S040-S050	S710-S729	T141-T142
L510-L599	S052-S099	S740-S799	T144-T329
L710-L719	S110-S129	S810-S829	T340-T349
L88	S140-S199	S840-S899	T351-T889
L920	S210-S229	S910-S929	T901-T922
L928-L932	S240-S299	S940-S999	T924-T932
L951	S310-S328	T012-T029	T934-Y899
L980-L981	S340-S399	T041-T08	
M000-N459	S410-S429	T091	

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Personality disorder	F070
9		(b) Head injury	S099
		(c) Assault	&Y09

Code I(a) organic personality disorder, F070, since reported due to a head injury.

I	(a) Personality disorder	F070
	(b) Meningioma brain	D320

Code I(a) organic personality disorder, F070, since reported due to a meningioma brain.

I	(a) Personality change	F070
	(b) Jakob-Creutzfeldt Syndrome	A810

Code I(a) organic personality disorder, F070, since reported due to Jakob-Creutzfeldt Syndrome.

23. Mental Disorder (any F99)Code F069 (Organic mental disorder)

When reported due to or on the same line with conditions classifiable to the following categories:

A000-G98	M000-N459	S000-S199	T510-T519
H600-H709	N490-N809	T019	T66-T68
H720-H739	N990-N992	T028	T698-T758
I00-J989	N994-Q999	T029	T790-T799
K20-L109	R02	T049	T900-T911
L120-L449	R042-R048	T062	T913
L510-L599	R060-R065	T064	T918-T919
L710-L719	R068	T07-T08	T940-T950
L88	R090-R091	T093-T094	T958-T959
L920	R291	T140-T149	T97
L928-L932	R54	T200-T207	T981-T982
L951	R600-R609	T340-T341	V010-Y872
L980-L981	R75	T350-T352	

- |  |          |
|--|----------|
| I (a) Cardiorespiratory arrest             | I469     |
| (b) Heart failure                          | I509     |
| (c) Multiple sclerosis and mental disorder | G35 F069 |

24. Parkinson's Disease (G20)Code G219 (Secondary parkinsonism):

When reported due to:

A170-A179	B91	R75
A504-A539	B941	S000-T357
A810-A819	B949	T66-T876
A870-A89	F200-F209	T900-T982
B003	G000-G039	T983
B010	G041-G09	X50-X599
B021-B022	G20-G2000	X70-X84
B051	G218-G219	X91-Y09
B060	G300-G309	Y20-Y369
B200-B24	I672-I673	Y600-Y849
B261	I678-I679	Y850-Y872
B375	I698	Y881-Y899
B900	I709	
B902	I950-I959	

I (a) Parkinson's disease	G219
(b) Tuberculous meningitis	A170
(c)	
I (a) Parkinsonism	G219
(b) Arteriosclerosis	I709
(c)	
I (a) Secondary Parkinson's disease	G219
(b)	
(c)	

25. Cerebral Sclerosis (G379)

Code I672 (Cerebrovascular atherosclerosis):

a. When reported due to or on the same line with:

A500-A539	M100-M109
E000-E349	M300-M359
E660-E669	N000-N289
E700-E839	N390
E890-E899	Q600-Q619
I10-I150	Q630-Q639
I159	Q890-Q892
I672	R54
I700-I709	T383
I770	Y423
I99	

b. When reported as causing:

I600-I679

I (a) Cerebral edema	G936
(b) Cerebral sclerosis	G379
I (a) Cerebral thrombosis	I633
(b) Cerebral sclerosis	I672
I (a) ASHD	I251
(b)	
(c)	
II Cerebral sclerosis, hypertension	1672 I10

26. Myopathy (G729)Code I429 (Cardiomyopathy):

When reported due to:

A150-A1690	E660-E669	M100-M109
A178	E740	M300-M359
A181	E760-E769	M625
A188	E831	N000-N399
B200-B24	E850-E859	P200-P220
B332	E880-E889	P916
B560-B575	F100-F199	Q200-Q249
B948	G111	R31
C000-C97	G600	R54
D151	G700-G729	R75
D467-D469	I00-I259	T360-T66
D500-D649	I300-I4290	T97
D758	I514-I5150	X45
D860-D869	I700-I709	X65
E000-E0390	K700-K709	Y15
E050-E059	K721	Y400-Y599
E100-E149	K730-K739	Y842
E220	K743	Y86-Y872
E40-E519	K745-K746	Y883
E639	K760	
E641	K768-K769	
E648-E649	M069	

I (a) Myopathy	I429
(b) ASHD	I251
(c)	

Code I(a) cardiomyopathy, I429, since reported due to a specific heart condition.

27. Brain Damage, child (G809)

Code G939 (Brain damage):

When reported due to:

A000-F199	M000-N399	R400-R402
F200-F99	N700-N889	R54
G000-G98	O000-Q999	R560-R5800
H600-H749	R02	R600-R609
H950-J80	R040-R049	R630
J82-J989	R060-R068	R75
K700-K769	R090-R092	S000-Y899
L00-L989	R291	

Male, 11 years

I (a) Cardiac arrest	I469
(b) Brain damage	G809

Since the age of the decedent is less than 18 years of age and there is no indication of the cause of the brain damage, code G809, brain damage, child.

Male, 11 years

I (a) Brain damage	G939
(b) Down's syndrome	Q909

Since there is an indication of the cause of the brain damage, code brain damage, G939.

28. Paralysis (any G81, G82, or G83 excluding senile paralysis)

Code the paralysis for decedent age 28 days and over to G80 (Infantile cerebral palsy) with appropriate fourth character:

When reported due to:

P000-P969

Female, 3 months

- |                                    |       |      |
|------------------------------------|-------|------|
| I (a) Pneumonia                    | 1wk   | J189 |
| (b) Paraplegia                     | 3 mos | G808 |
| (c) Injury spinal cord since birth |       | P115 |

Code the paraplegia on I(b) to infantile paraplegia, G808, since reported due to an injury of the spinal cord since birth.

29. Cataract (H269)

Code H264 (Secondary cataract):

When reported due to:

A1690	H269
B200-B24	H579
E100-E149	R54
E160-E162	R75
E711	T66
E742	Y493
E830	Y540
E835	Y576
H264	

I (a) CVA	I64
(b) Cataract	H264
(c) Diabetes	E149

Code I(b), secondary cataract, H264, since reported due to diabetes (E149).

30. Varices NOS and Bleeding Varices NOS (I839)

- Code (a) I859 (Esophageal varices) or  
(b) I850 (Bleeding esophageal varices):

When reported due to or on same line with:

Alcoholic diseases classified to: F100-F109  
Liver diseases classified to: B150-B199, B251, B942, K700-K769  
Toxic effect of alcohol classified to: T510-T519, T97

- |                        |      |
|------------------------|------|
| I (a) Varices          | I859 |
| (b) Cirrhosis of liver | K746 |
| I (a) Bleeding varices | I850 |
| (b) Cirrhosis of liver | K746 |

31. Pneumoconiosis (J64)

Code J60 (Coal worker's pneumoconiosis):

When Occupation is reported as:

- Coal miner
- Coal worker
- Miner

Occupation: Coal Miner

- |                    |     |
|--------------------|-----|
| I (a) Bronchitis   | J40 |
| (b) Pneumoconiosis | J60 |

32. Alveolar Hemorrhage (Diffused) (K088)

Code R048 (Lung hemorrhage):

When reported anywhere on record with:

A000-R825

R826

R827-R892

R893

R894-R961

R98-Y899

I (a) Respiratory Failure	J969
(b) Alveolar Hemorrhage	R048

Code I(b) lung hemorrhage, R048, since alveolar hemorrhage is reported on the record with a condition classified to J969

33. Diaphragmatic Hernia in K44.-

Code Q790 (Congenital diaphragmatic hernia):

When reported as causing hypoplasia or dysplasia of lung NOS (Q336).

- |   |                          |      |
|---|--------------------------|------|
| I | (a) Lung dysplasia       | Q336 |
|   | (b) Diaphragmatic hernia | Q790 |
|   | (c)                      |      |

34. Laennec’s Cirrhosis NOS (K703)

Code K746 (Nonalcoholic Laennec’s cirrhosis):

When reported due to:

A000-B99	K710-K718	Y574-Y599
C000-D539	K730-K760	Y640
D730-D739	K761	Y86
E02-E0390	K763	Y870-Y872
E100-E149	K768-K851	Y880
E500-E519	K853-K859	Y881
E52	K861-K909	
E530-E849	Q410-Q459	
F110-F169	Q900-Q999	
F180-F199	R75	
I050-I099	T360-T509	
I110-I119	T520-T659	
I130-I4250	T97	
I427-I519	X40-X44	
I81	X46-X49	
K500-K519	Y400-Y572	
K630-K639	Y573	

I (a) Cardiac arrest	I469
(b) Laennec’s cirrhosis	K746
(c) Diabetes	E149

Code I(b) nonalcoholic Laennec’s cirrhosis since reported “due to” diabetes

35. Biliary Cirrhosis NOS (K745)Code K744 (Secondary biliary cirrhosis):

When reported due to:

A000-B99	K763
C000-D539	K768-K909
D730-D739	Q410-Q459
E02-E0390	Q900-Q999
E100-E149	R75
E500-E849	R780
F100-F169	R826
F180-F199	R893
I050-I099	T360-T659
I110-I119	T97
I130-I519	X40-X49
I81	X65
K500-K519	Y15
K630-K639	Y400-Y599
K700-K718	Y640
K730-K760	Y86-Y880
K761	Y881

I (a) Biliary cirrhosis	K745
(b)	
(c)	
I (a) Primary biliary cirrhosis	K743
(b)	
(c)	
I (a) Secondary biliary cirrhosis	K744
(b)	
(c)	
I (a) Biliary cirrhosis	K744
(b) Carcinoma pancreas	C259
(c)	

36. Lupus Erythematosus (L930)  
Lupus (L930)

Code M321 (Systemic lupus erythematosus with organ or system involvement):

When reported as causing a disease of the following systems:

- Anemia
- Circulatory (including cardiovascular,  
lymph nodes, spleen)
- Gastrointestinal
- Musculoskeletal
- Respiratory
- Thrombocytopenia
- Urinary

- |                         |      |
|-------------------------|------|
| I (a) Nephritis         | N059 |
| (b) Lupus erythematosus | M321 |
| (c)                     |      |

37. Gout (M109)

Code M104 (Secondary gout):

When reported due to:

B200-B24	L578-L589
C880-C959	L930-L932
D45	L945
D550-D599	L951
D751	L981
D758	M100-M109
E168	R75
E740	T510-T519
F100-F102	T97
F109	X45
K700-K769	X65
L100-L109	Y15
L120-L449	Y86-Y872
L510-L569	

I (a) Perforated gastric ulcer	K255
(b) Gout	M104
(c) Waldenstrom's macroglobulinemia	C880

38. Polyarthrosis (M159)

Code M153 (Secondary multiple arthrosis):

When reported due to:

- A399
- B200-B24
- E660-E669
- G810-G839
- M150-M1990
- N924
- N950-N959
- R54
- R75
- S000-T983

- |                            |      |
|----------------------------|------|
| I (a) Hypostatic pneumonia | J182 |
| (b) Polyarthrosis          | M153 |
| (c) Obesity                | E669 |

Code I(b) secondary multiple arthrosis, M153, since reported due to obesity.

39. Coxarthrosis (M169)

- Code (a) M166 (Coxarthrosis, secondary, bilateral):  
(b) M167 (Coxarthrosis, secondary, NEC, (unilateral)):

When reported due to:

A399  
B200-B24  
E660-E669  
G810-G839  
M150-M161  
M166-M1990  
N924  
N950-N959  
R54  
R75

- |                   |      |
|-------------------|------|
| I (a) Pneumonia   | J189 |
| (b) Debility      | R53  |
| (c) Coxarthrosis  | M167 |
| (d) Polyarthrosis | M159 |

Code I(c) secondary coxarthrosis, M167, since reported due to polyarthrosis (M159).

40. Gonarthrosis (M179)

- Code (a) M174 (Secondary gonarthrosis, bilateral):  
(b) M175 (Secondary gonarthrosis, (unilateral)):

When reported due to:

- A399
- B200-B24
- E660-E669
- G810-G839
- M150-M171
- M174-M1990
- N924
- N950-N959
- R54
- R75

- |                               |      |      |
|-------------------------------|------|------|
| I (a) Pneumonia, gonarthrosis | J189 | M175 |
| (b) Hemiplegia                | G819 |      |
| (c) Old CVA                   | I694 |      |

Code I(a) secondary gonarthrosis, M175, since reported due to hemiplegia.

41. Arthrosis (M199)

Code M192 (Secondary arthrosis):

When reported due to:

A399  
B200-B24  
E660-E669  
G810-G839  
M150-M190  
M192-M1990  
N924  
N950-N959  
R54  
R75

I (a) Pathological fractures	M844
(b) Arthrosis	M192
(c) Senility	R54

Code I(b) secondary arthrosis, M192, since reported due to senility.

42. Kyphosis (M402)Code M401 (Secondary kyphosis):

When reported due to:

A1690	E890-E899	M359-M489
A180	G110-G119	M800-M949
B902	G20-G2000	M960-M969
B91	G35-G379	Q050-Q059
C400-C419	G540-G549	Q760-Q799
C490-C499	G600-G839	Q850
C795	G950-G959	Q870-Q878
D166	G970-G979	Q893-Q999
D480	M000-M120	S000-Y899
E200-E215	M150-M1990	
E550-E559	M320-M351	

I (a) COPD	J449
(b) Kyphosis	M401
(c) Spinal osteoarthritis	M479

Code I(b) secondary kyphosis, M401, since reported due to spinal osteoarthritis.

43. Scoliosis (M419)a. Code M414 (Neuromuscular scoliosis):

When reported due to:

A800-A809	G700-G709
B91	G800-G809
G111	M414

I (a) Respiratory failure	J969
(b) Severe scoliosis	years M414
(c) Polio	years B91

Code I(b) neuromuscular scoliosis, M414, since reported due to polio (B91).

b. Code M415 (secondary scoliosis):

When reported due to:

A1690	G09	M415-M489
A180	G20-G2000	M800-M949
B902	G360-G379	M960-M969
C400-C419	G540-G549	Q050-Q059
C490-C499	G600-G64	Q760-Q799
C795	G950-G959	Q850
D166	G970-G979	Q870-Q878
D480	M000-M120	Q893-Q999
E200-E215	M150-M1990	S000-Y899
E550-E559	M320-M351	
E890-E899	M359-M413	

I (a) Pneumonia	J189
(b) Scoliosis	M415
(c) Progressive systemic sclerosis	M340

Code I(b) secondary scoliosis, M415, since reported due to progressive systemic sclerosis.

44. Osteonecrosis (M879) )Code M873 (Secondary osteonecrosis):

When reported due to:

A000-A399	D550-D589	M860-M870
A400-A419	H650-H669	M873
A420-B889	J00-J399	M878-M889
B89	L00-L089	M894
B900-B949	M000-M1990	M910-M939
B99	M320-M351	N340-N343
C400-C419	M359	N390
C763	M420-M429	N700-N768
C795	M45-M461	R75
C810-C969	M462	
D160-D169	M463-M479	
D480	M600	

I (a) Septicemia	A419
(b) Osteonecrosis hip	M873
(c) Infective myositis	M600

Code I(b) secondary osteonecrosis, M873, since reported due to infective myositis (M600).

45. Dysmenorrhea (N946)

Code N945 (Secondary dysmenorrhea):

When reported due to:

C530-C55	N800-N809
C798	N840-N841
D060-D069	N850-N889
D073	N945
D250-D269	Q510-Q519
D390	Q528
N710-N739	

I (a) Anemia and gastric ulcer	D649	K259
(b) Menorrhagia with dysmenorrhea	N920	N945
(c) Cancer of endocervix	C530	

Code I(b) secondary dysmenorrhea, N945, since reported due to cancer of endocervix (C530).

- 46. Cesarean Delivery for Inertia Uterus (O622)
  - Hypotonic Labor (O622)
  - Hypotonic Uterus Dysfunction (O622)
  - Inadequate Uterus Contraction (O622)
  - Uterine Inertia During Labor (O622)

Code O621 (Secondary uterine inertia):

When reported due to:

- |           |           |
|-----------|-----------|
| O100-O209 | O440-O469 |
| O230-O249 | O621      |
| O260-O264 | O670-O679 |
| O266-O269 | O95       |
| O310      | O980-O998 |
| O330-O349 |           |

- |                                    |      |
|------------------------------------|------|
| I (a) Cardiac arrest               | O754 |
| (b) Uterine inertia                | O621 |
| (c) Diabetes mellitus of pregnancy | O249 |

Code I(b) secondary uterine inertia, O621, since reported due to diabetes mellitus of pregnancy (O249).

47. Brain Damage, newborn (P112)

Code P219 (Anoxic brain damage, newborn):

When reported due to:

- A000-R825
- R826
- R827-R892
- R893
- R894-R961
- R98-Y899

Male, 9 hours

- |                              |      |
|------------------------------|------|
| I (a) Brain damage           | P219 |
| (b) Congenital heart disease | Q249 |

Code I(a) anoxic brain damage, P219, since reported due to congenital heart disease.

48. Intracranial Nontraumatic Hemorrhage of Fetus and Newborn (P52)

Code P10 (Intracranial laceration and hemorrhage due to birth injury) with the appropriate fourth character:

When reported due to:

P030-P039  
 P100-P112  
 P119  
 P130-P131  
 P159

Male, 9 hours

I (a) Cerebral hemorrhage	P101
(b) Fractured skull during birth	P130
(c)	

Code I(a) cerebral hemorrhage due to birth injury, P101, since reported due to a fracture skull occurring during birth.

Female, 2 weeks

I (a) Cerebral hemorrhage	P101
(b) Birth injury	P159
(c)	

Code I(a) cerebral hemorrhage due to birth injury, P101.

49. Septal Defect, (atrial), (auricular), (heart), (ventricular), (Q210, Q211, Q212, Q219)

Code I510 (Acquired septal defect) providing there is no indication the defect is congenital:

a. When reported due to:

A000-A099	I400-I519	N990-N999	R502-R509
A181	I700-J80	P000-P049	R53-R54
A200-B89	J82-J989	P100-Q079	R560-R609
B908-E899	K20-K929	Q240-Q249	R634-R635
F100-F199	L89	Q260-Q349	R64
G000-G419	L97	Q380-Q459	R688-R799
G450-G459	L984	Q600-Q799	R826
G500-G729	M000-M1990	Q850-R098	R893
G900-G98	M300-M549	R11	S000-Y899
H650-H839	M800-M959	R160-R18	
I00-I029	N000-N399	R222	
I10-I339	N600-N96	R300-R398	

b. When reported on the same line with:

I110-I119  
 I130-I139  
 I200-I339  
 I400-I519

I (a) Cardiac arrest	I469
(b) Ventricular septal defect	I510
(c) Myocardial infarction	I219

50. Hypoplasia or Dysplasia of Lung NOS (Q336)

Code P280 (Primary atelectasis of newborn):

When reported anywhere on the record with the following codes and not reported due to diaphragmatic hernia in K44.- or in Q790, and there is no indication that the condition was congenital.

A500-A509  
 B200-B24  
 P000-P009  
 P011-P013  
 P050-P073  
 P220-P229  
 P280  
 P350-P399  
 P612  
 Q600-Q611  
 Q613-Q649  
 R75

I (a) Hypoplasia lung		P280
(b)		
(c)		
II Prematurity		P073
Female, 5 hrs.		
I (a) Dysplasia of lung	5 hrs	Q336
(b)		
(c)		
II Hyaline membrane disease		P220

Code Q336, since the duration and age are the same indicating the condition was congenital.

51. Injury (S000-T149)

Code P10-P15 (Birth trauma):

a. When the age of decedent is less than 28 days

**AND**

b. There is no mention of external cause

**AND**

c. Reported due to a condition in P000-P969

Male, 5 days

I (a) Femur fracture P132

(b) Breech delivery P030

Code femur fracture as indexed under Birth, injury, fracture, femur.

52. Fracture (any site) (T142)

Code M844 (Pathological fracture):

a. When reported due to:

A180	D480	M320-M351	M854-M889	Q799
A500-A509	D489	M359	M893-M895	R54
A521	E210-E215	M420-M429	M898-M939	T810-T819
A527-A539	E550-E559	M45-M519	M941-M949	T840-T849
A666	E896-E899	M600	M960	T870-T889
C000-C97	G120-G129	M800-M839	M966-M969	
D160-D169	M000-M1990	M843-M851	Q770-Q789	

b. When reported on the same line with:

C40-C41	M80-M81	M88
C795	M83	

**NOTE 1:** If accident box is checked, do not enter an external cause code.

**NOTE 2:** If a fracture qualifies as pathological, all fractures reported of the same site will be coded pathological as well.

I (a) Fracture hip	M844
(b) Osteoarthritis	M199
I (a) Myocardial infarction	I219
(b) ASHD	I251
(c)	
II Fracture of spine due to arthritis causing fall	M844 M139 W19
I (a) Pneumonia	J189
(b) Osteoporosis c fracture spine	M819 M844
I (a) Pneumonitis	J189
(b) Arteriosclerosis	I709
(c) Fracture femur	M844

MOD II

A

Accident	Spontaneous in bed
----------	--------------------

Code fracture of femur as pathological, M844, since the certifier indicated it was spontaneous. Do not enter code for “accident” in checkbox.

### SECTION III

### Intent of Certifier

---

I	(a) Aspiration pneumonia	J690
	(b) Left hip fracture	M844
	(c)	
II	Hip fracture, anemia, osteoporosis	M844 D649 M819

Code the hip fracture on (b) and in Part II as pathological, applying instruction b and note 2.

53. Starvation NOS (T730)Code E46 (Malnutrition NOS):

When reported due to:

A000-E649	L100-L129	R13	T058
E670-F509	L400-L409	R54	T065-T08
F530-F539	L510-L539	R600-R609	T091-T099
F608-F609	L89	R630	T141
F680-F73	L97	R633-R634	T148-T149
F920	L984	R75	T170-T217
F982-F983	M000-M1990	S010-S099	T270-T329
F989-G98	M300-N459	S110-S199	T360-T659
I00-J80	N700-N768	S210-S299	T800-T889
J82-J989	O000-Q079	S310-S399	T97
K020-K029	Q200-Q824	T019-T021	T983
K040-K069	Q850-Q999	T029	V010-Y899
K080-K929	R11	T041	

I (a) Anemia	D649
(b) Starvation	E46
(c) Cancer of esophagus	C159

Code I(b) E46, malnutrition, since reported due to a neoplasm.

I (a) Starvation	E46
(b) Crushed abdomen	S381
II Auto accident	&V499

Code I(a) E46, malnutrition, since reported due to an internal injury.

54. Compartment Syndrome (T796)Code M622 (Nontraumaic compartment syndrome)

When reported due to:

A530-A539	F109	N040-N049
B200-B24	F449	N170-N19
B91	G10-G419	Q000-Q079
C000-D489	G450-G98	Q250-Q269
D610-D699	I250-I259	Q650-Q799
E000-E039	I48	Q900-Q999
E230-E237	I600-I99	R190
E40-E46	K310-K389	R198
E511-E52	K560-K567	R263
E630-E649	K590-K599	R402
E750-E752	K650-K659	R58-R5800
E754	K850-K869	R75
E872	K910-K919	
E890-E899	L89	
F100-F102	L97-M999	

I (a) Compartment syndrome	M622
(b) Hemorrhagic pancreatitis	K859

Code I(a) M622 since reported due to pancreatitis.

General information

Separate categories are provided in ICD-10 for coding malignant primary and secondary neoplasms (C00-C96), carcinoma in situ (D00-D09), benign neoplasms (D10-D36), and neoplasms of uncertain or unknown behavior (D37-D48). Categories and subcategories within these groups identify sites and/or morphological types.

Morphology describes the difference in type and structure of cells or tissues (histology) as seen under the microscope and behavior. The ICD classification of neoplasms consists of several major morphological groups (types) of neoplasms including the following:

- Carcinomas including squamous cell carcinoma and adenocarcinoma
- Sarcomas and other soft tissue tumors including mesotheliomas
- Lymphomas including Hodgkin's lymphoma and non-Hodgkin's lymphoma
- Site specific types (types that indicate the site of the primary neoplasm)
- Leukemias
- Other specified morphological groups

The morphological types of neoplasms are listed in ICD-10 following Chapter XX in Volume 1 and also appear in Volume 3. Morphology, behavior, and site must all be considered when coding neoplasms. This may take the form of a reference to the appropriate column in the "Neoplasm" listing in the Index when the morphological type could occur in several organs. For example:

Adenoma, villous (M8261/1) - see Neoplasm, uncertain behavior

Or to a particular part of that listing when the morphological type originates in a particular type of tissue. For example:

Fibromyxoma (M8811/0) - see Neoplasm, connective tissue, benign

The Index may give the code for the site assumed to be most likely when no site is reported for a morphological type. For example:

- Adenocarcinoma
- pseudomucinous (M8470/3)
- - specified site - see Neoplasm, malignant
- - unspecified site C56

## Part A

## Neoplasms (C00-D48)

Or the Index may give a code to be used regardless of the reported site when the vast majority of neoplasms of that particular morphological type occur in a particular site. For example:

Nephroma (M8960/3) C64

Always look up the morphological description in the Index before referring to the listing under “Neoplasm” for the site.

The morphological code numbers consist of five characters: the first four identify the histological type of the neoplasm and the fifth, following a slash, indicates its behavior. These morphological codes (M codes) are not used by NCHS for coding purposes.

The behavior of a neoplasm is an indication of how it will act. The following terms describe the behavior of neoplasms:

Malignant, primary site (capable of rapid growth and of spreading to nearby and distant sites)	C00-C76, C80-C96
Malignant secondary (spread from another site; metastases)	C77-C79
In-situ (confined to one site)	D00-D09
Benign (non-malignant)	D10-D36
Uncertain or unknown behavior (undetermined whether benign or malignant)	D37-D48

Unless it is specifically indexed, code a morphological term ending in “osis” in the same way as the tumor name to which “osis” has been added is coded. For example, code neuroblastomatosis in the same way as neuroblastoma. However, do not code hemangiomatosis that is specifically indexed to a different category in the same way as hemangioma.

All combinations of the order of prefixes in compound morphological terms are not indexed. For example, the term “chondrofibrosarcoma” does not appear in the Index, but “fibrochondrosarcoma” does. Since the two terms have the same prefixes (in a different order), code the chondrofibrosarcoma the same as fibrochondrosarcoma.

## Part A

## Neoplasms (C00-D48)

A. Malignant neoplasms (C00-C96)

The categories that have been provided for the classification of malignant neoplasms distinguish between those that are stated or presumed to be primary (originate in) of the particular site or types of tissue involved, those that are stated or presumed to be secondary (deposits, metastases, or spread from a primary elsewhere) of specified sites, and malignant neoplasms without specification of site. These categories are the following:

**C00-C75** Malignant neoplasms, stated or presumed to be primary, of specified sites and different types of tissue, except lymphoid, hematopoietic, and related tissue

**C76** Malignant neoplasms of other and ill-defined sites

**C77-C79** Malignant secondary neoplasm, stated or presumed to be spread from another site, metastases of sites, regardless of morphological type of neoplasm

**C80** Malignant neoplasm of unspecified site (primary) (secondary)

**C81-C96** Malignant neoplasms, stated or presumed to be primary, of lymphoid, hematopoietic, and related tissue

In order to determine the appropriate code for each reported neoplasm, a number of factors must be taken into account including the morphological type of neoplasm and qualifying terms. Assign all malignant neoplasms to the appropriate category for the morphological type of neoplasm, i.e., to the code shown in the Index for the reported term.

**Morphological types** of neoplasm include categories C40-C41, C43, C44, C45, C46, C47, C49, C70-C72, and C80. Specific morphological types include:

**C40-C41** Malignant neoplasm of bone and articular cartilage of other and unspecified sites

Osteosarcoma

Osteochondrosarcoma

Osteofibrosarcoma

Any neoplasm cross-referenced as “See also Neoplasm bone, malignant”

I (a) Osteosarcoma of leg C402

Code the morphological type “Osteosarcoma” to Neoplasm, malignant, bone of the specified site as cross-referenced.

- 
- C43** Malignant melanoma of skin
- Melanosarcoma  
Melanoblastoma  
Any neoplasm cross-referenced as “See also Melanoma”
- I (a) Melanoma of arm C436
- Based on the note in the Index, code melanoma of arm as indexed under **Melanoma, site classification**.
- I (a) Melanoma of stomach C169
- Melanoma of stomach is not found under Melanoma in the Index. The term should be coded by site under Neoplasm, malignant.
- C44** Other malignant neoplasm of skin
- Basal cell carcinoma  
Sebaceous cell carcinoma  
Any neoplasm cross-referenced as “See also Neoplasm skin, malignant”
- I (a) Sebaceous cell carcinoma nose C443
- Code the morphological type “Sebaceous cell carcinoma” to Neoplasm, malignant, skin of the specified site as cross-referenced.
- C49** Malignant neoplasm of other connective and soft tissue
- Liposarcoma  
Rhabdomyosarcoma  
Any neoplasm cross-referenced as “See also Neoplasm, connective tissue, malignant”
- I (a) Rhabdomyosarcoma abdomen C494
- Code the morphological type “Rhabdomyosarcoma” to Neoplasm, malignant, connective tissue of the specified site as cross-referenced.
- I (a) Sarcoma pancreas C259
- Code the morphological type “Sarcoma” to Neoplasm, malignant, connective tissue of the specified site as cross-referenced. Refer to the “Note” under Neoplasm, malignant, connective tissue concerning sites that do not appear in this list.

## Part A

## Neoplasms (C00-D48)

**C80** Malignant neoplasm without specification of site

Cancer

Carcinoma

Malignancy

Malignant tumor or neoplasm

Any neoplasm cross-referenced as “See also Neoplasm, malignant”

I (a) Carcinoma of stomach C169

Code the morphological type “Carcinoma” to Neoplasm, malignant, stomach as indexed.

I (a) Cancer prostate C61

Code the morphological type “Cancer” to Neoplasm, malignant, prostate as indexed.

I (a) Adenosarcoma breast C509

Code the morphological type “Adenosarcoma” to Neoplasm, malignant, of the specified site as cross-referenced.

**C81-C96** Malignant neoplasms of lymphoid, hematopoietic, and related tissue

Leukemia

Lymphoma

I (a) Lymphoma of brain C859

Code Lymphoma NOS, C859, as indexed. Neoplasms in C81-C96 are coded by morphological type and not by site.

## Part A

## Neoplasms (C00-D48)

1. Neoplasms stated to be secondary

Categories C77-C79 include secondary neoplasms of specified sites regardless of the morphological type of the neoplasm. The Index contains a listing of secondary neoplasms of specified sites under “Neoplasm.” Secondary neoplasms of specified sites without indication of the primary site require an additional code to identify the morphological type of neoplasm if the morphological type is classifiable to one of the following categories: C40, C41, C43, C44, C45, C46, C49, C70, C71, and C72.

I (a) Secondary melanoma of lung C439 C780

Melanoma is classified to C43; therefore, when stated secondary of a site, code Melanoma, unspecified site and secondary neoplasm of the reported site.

I (a) Secondary carcinoma of intestine C785

The morphological type of the term “carcinoma” is C80; therefore, code a secondary neoplasm code only.

2. Malignant neoplasms with primary site indicated

**NOTE:** If two or more malignant neoplasms are indicated as primary, refer to instructions under 5. Independent (primary) sites.

a. If a particular site is indicated as primary, it should be coded as primary and other neoplasms coded as secondary whether in Part I or Part II. The primary site may be indicated in one of the following ways:

(1) If two or more sites with the same morphology are reported, and one site is specified as primary in either Part I or II

I (a) Carcinoma of bladder C791  
II Primary in kidney C64

Code carcinoma of bladder as secondary and code primary malignant neoplasm of kidney.

I (a) Primary cancer of lung C349  
(b) Cancer of breast C798

Code primary malignant neoplasm of lung and code cancer of breast as secondary.

## Part A

## Neoplasms (C00-D48)

- (2) The specification of other sites as “secondary,” “metastases,” “metastasis,” “spread,” or a statement of “metastasis NOS” or “metastases NOS”

I (a) Carcinoma of breast	C509
(b) Secondaries in brain	C793

Code I(a) primary malignant neoplasm of breast, and I(b) to secondary malignant neoplasm of brain.

I (a) Stomach metastases	C788
(b) Lung cancer	C349

Code I(a) secondary neoplasm of stomach and I(b) primary malignant neoplasm of lung.

I (a) Brain metastases	C793
(b) Liver cancer	C229

Code I(a) secondary neoplasm of brain and I(b) primary malignant neoplasm of liver.

I (a) Lung cancer with metastases	C349 C80
-----------------------------------	----------

Code I(a) primary cancer of lung followed by the NOS code for metastases.

- (3) Morphology indicates a primary malignant neoplasm

If a morphological type implies a primary site, such as hepatoma, consider this as if the word “primary” had been included.

I (a) Hepatoma	C220
----------------	------

Code hepatoma as a primary neoplasm.

I (a) Carcinoma	C80
(b) Pseudomucinous adenocarcinoma	C56

Code I(a) Carcinoma as neoplasm malignant, unspecified site. Code I(b) to primary malignant neoplasm of ovary, since pseudomucinous adenocarcinoma of unspecified site is assigned to the ovary in the Index.

## Part A

## Neoplasms (C00-D48)

- b. If a morphological type of malignant neoplasm indicating primary is reported in Part I or Part II with a different morphological type of malignant neoplasm that is stated primary, consider both neoplasms to be primary.

I (a) Sarcoma of thigh	C492
II Primary liver carcinoma	C229

Code each neoplasm as indexed. Both I(a) Sarcoma of thigh and Part II Primary liver carcinoma are primary malignant neoplasms.

3. Site specific neoplasms

- a. Certain neoplasms are classified or indexed directly to a specific site. Classify morphological types of neoplasms that appear in the Index with specific codes (site specific neoplasms) e.g. "Hepatocarcinoma (M8170/3) C220," as indexed.

I (a) Renal cell carcinoma	C64
----------------------------	-----

Code renal cell carcinoma as indexed.

- b. If there is a conflict between the code for a site specific neoplasm and the stated site, code the site specific neoplasm as indexed and code the stated site as secondary. Enter the code for the secondary neoplasm on the same line with and immediately following the code for the site specific neoplasm.

I (a) Hepatocarcinoma of brain	C220 C793
--------------------------------	-----------

Code hepatocarcinoma as indexed and code secondary malignant neoplasm of brain as the second entry on I(a).

- c. When a site specific neoplasm is reported due to the same site specific neoplasm, code each as indexed.

I (a) Bronchogenic carcinoma	C349
(b) Bronchogenic carcinoma	C349

Code I(a) and I(b) to bronchogenic carcinoma, as indexed.

4. Other morphological types of neoplasms

If adenocarcinoma, cancer, carcinoma, neoplasm (malignant) or tumor (malignant) of a site, except neoplasms classifiable to C81-C96, are reported due to a morphological type of neoplasm of unspecified site, code the neoplasm on the upper line qualified by the morphological type, and do not enter a code for the morphological type of unspecified site on the lower line if:

a. The morphological type of neoplasm reported on the lower line is C80.

I (a) Tumor of upper lung C341  
 (b) Carcinoma

Code the tumor on I(a) modified by the morphological type (C80) on I(b).  
 Leave line I(b) blank.

I (a) Cancer of bladder C679  
 (b) Papillary carcinoma

Code the cancer on I(a) modified by the morphological type (C80) on I(b).  
 Leave line I(b) blank.

b. The morphological type of neoplasm of unspecified site on the lower line is classified to the same site as the neoplasm on the upper line.

I (a) Cancer of brain C719  
 (b) Astrocytoma

Code the specified site on I(a) modified by the morphological type of unspecified site on I(b) since they are classified to the same site. Leave I(b) blank.

I (a) Adenocarcinoma of stomach C169  
 (b) Linitis plastica

Code the specified site on I(a) modified by the morphological type of unspecified site on I(b) since they are classified to the same site. Leave I(b) blank.

c. The morphological type of neoplasm of unspecified site on the lower line is classified according to the site affected, e.g., the malignant neoplasms classifiable to the following categories: C40, C41, C43, C44, C47, C49, C70, C71, and C72. Code the neoplasm on the upper line qualified by the morphological type on the lower line, and do not enter a code for the morphological type of unspecified site on the lower line.

## Part A

## Neoplasms (C00-D48)

I (a) Adenocarcinoma of face C433  
 (b) Melanoma

Code melanoma of face on I(a) and leave I(b) blank.

I (a) Carcinoma of leg C492  
 (b) Fibroliposarcoma

Code fibroliposarcoma of leg on I(a) and leave I(b) blank.

5. Independent (primary) sites

The presence of more than one primary neoplasm could be indicated in one of the following ways:

- mention of two different anatomical sites
- or two distinct morphological types (e.g., hypernephroma and intraductal carcinoma)
- or by a mix of a morphological type that implies a specific site, plus a second site.

It is highly unlikely that one primary would be due to another primary malignant neoplasm except for a group of malignant neoplasms of lymphoid, hematopoietic, and related tissue (C81-C96), within which, one form of malignancy may terminate in another (e.g., leukemia may follow non-Hodgkin's lymphoma).

- a. If two or more sites are mentioned in Part I and there is no indication that either site is primary or secondary, code each site as indexed.

I (a) Cancer of stomach 3 months C169  
 (b) Cancer of breast 1 year C509

Code to primary malignant neoplasm of each site mentioned, since it is unlikely that one primary malignant neoplasm would be due to another.

I (a) Carcinoma of colon and rectum C189 C20

Code both sites as primary and enter both on I(a).

## Part A

## Neoplasms (C00-D48)

- b. If two or more morphological types of malignant neoplasm occur, one reported due to the other or reported anywhere on the record, code each as indexed.

I (a) Lymphosarcoma of mesentery	C850
II Adenocarcinoma of cecum	C180

Code each as though the other had not been reported since there are two different morphological types of malignant neoplasms.

I (a) Cancer of esophagus	C159
(b) Hodgkin's sarcoma	C817

Code the cancer of the esophagus as primary and code the Hodgkin's sarcoma as indexed. They are different morphological types.

I (a) Leukemia	C959
II Carcinoma of breast	C509

Code each neoplasm as indexed. Two different morphological types are mentioned.

- c. If two or more morphological types of malignant neoplasm occur in lymphoid, hematopoietic, or related tissue (C81-C96), code each as indexed. When acute exacerbation of, or blastic crisis (acute) in, chronic leukemia is reported, code both the acute form and chronic form. If stated acute and chronic, code both as indexed.

I (a) Acute lymphocytic leukemia	C910
(b) Non-Hodgkin's lymphoma	C859

Code each as indexed since both are morphological types classified within the categories C81-C96.

I (a) Chronic lymphocytic leukemia with blastic crisis	C911 C910
--	-----------

Code both chronic lymphocytic leukemia and acute lymphocytic leukemia.

I (a) Acute exacerbation of chronic lymphocytic leukemia	C910 C911
(b)	

Code to the acute and chronic form when reported as acute exacerbation of a chronic form of leukemia and code both on the same line.

## Part A

Neoplasms (C00-D48)

---

d. Do not use a neoplasm in a due to position to determine secondary and primary.

- |       |                               |      |
|-------|-------------------------------|------|
| I (a) | Carcinoma of head of pancreas | C250 |
| (b)   | Carcinoma of tail of pancreas | C252 |

Code primary malignant neoplasm of head of pancreas for I(a) and code primary malignant neoplasm of tail of pancreas for I(b).

- |       |                       |      |
|-------|-----------------------|------|
| I (a) | Cancer of stomach     | C169 |
| (b)   | Cancer of gallbladder | C23  |

Code each site primary.

- |       |                       |      |
|-------|-----------------------|------|
| I (a) | Cancer of breast      | C509 |
| (b)   | Cancer of endometrium | C541 |

Code each site primary.

6. Metastases

Metastases is the spread of a primary malignant neoplasm to another site; therefore, metastases of a site is always secondary.

- a. When malignancy NOS or any morphological type classifiable to C80 is reported with metastases of a site on a line, code C80 and the secondary neoplasm.

I (a) Malignancy with metastases                      C80 C791  
of bladder

Code malignancy as first entry on I(a) and code secondary bladder neoplasm as the second neoplasm on I(a).

- b. Although malignant cells can metastasize anywhere in the body, certain sites are more common than others and must be treated differently. If one of the common sites of metastases (excluding lung) is qualified by the word “metastatic,” it should be coded as secondary (see other neoplasm instructions). However, if one of these sites appears alone on a death certificate and is not qualified by the word “metastatic,” it should be considered primary.

Common sites of metastases:

Bone	Lymph nodes
Brain	Mediastinum
Central nervous system	Meninges
Diaphragm	Peritoneum
Heart	Pleura
Liver	Retroperitoneum
Lung	Spinal cord
Ill-defined sites (sites classifiable to C76)	

I (a) Cancer of brain    C719

Code primary cancer of brain since it is reported alone on the certificate.

■ (1) Special Instruction: Lung

The lung poses special problems in that it is a common site for both metastases and primary malignant neoplasms.

- Lung should be considered as a common site of metastases whenever it appears in Part I with sites not on this list.
- If lung is mentioned anywhere on the certificate and the only other sites are on the list of common sites of metastases, consider lung primary.
- However, when the bronchus or bronchogenic cancer is mentioned, this neoplasm should be considered primary.

I (a) Carcinoma of lung C349

Code primary malignant neoplasm of lung since it is reported alone on the certificate.

I (a) Cancer of bone C795  
 (b) Carcinoma of lung C349

Code primary malignant neoplasm of lung on I(b) since bone is on the list of common sites of metastases and lung can, therefore, be assumed to be primary.

I (a) Carcinoma of bronchus C349  
 (b) Carcinoma of breast C509

Code primary malignant neoplasm of bronchus on I(a) and primary malignant neoplasm of breast on I(b). Do not code I(a) as secondary malignant neoplasm, because bronchus is excluded from the list of common sites.

■ (2) Special Instruction: Lymph Node

Malignant neoplasm of lymph nodes not specified as primary should be assumed to be secondary.

I (a) Cancer of cervical lymph nodes C770

Code secondary malignant neoplasm of cervical lymph nodes.

7. Multiple sites

- a. If all sites reported (anywhere on certificate) are on the list of common sites of metastases, code to secondary neoplasm of each site of the morphological type involved, unless lung is mentioned, in which case code to (C349) primary malignant neoplasm of lung.

I (a) Cancer of liver	C787
(b) Cancer of abdomen	C798

Code to secondary neoplasm of both sites since both are on the list of common sites of metastases. Abdomen is one of the ill-defined sites included in the C76.- category.

I (a) Malignant carcinoma of pleura and mediastinum	C782 C781
--	-----------

Code secondary malignant neoplasm of pleura and secondary malignant neoplasm of mediastinum on I(a).

I (a) Peritoneal carcinoma	C786
II Liver carcinoma	C787

Code secondary malignant neoplasm of peritoneum on I(a) and secondary malignant neoplasm of liver in Part II.

I (a) Cancer of brain	C793
(b) Cancer of lung	C349

Code I(a) secondary cancer of brain since brain is on the list of common sites. Code I(b) primary cancer of lung because the only other site mentioned is on the list of common sites.

- b. If one or more of the common sites of metastases, excluding lung, is reported and one or more site(s) or one or more morphological type(s) is mentioned on the certificate, none specified as primary, code the common site(s) secondary and the other site(s) or morphological type(s) primary.

I (a) Cancer of stomach	C169
(b) Cancer of liver	C787

Code I(a) primary cancer of stomach and code I(b) secondary cancer of liver since liver is on the list of common sites and stomach is not.

## SECTION IV

## Classification of Certain ICD Categories

## Part A

## Neoplasms (C00-D48)

I (a) Liver cancer	C787
(b) Bladder cancer	C679
(c) Colon cancer	C189

Code I(a) secondary neoplasm of liver since liver is on the list of common sites of metastases. Code I(b) and I(c) as primary.

I (a) Peritoneal cancer	C786
II Mammary carcinoma	C509

Code I(a) secondary peritoneal cancer since peritoneum is on the list of common sites. Code Part II primary carcinoma of breast.

I (a) Brain carcinoma	C793
II Melanoma of scalp	C434

Code I(a) secondary brain carcinoma since brain is on the list of common sites. Code Part II melanoma of scalp.

**NOTE:** If a malignant neoplasm of lymphatic, hematopoietic, or related tissue (C81-C96) is reported in one part and one of the common sites is mentioned in the other part, code the common site primary.

I (a) Brain cancer	C793
(b) Lymphoma	C859

Code I(a) secondary brain cancer since brain is on the list of common sites and is reported in the same part with a neoplasm indexed to C859.

I (a) Brain cancer	C719
II Lymphoma	C859

Code I(a) primary brain cancer. Brain is on the list of common sites of metastases, but it is reported in one part and a neoplasm indexed to C859 is reported in the other part.

c. If lung is mentioned in the same part with another site(s), not on the list of common sites, or one or more morphological type(s), code the lung as secondary and the other site(s) primary.

I (a) Lung cancer	C780
(b) Stomach cancer	C169

Code secondary lung cancer on I(a) and code primary stomach cancer on I(b) since both are in the same part.

## Part A

## Neoplasms (C00-D48)

I (a) Lung cancer	C780
(b) Leukemia	C959

Code secondary lung cancer on I(a) and code leukemia on I(b) since both are in the same part.

I (a) Bladder carcinoma	C679
II Lung cancer, breast cancer	C780 C509

Code I(a) primary bladder carcinoma and code primary breast cancer in Part II. Code secondary lung cancer in Part II. Lung is in the same part with another site.

- d. If lung is mentioned in one part, and one or more site(s), not on the list of common sites, or one or more morphological type(s) is mentioned in the other part, code the lung as primary and the other site(s) or other morphological type primary.

I (a) Stomach cancer	C169
II Lung cancer	C349

Code primary stomach cancer on I(a) and code primary lung cancer in Part II. Lung is mentioned in one part and the other site is mentioned in the other part.

I (a) Leukemia	C959
II Lung cancer	C349

Code leukemia on I(a) and code primary lung cancer in Part II. Lung is mentioned in one part and the other morphological type is mentioned in the other part.

8. Metastatic neoplasms

The adjective “metastatic” is used in two ways—sometimes meaning a secondary neoplasm from a primary elsewhere and sometimes denoting a primary that has given rise to metastases. Neoplasms qualified as metastatic are **always** malignant, either primary or secondary. In order to avoid confusion, use the following to determine whether to code a metastatic neoplasm as primary or secondary.

- a. Malignant neoplasm described as “from” or “metastatic from” a specified site should be interpreted as primary of that site and all other sites should be coded as secondary unless stated as primary whether in Part I or Part II.

I (a) Metastatic teratoma from ovary	C80
(b)	C56

Interpret as: I (a) Metastatic teratoma  
(b) Primary ovary teratoma

Then, code I(b) to primary malignant neoplasm of ovary since it states metastatic from ovary. Code I(a) to C80, malignant neoplasm, unspecified site.

I (a) Metastatic cancer from kidney	C80
(b)	C64

Interpret as: I (a) Metastatic cancer  
(b) Primary kidney cancer

Then, code I(b) to primary malignant neoplasm of kidney since it states metastatic from kidney. Code I(a) to C80, malignant neoplasm, unspecified site.

I (a) Carcinomatosis	C80
(b) Metastatic from bowel	C260
II Carcinoma of rectum	C785

Code I(b) primary neoplasm of bowel. Code the site in Part II as secondary.

- b. Malignant neoplasms of morphological type C80 of unspecified site described “to a site” or “metastatic to a site” should be interpreted as secondary of that site(s).

I (a) Metastatic carcinoma to the rectum	C785
--	------

Code to secondary malignant neoplasm of rectum. The word “to” indicates that the rectum is secondary.

## Part A

## Neoplasms (C00-D48)

I (a) Metastatic carcinoma to lungs and liver C780 C787

Code I(a) secondary neoplasm of lungs and liver since the record states “metastatic to.”

I (a) Metastatic carcinoma to lungs and liver C780 C787  
 (b) Bladder carcinoma C679

Code I(a) secondary neoplasm of lungs and liver since it states “metastatic to” and code I(b) primary malignant bladder carcinoma.

- c. Malignant neoplasms described as “from a site to a site” should be interpreted as primary of the site stated “from” and secondary of all other sites unless stated primary whether in Part I or Part II

I (a) Metastatic cancer from bowel to liver C787  
 (b) C260

Code I(a) secondary liver neoplasm. Interpret metastatic cancer from bowel to be a statement of primary and code I(b) primary cancer of bowel.

I (a) Metastatic cancer from liver to abdomen C798  
 (b) C229

Code secondary malignant neoplasm of abdomen on I(a) and primary malignant neoplasm of liver on I(b).

I (a) Malignant neoplasm of bone from leg C795  
 (b) C765

Code I(a) secondary bone neoplasm. Interpret metastatic neoplasm of bone from leg to be a statement of primary and code I(b) primary malignant neoplasm of leg.

- d. Malignant neoplasm described as (of) a site to a site should be interpreted as primary of the site preceding “to a site” and all other sites should be coded as secondary unless stated as primary, whether in Part I or Part II.

I (a) Cancer of breast C509  
 (b) Metastatic to mediastinum C781

Code I(a) to primary malignant neoplasm of breast and I(b) to secondary malignant neoplasm of mediastinum since it is reported as “metastatic to.” Enter the codes on the lines where reported.



g. The terms “metastatic” and “metastatic of” should be interpreted as follows:

- (1) If one site is mentioned and this is qualified as metastatic, code to malignant primary of that particular site if the morphological type is C80 and the site is not a common site of metastases, excluding lung.

I (a) Metastatic carcinoma of pancreas C259

Code primary malignant neoplasm of pancreas since one site is reported and it is not a common site.

I (a) Metastatic cancer of lung C349

Code to primary malignant neoplasm of lung since no other site is mentioned.

- (2) If no site is reported but the morphological type is qualified as metastatic, code to primary site unspecified of the particular morphological type involved. Do not use “metastatic” to qualify a malignant neoplasm, stated or presumed to be primary, of lymphoid, hematopoietic, and related tissue, classifiable to C81-C96 as secondary.

I (a) Metastatic melanoma C439

Code as indexed. Melanoma is a morphological type of neoplasm and is indexed to C439.

I (a) Metastatic Hodgkin’s Disease C819

Code a morphological type of neoplasm that is classified to C81-C96 as indexed regardless of whether qualified as metastatic.

- (3) Site-specific neoplasms reported as metastatic

- (a) When a site specific neoplasm is qualified as metastatic, code as indexed.

I (a) Metastatic hypernephroma C64

Code as indexed. Hypernephroma is a site specific neoplasm and is indexed to C64.

I (a) Metastatic meningioma C709

Metastatic meningioma is a malignant site specific morphological type of neoplasm. Code as indexed under Meningioma, malignant.

## Part A

## Neoplasms (C00-D48)

- (b) If there is a conflict between the code for a site specific neoplasm and the stated site, code the site specific neoplasm as indexed and consider the stated site to be qualified as secondary and code accordingly. Enter the code for the secondary site on the same line with and immediately following the code for the site specific neoplasm.

I (a) Metastatic renal cell carcinoma                    C64    C780  
       (b)    of lung

Code the site specific neoplasm, renal cell carcinoma followed by the code for secondary neoplasm of lung.

I (a) Metastatic hepatoma of brain                    C220   C793

Code the site specific neoplasm, hepatoma as indexed followed by the code for secondary brain neoplasm.

- (4) If a single morphological type and a site, other than a common site of metastases are qualified as metastatic, code to the specific category for the morphological type and site involved.

I (a) Metastatic melanoma of arm                    C436

Code to malignant melanoma of skin of arm (C436), since in this case the ill-defined site of arm is a specific site for melanoma, not a common site of metastases classifiable to C76.

I (a) Metastatic sarcoma of stomach                    C169

Code as indexed.

- (5) If a single C80 morphological type is qualified as metastatic and the site mentioned is one of the common sites of metastases **except lung**, code to secondary malignant neoplasm of the site mentioned. If the single site is lung, qualified as metastatic, code to primary of lung.

I (a) Metastatic cancer of peritoneum                    C786

Code to secondary cancer of peritoneum since peritoneum is on the list of common sites of metastases and the morphological type of neoplasm is classified to C80.

## Part A

## Neoplasms (C00-D48)

I (a) Metastatic cancer of lung C349

Code to primary malignant neoplasm of lung, C349, since no other site is mentioned.

- (6) If a single morphological type, other than C80 type, is qualified as metastatic and the site mentioned is one of the common sites of metastases **except lung**, code the unspecified site for the morphological type. Code the common site as secondary and as a second entry on the same line.

I (a) Metastatic rhabdomyosarcoma of C499 C771  
(b) hilar lymph nodes

Code to unspecified site for rhabdomyosarcoma and code the lymph nodes as secondary.

I (a) Metastatic sarcoma of lung C349

Code to malignant neoplasm of lung since lung is not considered a common site for this instruction.

**Exception:** Metastatic mesothelioma or Kaposi's sarcoma

1. If site IS indexed under "Mesothelioma or Kaposi's sarcoma," assign that code.

I (a) Metastatic mesothelioma of liver C457

Code site as indexed under mesothelioma.

I (a) Metastatic mesothelioma of mesentery C451

Code as indexed under mesothelioma.

2. If site is NOT indexed under "Mesothelioma or Kaposi's sarcoma" and site reported is NOT a common site of metastases - assign code for specified site NEC.

I (a) Metastatic mesothelioma of kidney C457

Code mesothelioma specified site NEC. Kidney is not a common site of metastases.

## Part A

## Neoplasms (C00-D48)

3. If site is NOT indexed under “Mesothelioma or Kaposi’s sarcoma” and site reported IS a common site of metastases - assign code for unspecified site and secondary code for common site.

I	(a)	Metastatic mesothelioma of	C459	C779
	(b)	lymph nodes		

Code the morphological type as the first entry followed by the code for the site not indexed under mesothelioma.

I	(a)	Metastatic Kaposi’s of brain	C469	C793
---	-----	------------------------------	------	------

Code the morphological type and code brain as secondary. Brain is on the list of common sites of metastases.

I	(a)	Kaposi’s sarcoma of brain	C467	
---	-----	---------------------------	------	--

This instruction does not apply since Kaposi’s sarcoma is not qualified as metastatic. Code Kaposi’s sarcoma, specified site, since not qualified as metastatic.

- (7) When morphological types of neoplasms classifiable to C40, C41, C43, C44, C45, C46, C47, C49, C70, C71, and C72 without mention of a site are jointly reported with the same morphological type of neoplasm with mention of a site, code the morphological type of unspecified site as indexed.

I	(a)	Metastatic rhabdomyosarcoma	C499	
	(b)	Rhabdomyosarcoma kidney	C64	

Code to unspecified site of rhabdomyosarcoma on I(a) and code rhabdomyosarcoma kidney as indexed.

h. More than one malignant neoplasm qualified as metastatic.

(1) If two or more sites with a morphology of C80, not on the list of common sites of metastases, are reported and all are qualified as “metastatic” code as follows:

(a) If the sites are in the same anatomical system code each site as primary. Use the list below to determine if the sites are in the same organ system.

C150-C269	Digestive system
C300-C399	Respiratory system
C400-C419	Bone and articular cartilage of limbs, other, and unspecified sites
C490-C499	Connective and soft tissue
C510-C579	Female genital organ
C600-C639	Male genital organ
C64-C689	Urinary organ
C690-C699	Eye and adnexa
C700-C729	Central nervous system
C73 -C759	Thyroid and other endocrine glands

I (a)	Metastatic stomach carcinoma	C169
(b)	Metastatic pancreas carcinoma	C259

Code both sites primary since they are a C80 morphological type, are in the same organ system, and neither is on the list of common sites of metastases.

(b) If the sites are in different anatomical systems, code each as secondary.

I (a)	Metastatic carcinoma of stomach	C788
(b)	Metastatic carcinoma of bladder	C791

Code secondary neoplasm of each site listed. Stomach and bladder are in two different anatomical systems.

(2) If two or more morphological types are qualified as metastatic, code to malignant neoplasms, each independent of the other.

I (a)	Metastatic adenocarcinoma of bowel	C260
(b)	Metastatic sarcoma of uterus	C55

Code to primary neoplasm of each site since adenocarcinoma and sarcoma are of different morphological types.

## Part A

## Neoplasms (C00-D48)

I (a) Metastatic cancer of pleura	C782
(b) Metastatic melanoma of back	C435

Code I(a) to secondary neoplasm of pleura since pleura is on the list of common sites of metastases. Code I(b) to melanoma of back (C435) from the site list under melanoma.

- (3) If a morphology implying site and an independent anatomical site are both qualified as metastatic, code to secondary malignant neoplasm of each site.

I (a) Metastatic colonic and renal cell carcinoma	C785 C790
---	-----------

Code both sites as secondary.

- (4) If more than one site with a morphology of C80 is mentioned code as follows:

- (a) If all but one site is qualified as metastatic and/or appear on the list of common sites of metastases, including lung, code to primary neoplasm of the site that is not qualified as metastatic or not on the list of common sites of metastases, irrespective of the order of entry or whether it is in Part I or Part II. Code all other sites as secondary.

I (a) Metastatic carcinoma of stomach	C788
(b) Carcinoma of gallbladder	C23
(c) Metastatic carcinoma of colon	C785

Code primary carcinoma of gallbladder since it is the only site not specified as metastatic. Assign a primary code on I(b) and secondary codes on I(a) and I(c).

I (a) Metastatic carcinoma of stomach	C788
(b) Metastatic carcinoma of lung	C780
II Carcinoma of colon	C189

Code I(a) and I(b) secondary and code primary carcinoma of colon in Part II since this is the only malignant neoplasm not qualified as metastatic, even though it is in Part II.

## Part A

## Neoplasms (C00-D48)

- |                                   |      |
|-----------------------------------|------|
| I (a) Cancer of kidney            | C64  |
| (b) Metastatic cancer of prostate | C798 |

Code I(a) primary cancer of kidney since the only other site on the record is qualified as metastatic. Code I(b) secondary cancer of prostate since it is qualified as metastatic.

- |                                  |      |
|----------------------------------|------|
| I (a) Metastatic cancer of ovary | C796 |
| II Cancer of colon               | C189 |

Code I(a) secondary and code part II primary. There are two sites reported and one is qualified as metastatic while the second site is not reported metastatic.

- (b) If all sites are qualified as metastatic and/or are on the list of common sites of metastases, including lung, code to secondary malignant neoplasm of all reported sites.

- |                                    |      |
|------------------------------------|------|
| I (a) Metastatic cancer of stomach | C788 |
| (b) Metastatic cancer of breast    | C798 |
| (c) Metastatic cancer of lung      | C780 |

Code secondary neoplasm of each site listed. All sites are reported as metastatic.

- |                                     |      |
|-------------------------------------|------|
| I (a) Metastatic carcinoma of ovary | C796 |
| (b) Carcinoma of lung               | C780 |
| (c) Metastatic pancreatic carcinoma | C788 |

Code to secondary malignant neoplasm of each site. Lung is on the list of common sites of metastases and ovary and pancreas are both reported as metastatic.

- |                                 |      |
|---------------------------------|------|
| I (a) Metastatic stomach cancer | C788 |
| (b) Lung cancer                 | C780 |

Code to secondary malignant neoplasm of each site. Lung is on the list of common sites of metastases and stomach cancer is reported as metastatic.

- |                            |      |
|----------------------------|------|
| I (a) Carcinoma of spine   | C795 |
| (b) Metastatic lung cancer | C780 |

Code to secondary malignant neoplasm of each site. Spine is on the list of common sites of metastases and lung is reported as metastatic.

## Part A

## Neoplasms (C00-D48)

I (a)	Metastatic carcinoma of abdomen	C798
(b)	Metastatic carcinoma of colon	C785

Code both sites as secondary since both are qualified as metastatic.

I (a)	Metastatic brain carcinoma	C793
(b)	Metastatic lung carcinoma	C780

Code both sites as secondary malignant neoplasm since both are qualified as metastatic.

- (5) When a metastatic malignant neoplasm is reported on a record with a malignant neoplasm of the same site whether stated as metastatic or not, code both primary.

I (a)	Metastatic gastric carcinoma	C169
(b)	Gastric carcinoma	C169

Code primary gastric carcinoma on I(a) and code primary gastric carcinoma on I(b).

- (6) If two or more sites with a morphology of C40, C41, C43, C44, C45, C46, C47, C49, C70, C71, and C72 are reported and all sites are qualified as metastatic, add an additional code to identify the morphological type of neoplasm. Code the morphological type of neoplasm to the unspecified site category, i.e., to "9." Enter this code on the same line with and preceding the code for the first mentioned secondary site.

I (a)	Metastatic leiomyosarcoma arm, stomach and brain	C499	C798	C788	C793
-------	---	------	------	------	------

Code leiomyosarcoma, the morphological type of neoplasm, to C499 and code the reported sites as secondary neoplasms since all three sites are qualified as metastatic.

I (a)	Metastatic sarcoma of stomach and small intestine	C499	C788	C784
-------	--	------	------	------

Code the sarcoma, the morphological type of neoplasm, to C499 and code the reported sites as secondary neoplasms.

I (a)	Metastatic squamous cell carcinoma of head and neck	C449	C798
-------	---	------	------

Since the reported sites are marked with a # sign in the Index, code the morphological type to malignant neoplasm of skin, C449, and code the reported sites as secondary neoplasms.

## SECTION IV

## Classification of Certain ICD Categories

### Part A

### Neoplasms (C00-D48)

- 
- |       |  |           |
|-------|--|-----------|
| I (a) | Metastatic squamous cell carcinoma of head | C449 C798 |
| (b)   | Metastatic squamous cell carcinoma of neck | C798      |

Since the reported sites are marked with a # sign in the Index, code the morphological type to malignant neoplasm of skin, C449, and code the reported sites as secondary neoplasms. Enter C449 for the morphological type as first code on I (a) preceding the first secondary site. Enter only the secondary code on line b.

#### 9. Primary site unknown

Consider the following terms as equivalent to “primary site unknown:”

- ? Origin (Questionable origin)
- ? Primary (Questionable primary)
- ? Site (Questionable site)
- ? Source (Questionable source)
- Undetermined origin
- Undetermined primary
- Undetermined site
- Undetermined source
- Unknown origin
- Unknown primary
- Unknown site
- Unknown source

- a. When the statement, “primary site unknown,” or its equivalent, appears anywhere on the certificate with a site specific neoplasm or a neoplasm classifiable to C81-C96, code the neoplasm as though the statement did not appear on the certificate.

- |       |                      |     |
|-------|----------------------|-----|
| I (a) | Renal cell carcinoma | C64 |
| (b)   | Primary site unknown |     |

Code renal cell carcinoma (C64) as though the statement “primary site unknown” was not on the certificate.

- |       |                        |      |
|-------|------------------------|------|
| I (a) | Reticulum cell sarcoma | C833 |
| II    | Undetermined source    |      |

Code reticulum cell sarcoma (C833) as though the statement “undetermined source” was not on the certificate.

## Part A

## Neoplasms (C00-D48)

- b. When primary site unknown or its equivalent appears on the certificate with a morphological type of neoplasm classifiable to C40, C41, C43, C44, C45, C46, C47, C49, C70, C71, and C72, add an additional code to identify the morphological type of neoplasm. Code the morphological type of neoplasm to the unspecified site category. This additional code should be entered on the same line with and preceding the code for the first mentioned secondary site.

- |   |                            |      |      |
|---|----------------------------|------|------|
| I | (a) Generalized metastases | C80  |      |
|   | (b) Melanoma of back       | C439 | C798 |
|   | (c) Primary site unknown   |      |      |

Code I(b) melanoma, unspecified site, followed by the code for the secondary site reported.

- c. When “primary site unknown,” or its equivalent, appears on the certificate with neoplasms classified to morphological type C80, (classifiable to C00-C76), code all reported sites as secondary and precede the first neoplasm code with C80.

- |   |                                  |     |      |
|---|----------------------------------|-----|------|
| I | (a) Secondary carcinoma of liver | C80 | C787 |
|   | (b) Primary site unknown         |     |      |

Code secondary liver carcinoma preceded with C80.

- |   |                          |     |      |
|---|--------------------------|-----|------|
| I | (a) Carcinoma of stomach | C80 | C788 |
|   | (b) Primary site unknown |     |      |

Code secondary stomach carcinoma preceded with C80.

- |   |                                       |     |      |
|---|---------------------------------------|-----|------|
| I | (a) Carcinoma of stomach              | C80 | C788 |
|   | (b) Primary site of carcinoma unknown | C80 |      |

Code I(a) secondary carcinoma of stomach preceded with C80. Code I(b) C80 for carcinoma since the term carcinoma is repeated.

- |   |                                    |     |      |      |      |
|---|------------------------------------|-----|------|------|------|
| I | (a) Cancer of intestines, stomach, | C80 | C785 | C788 | C798 |
|   | (b) and abdomen                    |     |      |      |      |
|   | (c) Unknown primary                |     |      |      |      |

Code all sites as secondary; precede the first code with C80.

10. Implication of malignancy

Mention on the certificate that a neoplasm has produced metastases (secondaries) means it must be coded as malignant, even though this neoplasm without mention of metastases would be classified to some other section of Chapter II.

Code neoplasms indexed to D00-D09 (in situ neoplasms), D10-D36 (benign neoplasms), or D37-D48 (neoplasms of uncertain or unknown behavior) to a primary malignant neoplasm category in C00-C76 if reported on the record with the following conditions:

## a. Metastases NOS and metastases of a site

I (a) Breast tumor with metastases C509 C80

Code I(a) to primary malignant neoplasm of breast and code metastases NOS. Code breast tumor as malignant neoplasm of breast since it is reported with metastases NOS.

I (a) Brain metastasis C793  
(b) Lung tumor C349

Code I(a) secondary neoplasm of brain and I(b) primary malignant neoplasm of lung since the lung tumor is reported with metastases of a site.

## b. Any neoplasm indexed to C77-C79 in Volume III

I (a) Lymph node cancer C779  
(b) Carcinoma in situ of breast C509

Code the carcinoma in situ of breast as primary malignant neoplasm of breast since it is reported with a neoplasm that is indexed to C779. Malignant neoplasm of lymph node is indexed to secondary neoplasm.

## c. A common site of metastases (excluding lung) qualified by the word "metastatic"

I (a) Metastatic liver cancer C787  
(b) Small intestine tumor C179

Code I(a) as secondary neoplasm of liver and code primary malignant neoplasm of small intestine on I(b), since the small intestine tumor is reported with a common site of metastases qualified by the word "metastatic."

d. If a, b, or c do not apply, code the neoplasm in D00-D09, D10-D36, D37-D48 as indexed.

11. Sites with prefixes or imprecise definitions

Neoplasms of sites prefixed by “peri,” “para,” “supra,” “infra,” etc. or described as in the “area” or “region” of a site, unless these terms are specifically indexed, should be coded as follows: for morphological types classifiable to one of the categories C40, C41, C43, C44, C45, C46, C47, C49, C70, C71, and C72, code to the appropriate subdivision of that category; otherwise, code to the appropriate subdivision of C76 (other and ill-defined sites).

I (a) Fibrosarcoma in the region of the leg C492

Code I(a) fibrosarcoma in the region of the leg to the appropriate subdivision of the category, malignant neoplasm of connective and soft tissue of lower limb.

I (a) Carcinoma in lung area C761

Since the morphological type of the term “carcinoma” is C80, code I(a), carcinoma in lung area, to the appropriate subdivision of C76 (other and ill-defined sites).

12. Malignant neoplasms described with “either/or”

Malignant neoplasms of more than one site described as “or” and both sites are classified to the same anatomical system, code the residual category for the system. If the sites are in different systems, and are in the same morphological category, code to the residual category for the morphological type.

I (a) Cancer of kidney or bladder C689

Code C689, malignant neoplasm of other and unspecified urinary organs.

I (a) Cancer of gallbladder or kidney C80

Code to C80, malignant neoplasm without specification of site since there is more than one site qualified by the statement “or” and the sites are in different systems.

I (a) Osteosarcoma of lumbar vertebrae C419  
(b) or sacrum

Code to malignant neoplasm of bone unspecified (C419). Both sites separated by the “or” are indexed to bone.

13. Mass or lesion with malignant neoplasms

When mass or lesion is reported with malignant neoplasms, code mass or lesion as indexed.

- |                    |     |
|--------------------|-----|
| I (a) Lung mass    | R91 |
| (b) Carcinomatosis | C80 |

Code mass as indexed. Do not consider as malignant mass.

- |                                 |      |
|---------------------------------|------|
| I (a) Metastatic lung carcinoma | C349 |
| II Lung lesion                  | J984 |

Code lung lesion as indexed.

B. Rheumatic heart diseases1. Heart diseases considered to be described as rheumatic

- a. When rheumatic fever (I00) or any heart disease that is specified as rheumatic is reported anywhere on the death certificate, consider conditions listed in categories I300-I319, I339, I340-I38, I400-I409, I429, and I514-I519 to be described as rheumatic unless there is indication they were due to a nonrheumatic cause.

I	(a) Myocarditis	I090
	(b) Rheumatic heart disease	I099

Consider “myocarditis” to be described as “rheumatic” since reported with a heart disease specified as rheumatic.

I	(a) Cardiac tamponade	I092
	(b) Rheumatic endocarditis	I091
	(c)	

Consider “cardiac tamponade” to be described as “rheumatic” since reported with a heart disease specified as rheumatic.

- b. When rheumatic fever and a heart disease are jointly reported, enter a separate code for the rheumatic fever only when it is not used to qualify a heart disease as rheumatic. This applies whether or not the heart disease is stated or classified as rheumatic.

I	(a) Heart disease	I099
	(b) Rheumatic fever	

Consider “heart disease” to be described as “rheumatic.” Do not enter a separate code for rheumatic fever since it is used to qualify the heart disease as rheumatic.

I	(a) Rheumatic heart disease	I099
	(b) Rheumatic fever	

Code “rheumatic heart disease” as indexed. Do not enter a separate code for rheumatic fever since the heart disease is qualified as rheumatic.

I	(a) Cardiac arrest	I469
	(b) Rheumatic fever	I00

Cardiac arrest is not one of the conditions considered to be described as rheumatic when reported with rheumatic fever. Code each condition as indexed.

## Part B

## Rheumatic Heart Diseases

- c. When a condition listed in category I50.- is indicated to be due to rheumatic fever and there is no mention of another heart disease that is classifiable as rheumatic, consider the condition in I50.- to be described as rheumatic.

I (a)	Heart failure	I099
	(b) Rheumatic fever	

Since there is no other heart disease classified as rheumatic, use the rheumatic fever to qualify the heart disease on I(a) as rheumatic.

I (a)	Heart failure	I509
	(b) Rheumatic heart disease	I099

Since there is a heart disease qualified as rheumatic reported on the record, code heart failure, I509.

2. Distinguishing between active and chronic rheumatic heart disease

Rheumatic heart diseases are classifiable to I010-I019, Rheumatic fever with heart involvement, or to I050-I099, Chronic rheumatic heart diseases, depending upon whether the rheumatic process was active or inactive at the time of death.

- a. When rheumatic fever or any rheumatic heart disease is stated to be active, recurrent, or recrudescant, code all rheumatic heart diseases as active. Conversely, code all rheumatic heart diseases as inactive if rheumatic fever or any rheumatic heart disease is stated to be inactive.

I (a)	Endocarditis	I011
	(b) Active rheumatic fever	

Code I(a), active rheumatic endocarditis since the rheumatic fever is stated as active. Leave I(b) blank.

I (a)	Heart failure	I509
	(b) Inactive rheumatic heart disease	I099
	(c)	

Code I(a) as indexed since another heart disease classified as rheumatic is reported. Code I(b) as indexed since stated as inactive.

## Part B

## Rheumatic Heart Diseases

b. When there is no statement of active, recurrent, recrudescing, or inactive, code all heart diseases that are stated to be rheumatic or that are considered to be described as rheumatic as active if any of the following instructions apply:

(1) The interval between onset of rheumatic fever and death was less than one year.

I (a) Endocarditis - 6 months	I011
(b) Rheumatic fever - 9 months	

(2) One or more of these heart diseases (listed in Section IV, Part B, 1, a) is stated to be acute or subacute.

**NOTE:** This does not mean rheumatic fever stated to be acute or subacute.

I (a) Acute myocarditis	I012
(b) Rheumatic heart disease	I019

I (a) Rheumatic heart disease	I099
(b) Acute rheumatic fever	

(3) One of these heart diseases is pericarditis.

I (a) Pericarditis	I010
(b) Rheumatic heart disease	I019

(4) At least one of these heart diseases is “carditis,” “endocarditis” (any valve), “heart disease,” “myocarditis,” or “pancarditis” with a stated duration of less than one year.

I (a) Endocarditis - 9 months	I011
(b) Rheumatic heart disease	I019

(5) At least one of these heart diseases is “carditis,” “endocarditis” (any valve), “heart disease,” “myocarditis,” or “pancarditis” without a duration and the age of the decedent was less than 15 years.

Age: 10 years

I (a) Rheumatic heart disease	I019
(b) Rheumatic fever	

## Part B

## Rheumatic Heart Diseases

- c. In the absence of the previous mentioned indications of an active rheumatic process, consider all heart diseases that are stated to be rheumatic or that are considered to be described as rheumatic as inactive and code to categories I050-I099.

Age: 75 years

- |                               |      |
|-------------------------------|------|
| I (a) Rheumatic heart disease | I099 |
| (b) Rheumatic fever           |      |

Code I(a) as indexed, there is no indication the rheumatic process was active. Leave line I(b) blank.

3. Valvular diseases jointly reported

- a. When diseases of the mitral, aortic, and tricuspid valves, not qualified as rheumatic, are jointly reported, whether on the same line or on separate lines, code the disease of all valves as rheumatic unless there is indication to the contrary.

- |  |           |
|--|-----------|
| I (a) Mitral insufficiency and aortic stenosis | I051 I060 |
| (b)  |           |

Code both valvular diseases as rheumatic since there is no indication to the contrary.

- |                              |           |
|------------------------------|-----------|
| I (a) Aortic insufficiency   | I061      |
| (b) Mitral endocarditis with | I059 I051 |
| (c) mitral insufficiency     |           |

Code the diseases of both valves as rheumatic since there is no indication to the contrary.

- |                                |                |
|--------------------------------|----------------|
| I (a) Mitral endocarditis      | I059 I051 I050 |
| (b) insufficiency and stenosis |                |
| (c) Aortic endocarditis        | I069           |

Code the diseases of both valves as rheumatic since there is no indication to the contrary.

- |                            |               |
|----------------------------|---------------|
| I (a) Mitral valve disease | I059 I051 I48 |
| (b) with insufficiency and |               |
| (c) atrial fibrillation    |               |
| II Aortic stenosis         | I060          |

Code the diseases of both valves as rheumatic since there is no indication to the contrary.



## Part B

## Rheumatic Heart Diseases

- a. When valvular heart disease (I050-I079, I089 and I090) not stated to be rheumatic is reported due to:

A1690	C73-C759	E804-E806	J030
A188	C790-C791	E840-E859	J040-J042
A329	C797-C798	E880-E889	J069
A38	C889	F110-F169	M100-M109
A399	D300-D301	F180-F199	M300-M359
A500-A549	D309	I10-I139	N000-N289
B200-B24	D34-D359	I250-I259	N340-N399
B376	D440-D45	I330-I38	Q200-Q289
B379	E02-E0390	I420-I4290	Q870-Q999
B560-B575	E050-E349	I511	R75
B908	E65-E678	I514-I5150	T983
B909	E760-E769	I700-I710	Y400-Y599
B948	E790-E799	J00	Y883
C64-C65	E802	J020	

**Code** nonrheumatic valvular disease (I340-I38) with appropriate fourth character.

I (a) Mitral stenosis and aortic stenosis	I342	I350
(b) Hypertension	I10	

Code I(a) as separate one-term entities to nonrheumatic mitral and aortic stenosis since they are reported “due to” a nonrheumatic condition.

I (a) Mitral insufficiency	I340	
(b) Goodpasture’s syndrome & RHD	M310	I099

Code I(a) to nonrheumatic mitral insufficiency since it is reported “due to” a nonrheumatic condition. Apply this instruction even though rheumatic heart disease is entered as the second entry on I(b).

## Part B

## Rheumatic Heart Diseases

- b. Consider diseases of the aortic, mitral, and tricuspid valves to be nonrheumatic if they are reported on the same line due to a nonrheumatic cause in the previous list. Similarly, consider diseases of these three valves to be nonrheumatic if any of them are reported due to the other and that one, in turn, is reported due to a nonrheumatic cause in the previous list.

I (a) Mitral disease	I349
(b) Aortic stenosis	I350
(c) Arteriosclerosis	I709

Classify both valvular diseases as nonrheumatic. The mitral disease is reported due to the aortic disease which is, in turn, reported due to a nonrheumatic cause.

I (a) Congestive heart failure	I500
(b) Mitral stenosis	I342
(c) Arteriosclerosis	I709

Code the mitral stenosis as nonrheumatic since the certifier indicated it was due to a nonrheumatic cause.

I (a) Aortic and mitral insufficiency	I351 I340
(b) Subacute bacterial endocarditis	I330

Code the valvular diseases as nonrheumatic since they are reported due to a nonrheumatic cause.

## SECTION IV

## Classification of Certain ICD Categories

### Part C

### Pregnancy, Childbirth, and the Puerperium (O00-O99)

---

#### C. Pregnancy, childbirth, and the puerperium (O00-O99)

##### 1. General information

Conditions classifiable to categories O00-O99 are limited to deaths of females of childbearing age. Some of the maternal conditions are also the cause of death in newborn infants. Always refer to the age and sex of the decedent before coding a condition to O00-O99.

Obstetric deaths are classified according to time elapsed between the obstetric event and the death of the woman:

- O95 Obstetric death of unspecified cause
- O96 Death from any obstetric cause occurring more than 42 days but less than one year after delivery
- O97 Death from sequela of direct obstetric causes (death occurring one year or more after delivery)

The standard certificate of death contains a separate item regarding pregnancy. Any positive response to one of the following items should be taken into consideration when coding pregnancy related deaths:

- Pregnant at time of death
- Not pregnant, but pregnant within 42 days of death
- Not pregnant, but pregnant 43 days to 1 year before death

If the third option from the previous list is marked and the decedent is greater than 54 years old, code as pregnancy record only when there is a condition reported which indicates the person was pregnant either at the time of death or pregnant 43 days to 1 year before death.

Consider the pregnancy to have terminated 42 days or less prior to death unless a specific length of time is written in by the certifier. Take into consideration the length of time elapsed between pregnancy and death if reported as more than 42 days.

Maternal deaths are subdivided into two groups:

Direct obstetric deaths (O00-O97): those resulting from obstetric complications of the pregnant state (pregnancy, labor and puerperium), from interventions, omissions, incorrect treatment, or from a chain of events resulting from any of the above.

Indirect obstetric deaths (O98-O99): those resulting from previous existing disease or disease that developed during pregnancy and which was not due to direct obstetric causes, but which was aggravated by physiologic effects of pregnancy.

**SECTION IV**

**Classification of Certain ICD Categories**

**Part C**

**Pregnancy, Childbirth, and the Puerperium (O00-O99)**

When coding pregnancies, code any direct obstetric cause to O00-O97 and any indirect obstetric cause to O98-O99.

2. Pregnancy or childbirth without mention of complication

- a. Do not assign a separate code for “pregnancy” or “delivery” if any other condition is reported other than HIV infection (B200-B24) and/or nature of injuries and external causes (S000-Y899).

Female, 39 years

<u>Place</u>	I (a)	Asphyxia by hanging	T71	&X70
		(b)		
<u>MOD</u>	II	1st trimester pregnancy	O95	
S		Suicide		

Code I(a) to nature of injury and external cause. Code pregnancy in Part II to Pregnancy, death from (O95) since the only other reported condition is classified to a nature of injury and external cause.

- b. When pregnancy or delivery is the only entry on the certificate, apply the following instructions:

- (1) Code to category O95 if death occurred 42 days or less after termination of pregnancy or when there is no indication of when the pregnancy terminated.

Female, 28 years

I (a)	Pregnancy	O95
-------	-----------	-----

Code “pregnancy” to Pregnancy, death from (O95) since it is the only entry on the certificate.

- (2) Code to category O96 if death resulted from direct or indirect obstetric causes that occurred more than 42 days but less than one year after termination of the pregnancy.

Female, 28 years

I (a)	Childbirth	3 months	O96
-------	------------	----------	-----

Code childbirth to death from any obstetric cause occurring more than 42 days but less than one year after delivery.

**SECTION IV**

**Classification of Certain ICD Categories**

**Part C**

**Pregnancy, Childbirth, and the Puerperium (O00-O99)**

---

- (3) Code to category O97 if death occurred 1 year or more after termination of pregnancy.

Female, 28 years  
I (a) Pregnancy      1 year      O97

Code to death from sequela of a direct obstetric cause.

3. Pregnancy with abortive outcome (O000-O089)

- a. Code all complications of conditions listed in categories O000-O029 to the appropriate subcategory of O08 and also code O000-O029 as indexed. To determine the appropriate subcategory for O08, refer to the Index under Abortion, complicated by and select appropriate fourth character from last column.

Female, 28 years  
I (a) Septicemia      O080  
    (b) Tubal pregnancy      O001

Code I(a) Abortion, complicated by, septicemia (O080) and I(b) Pregnancy, tubal (O001).

Female, 20 years  
I (a) Shock      O083  
    (b) Ectopic pregnancy      O009

Code I(a) Abortion, complicated by, shock (O083) and I(b) Ectopic, pregnancy (O009).

- b. Code all complications of conditions listed in categories O03-O07 to the appropriate subcategory of O08 and also code O03-O07 with fourth character “9.” To determine the appropriate subcategory for O08, refer to the Index under Abortion, complicated by and select appropriate fourth character from last column.

Female, 22 years  
I (a) Pulmonary embolism      O082  
    (b) Spontaneous abortion      O039

Code I(a) Abortion, complicated by, pulmonary embolism (O082) and I(b) Abortion, spontaneous (O039).

## Part C

## Pregnancy, Childbirth, and the Puerperium (O00-O99)

c. When conditions in categories O00-O07 are reported in Part I or Part II of the death certificate with:

- (1) a direct obstetric complication classifiable to category O08, code the complication to category O08 with the appropriate fourth character. Also code O00-O02 as indexed or O03-O07 with fourth character "9."

Female, 31 years

I (a) Cardiac arrest	O088
(b) Abortion	O069

Code I(a) Abortion, complicated by, cardiac arrest, a direct obstetric complication and I(b) Abortion NOS.

- (2) an indirect obstetric complication classifiable to categories O98-O99, code the O98-O99. Also code the O00-O02 as indexed or O03-O07 with fourth character "9."

Female, 25 years

I (a) Abortion	O069
II Rheumatic heart disease	O994

Code I(a) Abortion NOS (O069). Code Pregnancy, complicated by rheumatic heart disease (O994), an indirect obstetric cause.

- (3) both a direct and an indirect obstetric complication, code the direct complications to O08 with the appropriate fourth character and the indirect complications to O98-O99. Also code the O00-O02 as indexed or O03-O07 with fourth character "9."

Female, 33 years

I (a) Renal failure	O084
(b) Abortion	O069
II Anemia	O990

Code I(a) Abortion, complicated by, renal failure. Direct complications of abortions are classified to category O08 with the appropriate fourth character. Code I(b) Abortion NOS. Code Part II Pregnancy, complicated by, anemia, an indirect obstetric complication.

## SECTION IV

## Classification of Certain ICD Categories

### Part C

### Pregnancy, Childbirth, and the Puerperium (O00-O99)

---

#### 4. Other complications of pregnancy, childbirth and puerperium (O00-O99)

- a. If death occurred more than 42 days but less than 1 year after termination of pregnancy, code all direct and indirect obstetric complications to O96.

Female, 28 years  
I (a) Cardiomyopathy O96  
(b) Childbirth 3 months

Code cardiomyopathy as a direct obstetric cause occurring more than 42 days but less than 1 year after childbirth.

Female, 28 years  
I (a) Intracerebral hemorrhage O96  
(b) Childbirth 3 months

Code intracerebral hemorrhage as an indirect obstetric cause occurring more than 42 days but less than 1 year after childbirth.

- b. If death occurred 1 year or more after termination of pregnancy, code any direct obstetric cause to category O97. If only indirect obstetric causes are reported, code all reported conditions as though the maternal condition had not been reported unless the maternal condition modifies the coding. In the latter case, take the maternal condition into account when assigning the code for the other reported condition, but **do not** code O00-O99.

Female, 28 years  
I (a) Cardiomyopathy O97  
(b) Childbirth 1 year

Code to O97, Death from sequela of direct obstetric causes. Cardiomyopathy is a direct obstetric cause. **Do not** enter a code on I(b) for childbirth.

Female, 28 years  
I (a) Intracerebral hemorrhage I619  
(b) Childbirth 1 year

Code to I619, the appropriate category outside Chapter XV. Intracerebral hemorrhage is an indirect obstetric cause. **Do not** enter a code on I(b) for childbirth.

## SECTION IV

## Classification of Certain ICD Categories

### Part C

### Pregnancy, Childbirth, and the Puerperium (O00-O99)

---

- c. Code all complications of pregnancy, childbirth, and the puerperium to categories O00-O75, O85-O92, O96-O99. When delivery is mentioned on the certificate, consider complications to be of delivery unless otherwise specified.
- (1) When both direct and indirect obstetric causes are reported on the same certificate code as indexed to appropriate code in Chapter XV.
  - (2) When a complication is reported and not indexed to a direct or indirect obstetric code, assign the complication to O98-O99 with the appropriate fourth character. Refer to Volume I for correct code assignment.

Female, 35 years

I (a) Thrombosis	1 hr	O229
(b) Pregnancy	8 mos	
II Obesity		O992

Code I(a) to Pregnancy, complicated by, thrombosis. Do not enter a code on I(b) for pregnancy. Code Part II to Pregnancy, complicated by, endocrine diseases NEC as indexed. Obesity is an endocrine disorder.

Female, 29 years

I (a) Acute anemia		O990
(b) Massive postpartum hemorrhage		O721
(c) Delivered liveborn		

Code I(a) to Anemia, complicating pregnancy, childbirth or the puerperium, an indirect obstetric cause. Code I(b) to Hemorrhage, postpartum, a direct obstetric cause. **Do not** enter a code on I(c) for delivery NOS.

Female, 21 years

I (a) Gram negative sepsis		O988
(b) Congenital anomalies of ureters		O998
II 30 weeks pregnant		

Code I(a) to Pregnancy, complicated by, septicemia, an indirect obstetric cause. Code I(b) to Pregnancy, complicated by, congenital malformation, an indirect obstetric cause. **Do not** enter a code in Part II for pregnancy.

**SECTION IV**

**Classification of Certain ICD Categories**

**Part C**

**Pregnancy, Childbirth, and the Puerperium (O00-O99)**

---

Female, 28 years

- I (a) Aspiration pneumonia O995
- (b) Delivery
- II Rubella in first trimester O985

Code the indirect causes, aspiration pneumonia and rubella to the appropriate code in Chapter XV. Do not enter a code for delivery on I(b).

5. Delivery reported with anesthetic death or anesthesia

- a. When delivery (normal) NOS is reported with anesthetic death, code O748 only. When reported with anesthesia, code O749 only.

Female, 29 years

- I (a) Anesthetic death O748
- (b) Delivery

Code I(a) to O748, other complications of anesthesia during labor and delivery. Do not enter code on I(b) for delivery.

- b. When anesthetic death is reported with a complication(s) of delivery or puerperium, code O748 and the code(s) for complication(s) of pregnancy, delivery, or puerperium.

Female, 26 years

- I (a) Anesthetic death O748
- (b) Obstructed labor O669

Code Delivery, complicated by, anesthetic death on I(a). Code I(b) as indexed.

- c. When anesthesia is reported with a complication(s) of delivery or puerperium, code O749 and the code(s) for complication(s) of pregnancy, delivery, or the puerperium.

Female, 28 years

- I (a) Prolonged labor O639
- (b) Anesthesia - delivery O749

Code prolonged labor as a complication of delivery. Code “anesthesia-delivery” to O749.

**SECTION IV****Classification of Certain ICD Categories****Part C****Pregnancy, Childbirth, and the Puerperium (O00-O99)**

Female, 34 years

I (a) Cardiac arrest	O742
(b) Anesthesia	O749
(c) Obstructive labor	O669

Code I(a) cardiac arrest as a complication of anesthesia. Code the anesthesia on I(b) to O749. Code I(c) as indexed.

6. Operative delivery

- a. Code an operative delivery such as cesarean section or hysterectomy to O759.
- b. Code reported complications of the operative delivery to complications of obstetric surgery (O754).
- c. Code conditions reported due to complications of operative delivery as indexed under complication of delivery and/or the puerperium.

Female, 18 years

I (a) Cardiac arrest	O742
(b) Anesthesia during C-section	O749
(c) Premature separation of placenta	O759
(d)	O459

Code I(a) cardiac arrest as a complication of anesthesia. Code O749 for the anesthesia. There is no complication of the C-section; therefore, code the C-section to O759. Code premature separation of placenta as indexed on line I(d).

Female, 27 years

I (a) Pulmonary embolism	O882
(b) Pelvic thrombosis	O754
(c) C-section delivery	O759

Code I(a) Puerperal, embolism (pulmonary). Code I(b) as a complication of the operative delivery. Code I(c) Delivery, cesarean, as indexed.

Female, 39 years

I (a) Pneumonia	O995
(b) Peritoneal hemorrhage	O754
(c) Cesarean section delivery	O759

Code I(a) O995, an indirect obstetric cause. Pneumonia is reported due to the complication and coded as complicating delivery. Code I(b) as a complication of the operative delivery. Code I(c) Delivery, cesarean, as indexed.

**SECTION IV**

**Classification of Certain ICD Categories**

**Part C**

**Pregnancy, Childbirth, and the Puerperium (O00-O99)**

---

Female, 30 years

I (a) Pneumonia	24 hr	O995
(b) Pulmonary embolism	3 days	O754
II		O759

Operation Block: C-section

Code I(a) an indirect obstetric cause. Code I(b) as a complication of the operative delivery reported in Part II. Code Part II cesarean section as indexed.

Female, 28 years

I (a) Pneumonia	O754
(b) C-section	O759
II	O759 O321

Operation Block: C-section for breech presentation

Code I(a) as a complication of the operative delivery. Code cesarean section on I(b) as indexed. Code cesarean section and breech presentation as indexed in Part II.

D. Congenital conditions

1. The Classification does not provide congenital and acquired codes for all conditions. When no provision is made for a distinction, disregard the statement of congenital or acquired and code the NOS code.

Female, 45 years

I (a) Patent ductus arteriosus - acquired	Q250
(b) Pneumonia	J189

Code I(a) to Q250 since patent ductus arteriosus does not have an acquired code.

Male, 33 years

I (a) Gastric hemorrhage	K922
(b) Gastric ulcer - congenital	K259

Code I(b) to K259 since gastric ulcer does not have a congenital code.

2. When a condition specified as “congenital” is reported “due to” another condition not specified as congenital, code both conditions as congenital.

Male, 2 months

I (a) Peritonitis – birth	P781
(b) Intestinal obstruction	Q419

Code the condition on I(b) as congenital.

3. Code hydrocephalus (G91.0, 1, 2, 8, 9) (any age) to Q039 (congenital hydrocephalus) when it is reported with another cerebral or other central nervous system condition (Q00-Q07, Q280-Q283) which is classified as congenital.

Male, 3 months

I (a) Cerebral anoxia	G931
(b) Hydrocephalus & hypoplasia	Q039 Q061
(c) of spinal cord	

Code hydrocephalus NOS to Q039 since the hypoplasia of spinal cord is classified as congenital.

## SECTION IV

## Classification of Certain ICD Categories

### Part D

### Congenital Conditions

---

Male, 3 months

I (a) Cerebral anoxia

G931

(b) Hydrocephalus

Q039

II Meningomyelocele

Q059

Code the hydrocephalus NOS to Q039 since the meningomyelocele is classified as congenital.

## Part E

## Conditions of Early Infancy (P000-P969)

E. Conditions of early infancy (P000-P969)

1. When reported on certificate of infant, code the following entries as indicated:

Birth weight of:	2 pounds (999 gms) or under .....	P070
	Over 2 pounds (1000 gms) but not more than	
	5 ½ pounds (2499 gms).....	P071
	10 pounds (4500 gms) or more .....	P080

Gestation of:	Less than 28 weeks .....	P072
	28 weeks but less than 37 weeks.....	P073
	42 or more completed weeks .....	P082

Premature labor or delivery NOS.....P073

Female, 3 hours

I (a) Respiratory distress syndrome	P220
(b) Prematurity	P073
II 26 weeks gestation	P072

Code Gestation, less than 28 weeks to P072.

Male, 8 hours

I (a) Respiratory failure	P285
(b) Prematurity, 23 weeks	P073 P072

Code I(b) as two separate conditions. Code prematurity as indexed P073 and code P072 for “23 weeks.” The 23 weeks is an implied length of gestation.

2. When a multiple birth or low birth weight is reported on an infant’s death certificate outside of Part I or Part II, code this entity as the last entry in Part II.

Male, 29 minutes - Twin A

I (a) Immature	P073
(b) Weight 1,500 grams - twin	P071 P015
II Atelectasis	P281 P015

Code “twin” as the last entry in Part II.

**SECTION IV**

**Classification of Certain ICD Categories**

**Part E**

**Conditions of Early Infancy (P000-P969)**

---

Male, 5 minutes  
4 lbs. I (a) Immaturity of lung P280  
(b)  
(c)  
II P071

Code P071 for “4 lbs.” as last entry in Part II.

3. When “termination of pregnancy” or “abortion” (legal) other than criminal is the only reported cause of an infant death, code P964. Do not code P964 if any other codable entry is reported.

Female, 3 minutes  
I (a) Legal abortion P964

Since “legal abortion” is the only entry on the certificate, code P964, as indexed.

4. When a condition classifiable to P703-P720, P722-P749 is the only cause(s) reported on a newborn’s death, code P969. If reported with other perinatal conditions, code as indexed.

Male, 7 days  
(a) Hypomagnesemia P969  
(b)  
(c)

Code the hypomagnesemia to P969, even though it is indexed to P712 since it is the only cause of death reported.

Female, 2 weeks  
(a) Hypoglycemia P704  
(b) Maternal diabetes P701

Code I(a) as indexed since reported with another perinatal condition.

F. Sequela

A sequela is a late effect, an after effect, or a residual of a disease, nature of injury or external cause. ICD-10 provides sequela codes for the following conditions:

B900-B909	Sequela of tuberculosis
B91	Sequela of acute poliomyelitis
B92	Sequela of leprosy
B940-B949	Sequela of other and unspecified infectious and parasitic diseases
E640-E649	Sequela of malnutrition and other nutritional deficiencies
E68	Sequela of hyperalimentation
G09	Sequela of inflammatory diseases of central nervous system
I690-I698	Sequela of cerebrovascular disease
O97	Death from sequela of direct obstetric causes
T900-T983*	Sequela of injuries, of poisoning, and of other consequences of external causes
Y850-Y859*	Sequela of transport accidents
Y86*	Sequela of other accidents
Y870-Y872*	Sequela of intentional self-harm, assault and events of undetermined intent
Y880-Y883*	Sequela with surgical and medical care as external cause
Y890-Y899*	Sequela of other external causes

\* See **Section V, Part S** for instructions for coding sequela of injuries and external causes.

**NOTE:** When conditions in categories A000-A310, A318-A427, A429-A599, A601-A70, A748-B001, B003-B004, B007, B009-B069, B080, B082-B085, B09-B199, B25-B279, B330-B349, B370-B49, B58- B64, B99 are mentioned on the record with HIV (B20-B24, R75), do not consider the infectious or parasitic condition as a sequela.

When there is evidence death resulted from residual effects rather than the active phase of conditions for which the Classification provides a sequela code, code the appropriate sequela category. Code specified residual effects separately. Apply the following instructions to the sequela categories.

1. B900-B909 Sequela of tuberculosis

Use these subcategories for the classification of tuberculosis (conditions in A162-A199) if:

a. A statement of a late effect or sequela of the tuberculosis is reported.

I (a) Pulmonary fibrosis	J841
(b) Sequela of pulmonary tuberculosis	B909

Code sequela of pulmonary tuberculosis (B909) since “sequela of” is stated.

b. The tuberculosis is stated to be ancient, arrested, cured, healed, history of, inactive, old, quiescent, or remote, whether or not the residual (late) effect is specified, unless there is evidence of active tuberculosis.

I (a) Arrested pulmonary tuberculosis	B909
---------------------------------------	------

Code arrested pulmonary tuberculosis, B909, since there is no evidence of active tuberculosis.

c. When there is evidence of active tuberculosis of a site with inactive (ancient, arrested, cured, healed, history of, old, quiescent, remote) tuberculosis of a **different** site, code both.

d. When there is evidence of active and inactive (ancient, arrested, cured, healed, history of, old, quiescent, remote) tuberculosis of the **same** site, code active tuberculosis of the site only.

**NOTE:** Do not use duration to code sequela of tuberculosis.

I (a) Respiratory failure	J969
(b) Pneumonia	J189
(c) Pulmonary tuberculosis 2 years	A162

Code pulmonary tuberculosis as active. Do not use duration of the tuberculosis to indicate sequela.

2. B91 Sequela of acute poliomyelitis

Use this category for the classification of poliomyelitis (conditions in A800-A809) if:

a. A statement of a late effect or sequela of acute poliomyelitis is reported.

I (a) Sequela of acute poliomyelitis                      B91

Code sequela of acute poliomyelitis as indexed.

b. A chronic condition or a condition with a duration of one year or more that was due to the acute poliomyelitis is reported.

I (a) Paralysis - 1 year                                      G839

(b) Acute poliomyelitis                                      B91

Code sequela of acute poliomyelitis, since the paralysis has a duration of 1 year.

c. The poliomyelitis is stated to be history of, old, or the interval between onset of the poliomyelitis and death is indicated to be one year or more whether or not the residual (late) effect is specified.

I (a) Old polio    B91

Code old polio.

d. The poliomyelitis is not stated to be acute or active and the interval between the onset of the poliomyelitis and death is not reported.

I (a) Poliomyelitis    B91

(b)

(c)

I (a) ASHD    I251

(b)

(c)

II Poliomyelitis    B91

## Part F

## Sequela

I (a) Paralysis	G839
(b) Polio	B91
(c)	

I (a) Poliomyelitis with	B91 G839
(b) paralysis	
(c)	

3. B92 Sequela of leprosy

Use this category for the classification of leprosy (conditions in A30) if:

- a. A statement of a late effect or sequela of the leprosy is reported.
- b. A chronic condition or a condition with a duration of one year or more that was due to leprosy is reported.

4. B940 Sequela of trachoma

Use this subcategory for the classification of trachoma (conditions in A710-A719) if:

- a. A statement of a late effect or sequela of the trachoma is reported.

I (a) Late effects of trachoma	B940
--------------------------------	------

- b. The trachoma is stated to be healed or inactive, whether or not the residual (late) effect is specified.

I (a) Healed trachoma	B940
-----------------------	------

- c. A chronic condition such as blindness, cicatricial entropion or conjunctival scar that was due to the trachoma is reported unless there is evidence of active infection.

I (a) Conjunctival scar	H112
(b) Trachoma	B940

5. B941 Sequela of viral encephalitis

Use this subcategory for the classification of viral encephalitis (conditions in A830-A839, A840-A849, A850-A858, A86) if:

a. A statement of a late effect or sequela of the viral encephalitis is reported.

I (a) Late effects of viral encephalitis                      B941

Code sequela of viral encephalitis as indexed.

b. A chronic condition or a condition with a duration of one year or more that was due to the viral encephalitis is reported.

I (a) Chronic brain syndrome                                      F069

(b) Viral encephalitis    B941

Code sequela of viral encephalitis, since a resultant chronic condition is reported.

c. The viral encephalitis is stated to be ancient, history of, old, remote, or the interval between onset of the viral encephalitis and death is indicated to be one year or more whether or not the residual (late) effect is specified.

I (a) St. Louis encephalitis              1 yr                      B941

Code sequela of viral encephalitis, since a duration of 1 year is reported.

I (a) Old viral encephalitis    B941

Code sequela of viral encephalitis, since it is stated "old."

d. Brain damage, cerebral fungus, CNS damage, epilepsy, hydrocephalus, mental retardation, paralysis (G810-G839) is reported due to the viral encephalitis.

I (a) Paralysis    G839

(b) Viral encephalitis    B941

Code sequela of viral encephalitis since paralysis is reported due to the viral encephalitis.

6. B942 Sequela of viral hepatitis

Use this subcategory for the classification of viral hepatitis (conditions in B150-B199) if:

A statement of a late effect or sequela of the viral hepatitis is reported.

7. B948 Sequela of other specified infectious and parasitic diseases  
B949 Sequela of unspecified infectious and parasitic diseases

Use B948 for the classification of other specified infectious and parasitic diseases (conditions in A000-A099, A200-A289, A310-A70, A740-A799, A811-A829, A870-B09, B250-B89) and

Use B949 for the classification of only the terms “infectious disease NOS” and “parasitic disease NOS” if:

- a. A statement of a late effect or sequela of the infectious or parasitic disease is reported.
- b. The infectious or parasitic disease is stated to be ancient, arrested, cured, healed, history of, inactive, old, quiescent, or remote, whether or not the residual (late) effect is specified, unless there is evidence of activity of the disease.
- c. A chronic condition or a condition with a duration of one year or more that was due to the infectious or parasitic disease is reported.

I	(a) Reye’s syndrome	1 yr	G937
	(b) Chickenpox		B948
I	(a) Chronic brain syndrome		F069
	(b) Meningococcal encephalitis		B948

- d. There is indication the interval between onset of the infectious or parasitic disease and death was one year or more, whether or not the residual (late) effect is specified.

8. E640-E649 Sequela of malnutrition and other nutritional deficiencies

Use Sequela Code	For Categories
E640	E40-E46
E641	E500-E509
E642	E54
E643	E550-E559
E648	E51-E53      E610-E638 E56-E60
E649	E639

Use these subcategories for the classification of malnutrition and other nutritional deficiencies (conditions in E40-E639) if:

- a. A statement of a late effect or sequela of malnutrition and other nutritional deficiencies (E40-E639) is reported.

I	(a) Cardiac arrest	I469
	(b) Sequela of malnutrition	E640

- b. A condition with a duration of one year or more is qualified as rachitic or that was due to rickets (E55.-) is reported.

I	(a) Scoliosis	3 years	M419
	(b) Rickets		E643

9. E68 Sequela of hyperalimentation

Use this category for the classification of hyperalimentation (conditions in E67 and hyperalimentation NOS in R632) if:

- a. A statement of a late effect or sequela of the hyperalimentation is reported.
- b. A condition with a duration of one year or more that was due to hyperalimentation is reported.

10. G09 Sequela of inflammatory diseases of central nervous system

Use this category for the classification of intracranial abscess or pyogenic infection (conditions in G000-G009, G030-G049, G060-G069, G08) if:

- a. A statement of a late effect or sequela of the condition in G000-G009, G030-G049, G060-G069, G08 is reported.
- b. A condition with a duration of one year or more that was due to the condition in G000-G009, G030-G049, G060-G069, G08 is reported.
- c. The condition in G000-G009, G030-G049, G060-G069, G08 is stated to be ancient, history of, old, remote, or the interval between onset of this condition and death is indicated to be one year or more, whether or not the residual (late) effect is specified.
- d. Brain damage, cerebral fungus, CNS damage, epilepsy, hydrocephalus, mental retardation, paralysis (G810-G839) is reported due to a condition in G000-G009, G030-G049, G060-G069, G08.

- |   |                   |      |
|---|-------------------|------|
| I | (a) Hydrocephalus | G919 |
|   | (b) Meningitis    | G09  |

11. I690-I698 Sequela of cerebrovascular disease

Use this category for the classification of cerebrovascular disease (conditions in I600-I64, I670-I671, I674-I679) if:

- a. A statement of a late effect or sequela of a cerebrovascular disease is reported.

I (a) Sequela of cerebral infarction I693

Code sequela of cerebral infarction as indexed.

- b. A condition with a duration of one year or more that was due to one of these cerebrovascular diseases is reported.

I (a) Hemiplegia 1 year G819  
(b) Intracranial hemorrhage I692

Code sequela of other nontraumatic intracranial hemorrhage since the residual effect (hemiplegia) has a duration of one year.

- c. The condition in I600-I64, I670-I671, I674-I679 is stated to be ancient, history of, old, remote, or the interval between onset of this condition and death is indicated to be one year or more, whether or not the residual (late) effect is specified.

I (a) Brain damage G939  
(b) Remote cerebral thrombosis I693

Code sequela of cerebral thrombosis since the cerebral thrombosis is reported as remote.

I (a) Old intracerebral hemorrhage I691

Code sequela of intracerebral hemorrhage since the intracerebral hemorrhage is stated as old.

## Part F

## Sequela

---

I (a) Cerebrovascular occlusion      6 yrs      I693

Code sequela of cerebrovascular occlusion since the duration is one year or more.

I (a) History of CVA      I694

Code sequela of CVA since “history of” CVA is reported.

- d. The condition in I600-I64, and I670-I671, I674-I679 is reported with paralysis (any) stated to be ancient, history of, old, remote, or the interval between onset of this condition and death is indicated to be one year or more whether or not the residual (late) effect is specified.

I (a) CVA with old hemiplegia      I694      G819

Code sequela of CVA since it is reported with hemiplegia stated as old.

12. O97 Sequela of direct obstetric cause

Use this category for the classification of a direct obstetric cause (conditions in O00-O927) if:

- a. A statement of a late effect or sequela of the direct obstetric cause is reported.
- b. A chronic condition or a condition with a duration of one year or more that was due to the direct obstetric cause is reported.

## Part G

## Ill-defined and Unknown Causes

G. Ill-defined and unknown causes1. Sudden infant death syndrome (R95)**Includes:**

Cot death

Crib death

SDII, SID, SIDS, SUD, SUDI, SUID

Sudden (unexpected) (unattended) (unexplained)

- death (cause unknown) (in infancy) (syndrome)
- infant death (syndrome)

Causing death at  
ages under  
1 year

**Excludes:**

The listed conditions causing death at ages one year or over (R960)

Female, 6 months

I (a) Sudden death R95

Male, 3 weeks

I (a) Sudden death, cause unknown R95  
(b) R97

Female, 3 months

I (a) SIDS, pneumonia R95 J189

2. Other sudden death and other unspecified cause (R960-R961, R98-R99)

Code R960-R961, R98-R99 only when:

a. A term(s) classifiable to one of these codes is the only entry (or entries) on the death certificate.

b. The only other entry on the death certificate is classifiable to R97 (cause unknown).

Female, 2 years

I (a) Sudden death R960  
(b) Crib death R960

## Part G

## Ill-defined and Unknown Causes

- c. When more than one term classifiable to two or more of these categories is reported, code only one in this priority: R960, R961, R98, R99.

(1) Instantaneous death (R960)**Includes:**

- Cot death
- Crib death
- SDII, SID, SIDS, SUD, SUDI, SUID
- Sudden (unexpected) (unattended) (unexplained)
  - death (cause unknown) (in infancy) syndrome
  - infant death (syndrome)

Causing death at  
age 1 year  
or over

**Excludes:**

The listed conditions causing death at ages under one year (R95).

Male, 3 years

- |                                   |      |
|-----------------------------------|------|
| I (a) Sudden death, cause unknown | R960 |
| (b)                               | R97  |

Female, 2 years

- |                       |      |
|-----------------------|------|
| I (a) SIDS, pneumonia | J189 |
|-----------------------|------|

(2) Death occurring in less than 24 hours from onset of symptoms, not otherwise explained (R961)

- |                               |      |
|-------------------------------|------|
| I (a) Died—no sign of disease | R961 |
|-------------------------------|------|

(3) Unattended death (R98)

- |                           |     |
|---------------------------|-----|
| I (a) Found dead          | R98 |
| (b) Investigation pending |     |

- |                                   |     |
|-----------------------------------|-----|
| I (a) Found dead at foot of steps | R98 |
| (b) Natural causes                |     |

(4) Ill-defined and unspecified cause of mortality (R99)**Includes:**

Bone(s) found  
 Dead on arrival (DOA)  
 Diagnosis deferred  
 Died without doctor in attendance  
 Inquest pending  
 Natural cause(s)  
 Natural causes, cause unknown  
 Natural causes uncertain  
 Natural causes undetermined  
 Natural causes unknown  
 Natural causes unspecified  
 Natural disease undetermined  
 No doctor  
 Pending examination (any type)  
     (pathological) (toxicological)  
 Pending investigation (police)  
 Skeleton  
 Uncertain natural causes  
 Undetermined natural causes  
 Undetermined natural disease  
 Undiagnosed disease  
 Unknown natural causes  
 Unspecified natural causes

**Excludes:**

Unknown cause (R97)

**NOTE:** When a term from the preceding list is reported immediately preceding or following a term from the Unknown Cause (R97) list, assign R99 only.

I (a) DOA	R99
(b) Cause unknown	R97
I (a) No doctor	R99
(b) Pending investigation	R99
I (a) Cause unknown	R97
(b) Pending pathological examination	R99
I (a) Natural causes, cause unknown	R99

## Part G

## Ill-defined and Unknown Causes

3. Unknown cause (R97)**Includes:**

Cause not found	Immediate cause unknown
Cause unknown	No specific etiology identified
Cause undetermined	No specific known causes
Could not be determined	Nonspecific causes
Etiology never determined	Not known
Etiology not defined	Obscure etiology
Etiology uncertain	Undetermined
Etiology unexplained	Uncertain
Etiology unknown	Unclear
Etiology undetermined	Unexplained cause
Etiology unspecified	Unknown
Final event undetermined	? Cause
Immediate cause not determined	? Etiology

- a. Use this category for the classification of the listed terms except when the term in R97 is reported

- (1) On the same line with and preceding a condition qualified as “possible,” “probable,” etc.
- (2) In “Describe How Injury Occurred” (Item 43) of the death certificate.

In such cases, **do not** enter a code for the term in R97.

I (a) G. I. hemorrhage	K922
(b) Cause unknown	R97
(c) Carcinomatosis	C80
I (a) Unknown cause	R97
I (a) Intestinal obstruction	K566
(b) Unknown, possibly cancer	C80
I (a) Amyloidosis	E859
(b) Chronic ulcerative colitis	K519
(c)	
II Cirrhosis of liver, cause unknown	K746 R97

**SECTION IV**

**Classification of Certain ICD Categories**

**Part G**

**Ill-defined and Unknown Causes**

<u>Place</u>	I	(a)	Cardiac arrest	I469
		(b)	Hip fracture	S720
		(c)	Fall	&W19
<u>MOD</u>	II			
A			Accident	43
				Unknown

b. If the term in R97 is reported in Part I on the same line with and following the condition to which it applies, enter the code for unknown cause on the next due to line whether or not “cause unknown” is in parentheses beside the condition in Volume 3. Code the conditions on each of the remaining lines in Part I, if there are any, as though they had been reported on the succeeding line(s).

Female, 3 months				
I	(a)	SIDS, cause unknown		R95
	(b)			R97
I	(a)	Unknown cause		R97
	(b)	Found dead		R98
I	(a)	Unknown		R97
	(b)	Known to have had ASHD		I251 J42
	(c)	and chronic bronchitis		
I	(a)	Gastric ulcer, cause unknown		K259
	(b)	Rheumatoid arthritis		R97
	(c)			M069

## SECTION V

# Effects of External Cause of Injury and External Causes of Injury and Poisoning External Cause Code (E-Code) Concept

### Part A

---

In ICD-10, the Nature of Injury Chapter (XIX) is part of the main Classification but certain effects of external causes are classified in Chapters I-XVIII. The external cause codes (Chapter XX) are intended for use, where relevant, to identify the external cause of conditions classifiable to Chapters I-XVIII, as well as to Chapter XIX. While not all external causes will have a corresponding code in Chapter XIX, an external cause code is required when a code from Chapter XIX is applicable.

#### A. External cause code (E-Code) concept

An external cause of injury may be classified to Accidents (V01-X59), Intentional self harm (X60-X84), Assault (X85-Y09), Event of undetermined intent (Y10-Y34), Legal intervention and operations of war (Y35-Y36), Complications of medical and surgical care (Y40-Y84), and Sequela of external causes (Y85-Y89). When unspecified, assume all external cause one-term entities to be accidental unless the External Causes of Injury Index provides otherwise.

The objective in assigning the external cause codes is to combine into the entity being coded any related entries on the record that will permit the assignment of the most specific external cause codes in accordance with the intent of the certifier. After the determination of the most specific external cause code is made, enter this code where it is first encountered on the record. Do not repeat the same external cause code when it is reported on other lines. When more than one external cause is reported, code each external cause code where it is first encountered on the certificate.

The death certificate provides a specific place for information concerning the external cause of injury that is usually entered on the lines below the line labeled "Part II." However, a description of the external cause is reported frequently in Part I and may be repeated in the space provided for this information.

When such statements as: "jumped or fell," "don't know," "accident or suicide," "accident or homicide," "undetermined," or "open verdict" are reported, code the external cause as "undetermined." The "undetermined" categories include self-inflicted injuries, except poisoning, when not specified whether accidental or with intent to harm.

1. Use of Index

ICD-10 provides separate indexing in Volume 3, Section II for the external causes of injury, with frequent references to Volume 1. The External Causes of Injury Index provides a double axis of indexing — descriptions of the circumstances under which the accident or violence occurred and the agent involved in the occurrence. Usually, the “lead terms” in the External Causes of Injury Index describe the circumstances of the injury with a secondary (indented) entry naming the agent involved.

Fall from building                      W13

Locate the E-code for “fall”:

Fall, falling  
- from, off  
- - building W13.-

2. Use of Tabular List

After locating the external cause code in the Index, always refer to Volume 1 since certain external cause codes for transport accidents require a fourth character not provided for in the Index. When ICD-10 provides a fourth character subcategory for an external cause code, always code the fourth character.

Fell from boat                              V929

Locate the E-code for “fall”:

Fall  
- from  
- - boat, ship, watercraft NEC (with drowning or submersion) V92.-

In Volume 1, the fourth character describes the type of boat. Code the fourth character “9,” unspecified watercraft.

## SECTION V

## Effects of External Cause of Injury and External Causes of Injury and Poisoning External Cause Code (E-Code) Concept

### Part A

---

The Classification provides a fourth character for use with categories W00-Y34, except Y06.- and Y07.-, to identify the place of occurrence of the external cause. NCHS uses a separate field for this purpose. Only the three-character category codes are assigned in multiple cause coding.

House fire                      X00

Locate the E-code for “House fire”:  
House Fire (uncontrolled) X00.-

In Volume 1, a fourth character identifying the place of occurrence is required. Assign code 0 (home) to the place of occurrence variable in the field provided for this variable.

#### 3. Place of occurrence of external cause

Enter a one-character place of occurrence code (0-9), in the appropriate data position, for external causes of injury classifiable to W00-Y34, except Y06.- and Y07.-, **if the effects of the external cause are classifiable to Chapter XIX**. Do not enter a place code for external causes classifiable to any other external cause code. Use only the information reported in the medical certification section of the death certificate or additional information (AI) to determine the place code. Refer to Appendix D for the list of place of occurrence codes.

#### 4. Manner of death (Item 37) on death certificate

##### a. Affecting multiple cause codes

- (1) When separate check boxes for indicating whether an external cause was accidental, suicidal, homicidal, undetermined, or pending investigation appear on the medical certification form, treat the check box entry as a one-term entity.
- (2) When “accident,” “pending,” “unknown,” or “undetermined” is written in the “check box” or is one of the items checked **and no condition is coded to Chapter XIX**, disregard the check box entry for assignment of codes.
- (3) When “suicide” or “homicide” is written in the “check box”, or is one of the items checked **and no condition is coded to Chapter XIX**, assign the appropriate external cause code preceded by Injury NOS, T149.
- (4) When “unknown” or “open verdict” is written in the check box **and there is a condition(s) coded to Chapter XIX**, code the external cause to the appropriate “event of undetermined intent” category.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
External Cause Code (E-Code) Concept**

**Part A**

- 
- (5) When “pending,” “pending investigation,” “deferred,” or “unclassified” is reported in the check box **and there is a condition(s) coded to Chapter XIX**, code the external cause as indexed.
  - (6) Enter a code for an entry in a check box for **“natural cause” only** if this is the only codable entry on the certificate or the only other codable entry is “unknown cause” (R97).

b. As a separate variable

Enter an alpha character manner of death code (N, A, S, H, P, or C) in the appropriate data position for any entry in the manner of death check box. **Use only the information reported in the manner of death box to assign the code.**

Code the manner of death as:

Natural .....	N
Accident.....	A
Suicide .....	S
Homicide .....	H
Pending Investigation .....	P
Could not be determined .....	C
Blank.....	Blank

5. Nature of injury and external cause code lists

Since certain entities state or imply cause (E-code) and effect (N-code), ICD-10 provides both N-codes and E-codes for many terms. Determination must be made whether to code nature of injury code only, external cause code only, or both nature of injury and external cause codes for such terms. Use the following lists as **guides** in classifying these terms. When ICD-10 provides a nature of injury code for an entity that does **not** appear on either list, use the nature of injury code only.

The E-code is only coded the first time external information is mentioned. A term requiring a N-code is coded each time it is reported.

## SECTION V

## Effects of External Cause of Injury and External Causes of Injury and Poisoning External Cause Code (E-Code) Concept

---

### Part A

#### Nature of injury code only (N-Code)

Allergy	Intoxication when due to a drug
Anaphylactic reaction	Lacerations
Anaphylactic shock	Lack of care
Anaphylactic, anaphylaxis	Mucus plug
Anoxia	Multiple injuries
Bezoar	Polypharmacy (when it means drug poisoning)
Burns	Scald
Cremation	Severed
Crushed	Smoke
Decapitation	Starvation
Deceleration injury	Trauma NOS (any site)
Drug NOS or named drug (when it means drug poisoning)	Traumatic
Drug synergism	Traumatic death
Exhaustion	Traumatic injury (any site)
Fracture	Traumatism
Inattention at birth	Wound (penetrating)
Incineration	
Injury NOS (any site)	

## SECTION V

## Effects of External Cause of Injury and External Causes of Injury and Poisoning External Cause Code (E-Code) Concept

---

### Part A

#### External cause code only (E-code)

Abandonment	Explosive blasts to site(s)	Inhalation
Accident, accidental	Fall	Physical violence
Arson	Fight	Projectile
Assault	Fire	Reaction of drug with a reported complication
Beaten	Flood	Striking any site
Blow to any site	Foreign body	Suicide, suicidal
Blunt force NOS	Heat	
Blunt impact NOS	Hitting any site	
Conflagration	Homicide, homicidal	
Desertion	Hot environment	
Excessive heat	Hot weather	
Explosion	Impact	

## SECTION V

## Effects of External Cause of Injury and External Causes of Injury and Poisoning External Cause Code (E-Code) Concept

### Part A

Entities Requiring nature of injury and external cause codes on the same line (N\E Codes)

Abuse (child) (elder) (spousal)	Hypothermia
Airway obstruction by foreign body	Immersion
Alcohol intoxication (any term meaning intoxication)	Impact injury (any site)
Anastomotic leak	Impact to a site (any)
*Asphyxia	Incised (wound)
*Aspiration	Ingestion of foreign body
Battered child (syndrome)	Inhalation injury (any)
Bite	*Inhalation of foreign body
Blunt blow to a site	Lightning (struck by)
Blunt force injury (any site)	Mangled
Blunt force to a site (any)	Mechanical trauma
Blunt impact to a site (any)	Overdose (of drug or alcohol)
Blunt injury (any site)	Overheated
Blunt trauma (any site)	Overexertion
Bullet (to site)	Poisoning (by substance)
Bullet wound	Pulled trigger
Child neglect	Puncture, punctured (any site)
Choking on foreign body	Puncture wound
Crushed by specified object	Radiation burns
Cut	Rape
Drowning	Razor cut
Electrocution	Shooting, shot (to site)
Electrical burns	Shotgun blast (to site)
Electrical shock	Slash, slashed (any site)
Exposure (to element) (cold, heat)	Smothered
Firearm (any type) (discharge)	Snake bite
Flame burn	Stab
Foreign body in any site	Sting
Freezing, froze, frostbite	Strangulation
Got too hot	Submersion
Gun went off	Suffocation
Gunshot (to site)	Sunstroke
Gunshot wound	Suspension, suspended
Hanging (by neck)	Swallowed object
Heat exhaustion	Toxicity (of substance)
Heat stress	Vehicular trauma
Heat stroke	Weapon wound
	.22, .32 or any caliber

(\* This does not apply when certain localized effects result from asphyxia, aspiration, or inhalation. Refer to Section V, Part O.)

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Placement of N-Code and E-Code**

**Part B**

**B. Placement of nature of injury and external cause codes**

When a nature of injury code and an external cause code are required for an entity, enter the nature of injury code followed by the external cause code on the same line.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Gunshot wound of chest	S219	&W34	
9		(b)			
		(c)			
<u>MOD</u>	II				
A		<table border="1"><tr><td>Accident</td></tr></table>	Accident		
Accident					

Since “gunshot wound” requires a nature of injury and an E-code, enter on I(a) the nature of injury code for wound of chest followed by the most specific E-code for gunshot, accidental. Code place of occurrence as 9 (unspecified). Code manner of death as A (accident).

When entries requiring nature of injury codes and external cause codes are reported on the same line in Part I, code **the first nature of injury code** followed by the **most specific external cause code**; then code any remaining conditions for the line in the order indicated by the certifier.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Laceration of throat	S118			
9		(b) Dog bite of shoulder,	S410	&W54	T111	S119
		(c) arm and neck				

Code the nature of injury code only for I(a). On I(b), code the nature of injury code for “bite of shoulder” followed by the E-code for dog bite followed by the remaining nature of injury codes for “bite arm and neck.” Code place of occurrence as 9 (unspecified).

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Fracture skull	S029			
9		(b) Fell from window, crushed	S280	&W13	S381	
		(c) chest and abdomen				

I(a) requires a nature of injury code only. I(b) requires both nature of injury and E-code since the external cause and injuries are reported on this line. Code first nature of injury code followed by the external cause code, followed by the remaining nature of injury codes. Code place of occurrence as 9 (unspecified).

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Renal failure	N19			
0		(b) Injury kidney, liver and	S370	&W11	S361	S360
		(c) spleen. Fell from ladder at home				

Code I(b) injury kidney followed by external cause code for the fall, followed by the remaining injuries. Code place of occurrence as 0 (home).

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Placement of N-Code and E-Code**

**Part B**

<u>Place</u> 9	I (a) Cerebral laceration & contusion (b) Blow to right temporal area	S062 &X599
-------------------	--	---------------

Code I(a) to the nature of injury code only, and I(b) to the external cause code only. Code place of occurrence as 9 (unspecified).

In Part II, code each entry in the same order as entered on the certificate. For entities requiring both nature of injury and external cause codes, enter the nature of injury code followed by the external cause code. Enter the information recorded in the special spaces that have been provided on the medical certification form for recording information about external causes of injury following any codes that are applicable to Part II.

<u>Place</u> 9	I (a) Crushed chest (b) Broken rib (c)	S280 S223
	II Fracture hip and arm	S720 T10 &W24
43	Run over by a forklift	

In Part II, code each entry in the order entered on the certificate. Code place of occurrence as 9 (unspecified).

<u>Place</u> 9	I (a) Subdural hematoma II Blunt impact injury to head	S065 S099 &Y00
<u>MOD</u> H	Homicide	
43	Struck on head with a blunt object by another person	

Since the entry in Part II requires both nature of injury and external cause codes, enter the nature of injury code followed by the most specific external cause code. Code place of occurrence as 9 (unspecified).

<u>Place</u> 9	I (a) Head wound II	S019 &W34 S062 S019
<u>MOD</u> A	Accident	
43	Cerebral laceration, GSW of head	

Code external cause code first in Part II since manner of death box requires an external cause code. Code place of occurrence as 9 (unspecified).

## Part C

C. Use of ampersand

1. Use an ampersand to identify the following:
  - a. The most specific external cause code causing injuries or poisoning.
  - b. Certain localized effects of poisonous substances (X45-X49) or aspiration (W78,W79, W80) when classifiable to Chapters I-XVIII.
  - c. Ampersand the E-code for aspiration (W78-W80) anytime it is reported.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Aspiration	T179	&W78
	0	(b) Vomitus		
	II	Fx Hip	Fall at home	S720 &W19

Ampersand both the E-code for aspiration and the E-code for fall at home.

**Exceptions to c:**

1. When reported **due to:**
  - nature of injury codes
  - medical and surgical care
  - other external causes
2. When a nature of injury code other than T179 is reported as the **first** condition on the lowest used line in Part I.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Aspiration of vomitus	T179	W78
	0	(b) Fx hip	S720	
	II	Fall at home		&W19

Do not ampersand the E-code for aspiration since both Exception 1 and 2 apply.

SECTION V

Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Use of Ampersand

Part C

2. More than one external cause reported

- a. In determining the most specific external cause code, consider all of the information reported on the record. If two or more external causes are reported and the nature of the injuries and/or the order in which the conditions are reported indicates that one of the external causes led to the condition that terminated in death, precede the code for this external cause by an ampersand. If no determination can be made, precede the code for the first mentioned external cause with an ampersand.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Aspiration of vomitus	T179	W78
9		(b) Internal chest injury	S279	
		(c) Fall down stairs	&W10	

The order in which the conditions are reported indicates that the fall down stairs led to aspiration; therefore, the ampersand precedes the code for this external cause.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Gunshot wound of head	S019	&X95
9		(b) Stab wound of chest	S219	X99
<u>MOD</u>	II			
H		Homicide		

The order in which the external causes are reported does not indicate which event occurred first; therefore, precede the code for the gunshot wound with an ampersand since it is the first external cause reported.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Head trauma	S099	
9	II	Alcohol intoxication, auto accident	T519	X45 &V499

Precede the code for the auto accident with an ampersand. Alcohol intoxication did not cause the head trauma.

- b. When alcohol intoxication (or any term meaning intoxication) is reported with another external cause other than aspiration, precede the code for the first mentioned external cause with an ampersand.

When alcohol intoxication is reported with drugs, refer to Section V, Part Q, 4, Poisoning by alcohol and drugs.

When alcohol intoxication is reported with exposure or hypothermia, refer to Section V, Part L, 2, Exposure, cold exposure and hypothermia.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Use of Ampersand**

**Part C**

---

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Head trauma	S099
9		(b) Auto Accident	&V499
		(c) Alcohol intoxication	T519 X45

Precede the code for the auto accident with an ampersand since it is the first external cause reported.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Drowning	T751	&W74
9		(b) Alcohol intoxication	T519	X45
	II	Drinking heavily	F101	

Precede the code for the drowning with an ampersand since it is the first external cause reported. Code Part II as indexed.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Alcohol intoxication and hip fx	T519	&X45	S720
9	II	Fall while intoxicated	W19	T519	

Precede the code for the alcohol intoxication with an ampersand since it is the first external cause reported.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Certifications with Mention of Nature of Injury and  
without Mention of External Cause**

**Part D**

**D. Certifications with mention of nature of injury and without mention of external cause**

All certifications that have an entry classifiable to Chapter XIX must have an external cause code. When only one type of injury is reported without indication of the external cause and the External Cause Index provides a code for this type of injury, code accordingly. If the External Cause Index does not provide a code for the type of injury, code to Accident, unspecified (X599). When no external cause is reported and the external cause code must be assumed, code the external cause code as the last entry in Part II.

<u>Place</u>	I (a) Crushed chest	S280
9	II	&X599

Code Crushed (accidentally), X599 as indexed.

<u>Place</u>	I (a) Fracture of hip and arm	S720 T10
9	II	&X590

Code Fracture (circumstances unknown or unspecified), X590 as indexed.

<u>Place</u>	I (a) Penetrating wound of abdomen	S318 S219
9	(b) and chest	
	II	&X599

Code Wound (accidental) NEC, X599 as indexed.

If different types of injuries are reported without indication of the external cause, use the injury reported in the lowest due to position to assign the appropriate external cause code for this injury. If more than one injury is reported on the lowest line, assign the appropriate external cause code for the first mentioned injury.

<u>Place</u>	I (a) Brain injury	S069
9	(b) Fracture of skull	S029
	II	&X590

Code Fracture (circumstances unknown or unspecified), X590.

<u>Place</u>	I (a) Fracture of hip	S720
9	(b) Crushing hip injury	S770
	II	&X599

Code Crushed (accidentally), X599.

## SECTION V

### Effects of External Cause of Injury and External Causes of Injury and Poisoning Certifications with Mention of Nature of Injury and without Mention of External Cause

#### Part D

---

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Cerebral concussion and	S060	S062
9		(b) laceration of brain		
	II		&X599	

Concussion is not indexed in External Cause Index. Code to Accident, unspecified, X599.

These generalizations do not apply if the place of occurrence of the injury was highway, street, road, or alley. Refer to instructions for transport accidents in Section V, Part J.

#### Implied site of injury

Relate most injuries of an unspecified site to a condition of a specified site, whether or not qualified as generalized, multiple, or stated plural, following general instructions for relating disease conditions.

#### **Exceptions:**

##### Do not relate

Injury(ies) (generalized) (internal) (multiple)

Trauma(s) (generalized) (internal) (multiple)

Wound(s) (generalized) (internal) (multiple)

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Crushed skull with multiple fractures	S071	S029
9	II		&X599	

Code crushed skull followed by multiple skull fractures relating the injury of unspecified site to the site of the injury that is reported on the same line. Since there is no external cause reported, code Crushed (accidentally) as indexed in Part II.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Fractured neck and contusions	S129	S109
9	II		&X590	

Code fractured neck followed by neck contusion relating the injury of unspecified site to the site of the injury that is reported on the same line. Since there is no external cause reported, code Fracture (circumstances unknown or unspecified) as indexed in Part II.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Certifications with Mention of Nature of Injury and  
without Mention of External Cause**

**Part D**

---

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Fracture of hip	S720
9		(b) Crushing injury	S770
	II		&X599

Code crushing injury hip since there is only one site reported either on the line above or below the fracture. Since there is no external cause reported, code Crushed (accidentally) as indexed in Part II.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Fracture of skull with generalized trauma	S029	T07
9	II		&X590	

Code the generalized trauma as indexed. Do not relate to the site of the injury reported on the same line with it. Since there is no external cause reported, code Fracture (circumstances unknown or unspecified) as indexed in Part II.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Skull fracture	S029
9		(b) Wound	T141
	II		&X599

Code I(b) to Wound as indexed. Do not relate to the site of the fracture reported on the upper line. Since there is no external cause reported, code Wound (accidental) NEC, X599 as indexed in Part II.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Conditions Qualified as Traumatic**

**Part E**

E. Conditions qualified as traumatic

1. Some conditions are indexed directly to a nontraumatic category but the Classification also provides a traumatic code. Consider these conditions to be traumatic and code as traumatic:
  - a. When they are qualified as “traumatic”
  - b. Or they are reported on the certificate with:
    - Injury or trauma (any specified type or site)
    - An external cause
    - The **Manner of Death** is Accident, Homicide, Suicide, Pending Investigation or Undetermined

**Exception:**

**Do not** apply this instruction if:

- the condition is reported due to a nontraumatic condition
- W78–W80 is the only external cause reported
- poisoning is reported

<u>Place</u> 6	I (a) Pneumothorax (b) Fracture rib	S270 S223
	II <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">Place of injury- Factory</div>	&X590

Since pneumothorax is reported on the certificate with an injury, code pneumothorax as traumatic.

<u>Place</u> 9	I (a) Cerebral hemorrhage (b) (c)	S062
<u>MOD</u> A	II <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">Accident</div>	&X599

Consider cerebral hemorrhage to be traumatic since Accident is reported in the Manner of Death box.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Conditions Qualified as Traumatic**

**Part E**

	I	(a) Cardiorespiratory failure	R092
		(b) Intracerebral hemorrhage	I619
		(c) Meningioma	D329
<u>MOD</u>	II		
A		Accident	

Since intracerebral hemorrhage is reported due to a disease condition, code as nontraumatic. Do not enter an E-code for Accident reported in the check box since no condition is coded to Chapter XIX.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Subarachnoid hemorrhage	S066
9		(b) Fall	&W19
<u>MOD</u>	II		
N		Natural	

Code subarachnoid hemorrhage as traumatic since it is reported on the certificate with an external cause, disregarding Natural in the Manner of Death box.

**Exceptions:**

- a. Code emphysema, encephalitis, and meningitis to the nature of injury code only when they are stated to be “traumatic” or are reported **due to** or **on the same line with** an injury or external cause.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Emphysema	T797
9		(b) Injury chest	S299
		(c) Fall	&W19

Code I(a) emphysema, traumatic since the condition is reported due to an injury.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Internal injury	T148
9		(b) Fall from ladder	&W11
	II	Meningitis	G039

Do not code the meningitis as traumatic since it is not reported due to or on the same line with an injury or external cause. Code place of occurrence as 9 (unspecified).

SECTION V

Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Conditions Qualified as Traumatic

Part E

- b. Code the following terms to the traumatic category **only** when stated to be “traumatic:”

blindness (H540-H547)  
epilepsy (G400-G409)  
gastrointestinal hemorrhage (any K922)  
pneumonia (classifiable to J120-J168, J180-J189, J690, J698)

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Pneumonia	J189
9		(b) Fracture hip	S720
	II	Fall	&W19

Code I(a) pneumonia as indexed since it is not reported as traumatic.

I	(a) Traumatic epilepsy	T905
	(b) Head injury	T909
	(c) Fall from ladder	&Y86

Code epilepsy to the nature of injury code since it is stated traumatic.

- c. When the traumatic form of a condition is classified to Chapters I-XVIII, code as traumatic **only** when stated to be “traumatic”

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Cardiac arrest	I469
9		(b) Organic brain syndrome	F069
		(c) Brain injury	S069
		(d) Fall	&W19

Code organic brain syndrome as indexed since it is not stated “traumatic.”

2. When a condition of a specified site is stated to be traumatic but there is no provision in the Classification for coding the condition as traumatic, code to injury unqualified of the site.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Traumatic cerebral thrombosis	S069
9		(b) Fall	&W19

Code Injury, cerebral.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Conditions Qualified as Traumatic**

---

**Part E**

3. When a condition that does not indicate a specified site is stated to be traumatic, but there is no provision in the Classification for coding the condition as traumatic, code trauma unspecified and the condition separately.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Traumatic coma	T149	R402
9		(b) Fall	&W19	

Code trauma unspecified and coma separately.

## SECTION V

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Conditions Qualified as Traumatic**

## Part E

4. Traumatic hemorrhage (T148, T149)

Internal hemorrhage NOS	1	<b>Due to or on same line with</b> injury (any site)	Code the hemorrhage to T148, internal injury NOS
Hemorrhage NOS	2	<b>Due to</b> injury of a specified site	Relate the hemorrhage to the site of the specified injury
	3	<b>Due to</b> injury NOS or multiple injuries NOS	Code the hemorrhage to T149, injury NOS
	4	<b>Due to</b> injury of multiple specified sites	Relate the hemorrhage to site of the first mentioned specified injury
	5	<b>Due to</b> internal injury NOS or internal injuries NOS	Code the hemorrhage to T148, internal injury NOS
	6	<b>On same line with</b> injury of site	Relate the hemorrhage to the site of the specified injury
	7	<b>On same line with</b> injury of multiple specified sites	Code the hemorrhage to T149, injury NOS
	8	<b>On same line with</b> internal injury NOS or internal injuries NOS	Code the hemorrhage to T148, internal injury NOS
	9	<b>Due to and on same line with</b> injuries of different specified sites	Relate the hemorrhage to the site of the injury that is entered on the same line with hemorrhage

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Conditions Qualified as Traumatic**

**Part E**

				<u>Instruction Number</u>
<u>Place</u> 9	I	(a) Internal hemorrhage	T148	1
		(b) Crushed thorax	S280	
		(c)		
	II		&X599	
<u>Place</u> 9	I	(a) Hemorrhage	S799	2
		(b) Fracture of femur	S729	
		(c)		
	II		&X590	
<u>Place</u> 9	I	(a) Hemorrhage	S299	2
		(b) Laceration of chest	S219	
		(c)		
	II		&X599	
<u>Place</u> 9	I	(a) Hemorrhage	T149	3
		(b) Multiple injuries	T07	
		(c)		
	II		&X599	
<u>Place</u> 9	I	(a) Hemorrhage	S299	4
		(b) Injury of chest, lung and	S299 S273 S223	
		(c) fractured rib		
	II		&X599	
<u>Place</u> 9	I	(a) Contusion chest with	S202 S299	6
		(b) hemorrhage		
		(c)		
	II		&X599	
<u>Place</u> 9	I	(a) Laceration of liver, lung,	S361 S273 S360 T149	7
		(b) & spleen with hemorrhage		
		(c)		
	II	Fracture rt. femur	S729 &X599	
<u>Place</u> 9	I	(a) Cerebral contusion	S062	9
		(b) with hemorrhage		
		(c) Injury of chest, lung, back	S299 S273 S399	
	II		&X599	

## SECTION V

## Effects of External Cause of Injury and External Causes of Injury and Poisoning Assumption of Nature of Injury Code

### Part F

#### F. Assumption of nature of injury code

When an external cause is reported on a certificate without a nature of injury code, assign both a nature of injury and an external cause code. Assume the nature of injury to be Injury NOS, T149 and place it preceding the external cause code.

<u>Place</u>	I (a) Respiratory failure	J969
9	(b) Fire	T149 &X09

I(b) is an external cause code only. Since there is not a nature of injury reported on the certificate, code nature of injury T149 preceding the external code for fire.

<u>Place</u>	I (a) Subarachnoid hemorrhage	I609
9	(b) Stroke	I64
	(c) Fall	T149 &W19

Do not code the hemorrhage on I(a) as traumatic since it is reported due to a nontraumatic condition. I(c) is an external cause code only and there is not a nature of injury reported on the certificate. Code nature of injury T149 preceding the external code for fall.

<u>Place</u>	I (a) Struck by falling tree	&W20
9	II Head wound	S019

I(a) is an external cause code only. Since there is a nature of injury on the certificate, do not code T149 preceding the external code.

<u>Place</u>	I (a) Struck by falling tree	T149 &W20
9	II Respiratory failure	J969

I(a) is an external cause code only. Since there is not a nature of injury on the certificate, code T149 preceding the external code.

#### **Exceptions:**

1. When conditions classified to categories A000-R99 are reported due to “second hand smoke,” code the “second hand smoke” to X49.

I (a) Pulmonary emphysema	J439
(b) Second hand smoke	X49

I (a) Lung cancer	C349
(b) Second hand smoke	X49

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Assumption of Nature of Injury Code**

**Part F**

---

I (a) Cardiac arrest	I469
(b) Second hand smoke	X49

2. Anthrax is reported with accident, suicide, homicide or undetermined

When anthrax (A220-A229) is reported with accident, suicide or homicide anywhere on the record (including in the check box) or undetermined in the check box only, code the anthrax as indexed and code the external cause code as:

- Accident specified (X58)
- Suicide specified (X83)
- Homicide specified (Y08)
- Undetermined specified (Y33)

Anthrax designated as an act of terrorism is classified to U016.

<u>MOD</u> I (a) Inhalation anthrax	A221
H II	Y08

Homicide
----------

Code I(a) as indexed under Anthrax, inhalation. Code an E-code only in Part II for homicide based upon the check box entry. Also enter a H for Homicide in the Manner of Death item.

I (a) Anthrax	A229
(b) Homicide	Y08

Code I(a) as indexed. Code an E-code only on I(b); do not assume an injury code.

3. When conditions in J680-J709 are reported due to an external cause not considered to be medical or surgical care, refer to Section V, Part O, Guides for differentiating between effects of external causes classifiable to Chapters I-XVIII and Chapter XIX.
4. If a pathological fracture and an external event are reported, no assumption of a nature of injury code is required.

## Part G

G. Multiple injuries (T00-T07 )

When injury (of a site) or specified type of injury (of a site) is:

Stated as	Code as indexed under
Bilateral	Injury (or specified type of injury), site, bilateral
Both	Injury (or specified type of injury), site, both
Multiple	Injury (or specified type of injury), site, multiple

Do not consider the plural form of injury or the plural form of a site to indicate multiple. Do not consider “right and left” as bilateral or both.

Examples of injuries:

1. Fracture of both hips T025  
     Fracture  
     - hip  
     - - both T025
  
2. Fracture of hips S720  
     Fracture  
     - hip S720
  
3. Multiple fractures of ribs S224  
     Fracture  
     - rib  
     - - multiple S224
  
4. Fractures of ribs S223  
     Fracture  
     - rib S223
  
5. Multiple wounds of lower limb T013  
     Wound  
     - limb  
     - - lower NEC  
     - - - multiple sites T013

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Multiple Injuries**

**Part G**

1. Multiple injuries	<b>Followed by</b> specified type(s) of injuries	Code T07 and the specified injuries
2. Multiple injuries	<b>Followed by</b> specified site(s)	Code multiple injuries by site(s) only
3. Single site	<b>Reported on same line with</b> multiple types of injuries	Code the specified types of injuries of the reported site
4. More than one site	<b>Reported on same line with</b> multiple types of injuries	Code the specified type of injury immediately preceding the reported sites to the sites, code all other injuries to the NOS code

1. Place I (a) Multiple injuries with T07 S029 S062  
9 (b) fracture skull and  
(c) laceration brain  
II &X599
  
2. Place I (a) Multiple injuries - head, S097 S197 S297  
9 (b) neck, chest  
II &X599
  
3. Place I (a) Fracture, laceration and contusion T12 T131 T130  
9 (b) of leg  
(c) Fall from roof &W13
  
4. Place I (a) Contusions, lacerations, fracture of trunk T140 T141 T021 T142  
9 (b) and extremities  
II &X599

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Burns: Multiple Degrees of Burns/Percentage of  
Body Surface Burned**

**Part H**

H. Burns: multiple degrees of burns/percentage of body surface burned

1. When multiple degrees of burns are reported, with or without mention of sites, code the most severe degree only.

<u>Place</u> 0	I (a) 2 <sup>nd</sup> and 3 <sup>rd</sup> degree burns (b) of face, chest wall and abdomen (c)	T203 T213
-------------------	--	-----------

<u>MOD</u> A	II <table border="1" style="display: inline-table; border-collapse: collapse; text-align: center; width: 100px; height: 30px;">Accident</table> <table border="1" style="display: inline-table; border-collapse: collapse; text-align: center; width: 100px; height: 30px;">home</table> <table border="1" style="display: inline-table; border-collapse: collapse; text-align: center; width: 100px; height: 30px;">house fire</table>	&X00
-----------------	--	------

Code 3<sup>rd</sup> degree burns of each site reported.

<u>Place</u> 9	I (a) 2 <sup>nd</sup> and 3 <sup>rd</sup> degree burns (b) (c)	T303
	II	&X09

Code 3<sup>rd</sup> degree burns of unspecified body region.

2. When a percentage of burns or a percentage of body (entire, total) burns is reported, code to the percentage.

<u>Place</u> 9	I (a) Burns of 50% of (b) body surface (c)	T315
-------------------	--	------

<u>MOD</u> A	II <table border="1" style="display: inline-table; border-collapse: collapse; text-align: center; width: 100px; height: 30px;">Accident</table> <table border="1" style="display: inline-table; border-collapse: collapse; text-align: center; width: 200px; height: 30px;">clothing caught on fire</table>	&X06
-----------------	--	------

Code burns involving 50-59% of body surface.

3. When specified degrees of burns are reported with the percentage of body surface involved, code only the percentage of body surface involved.

<u>Place</u> 0	I (a) 30-40%, 2 <sup>nd</sup> and 3 <sup>rd</sup> degree burns of body (b) (c)	T314
-------------------	--	------

II	House fire	&X00
----	------------	------

Code burns involving 40-49% of body surface.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Burns: Multiple Degrees of Burns/Percentage of  
Body Surface Burned**

**Part H**

---

4. When a percentage of burns of specified sites is reported, code to burn of site(s) involved.

Place I (a) Burns, 76% of face, anterior trunk, and T200 T210 T300  
8 (b) extremities  
(c)

MOD II &X00 T300  
A

Accident	burned in fire in abandoned shack
----------	-----------------------------------

Code unspecified degree burns of each site reported. In Part II, code burned as burn of unspecified body region, unspecified degree.

SECTION V

Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Specified Types and Sites of Injuries

Part I

I. Specified types and sites of injuries

1. When specified **types** of injuries of sites are reported, code to site only. Do not use Index entries of “specified type NEC” or “specified NEC” (usually .8) .

Place I (a) Impact injury, upper arm S499 &X599  
9

Indexed as:

Injury  
- arm NEC T119  
- - **upper S499**  
- - - specified NEC S498

Place I (a) Blunt injury, trunk T099 &X599  
9

Indexed as:

Injury  
- **trunk T099**  
- - specified type NEC T098

2. When specified **sites** of injuries are reported, do not use Index entries of “specified type NEC” or “specified NEC”. Use only if indexed as “specified site NEC” or “specified part NEC.”

Place I (a) Fracture third cervical vertebra S129  
9 (b) Fall &W19

Indexed as:

Fracture  
- vertebra T08  
- - **cervical (teardrop) S129**  
- - - specified NEC S122

Place I (a) GSW right side of neck S118 &W34  
9

Indexed as:

Wound  
- neck S119  
- - **specified part NEC S118**

J. Transportation accidents (V01-V99)

The main axis of classification for land transports (V01-V89) is the victim's mode of transportation. The vehicle of which the injured person is an occupant is identified in the first two characters since it is seen as the most important for prevention purposes.

Definitions and examples relating to transport accidents are in Volume 1, pages XX-9 - XX-17. Refer to these definitions when any means of transportation (aircraft and spacecraft, watercraft, motor vehicle, railway, other road vehicle) is involved in causing death.

For classification purposes, a motor vehicle not otherwise specified is **NOT** equivalent to a car. Motor vehicle accidents where the type of vehicle is unspecified are classified to V87-V89.

A vehicle not otherwise specified is **NOT** equivalent to a motor vehicle **unless** the accident occurred on the street, highway, road(way), etc. Vehicle accidents where the type of vehicle is unspecified are classified to V87-V89.

Additional information about type of transports are given below:

- (1) Car (automobile) includes blazer, jeep, minivan, sport utility vehicle
- (2) Pick-up truck or van includes ambulance, motor home, or truck (farm) (utility)
- (3) Heavy transport vehicle includes armored car, dump truck, fire truck, panel truck, semi, tow truck, tractor trailer, 18-wheeler
- (4) A special all-terrain vehicle (ATV) or motor vehicle designed primarily for off-road use includes dirt bike, dune buggy, four-wheeler, go cart, golf cart, race car, snowmobile, three-wheeler
- (5) Motor vehicle includes passenger vehicle (private)

1. Use of the Index and Tabular List

The Classification provides a Table of land transport accidents in Volume 3, Section II. This table is referenced with any land transport accident if the mode of transport is known. Since the Index does not always provide a complete code, reference to Volume 1, Chapter XX is required.

For V01-V09, the fourth character indicates whether a pedestrian was injured in a nontraffic accident, traffic accident, or unspecified whether traffic or nontraffic accident.

For V10-V79, the fourth character represents the status of the victim, i.e., whether the decedent was driver, passenger, etc. For each means of transportation, there is a different set of fourth characters. Each means of transportation is preceded by its set of fourth characters in Volume 1.

- Car overturned, killing driver V485

In the Index refer to:

Overturning

- transport vehicle NEC (see also Accident, transport) V89.9

Accident

- transport (involving injury to) (see also Table of land transport accidents) V99

In the Table of land transport accidents, select the intersection of:

Under **Victim and mode of transport**, select

Occupant of:

- car (automobile)

Under **In collision with or involved in**: select

Noncollision transport accident

The code is V48.-. From Volume 1 the fourth character is 5, driver injured in traffic accident.

- Auto collision with animal V409

In the Index refer to:

Collision (accidental) NEC (see also Accident, transport) V89.9

Accident

- transport (involving injury to) (see also Table of land transport accidents) V99

In the Table of land transport accidents, select the intersection of:

Under **Victim and mode of transport**, select

Occupant of:

- car (automobile)

Under **In collision with or involved in**: select

Pedestrian or animal

The code is V40.-. From Volume 1, determine the fourth character is 9, unspecified car occupant injured in traffic accident.

2. Classifying accidents as traffic or nontraffic.

If an event is unspecified as to whether it is a traffic or nontraffic accident, it is assumed to be:

- a. A traffic accident when the event is classifiable to categories V02-V04, V10-V82 and V87.
- b. A nontraffic accident when the event is classifiable to categories V83-V86. These vehicles are designed primarily for off-road use.
- c. Consider category V05 to be unspecified whether traffic or nontraffic if no place is indicated or if the place is railroad (tracks).
- d. Consider category V05 to be traffic if place is railway crossing.
- e. Consider accidents involving occupants of motor vehicles as traffic when the place is indicated or if the place is railroad (tracks).

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Transportation Accidents**

**Part J**

I (a) Laceration lung S273  
 (b)  
 (c) Accident &V575

MOD II  
 A 

Accident	Truck struck bridge	Driver
----------	---------------------	--------

Code to occupant of pick-up truck or van injured in collision with fixed or stationary object, driver. When a motor vehicle strikes another vehicle or object, assume the collision occurred on the highway unless otherwise indicated.

I (a) Fractured skull S029  
 (b)  
MOD II &V866

A 

Accident	Farm	Dune buggy overturned-passenger
----------	------	---------------------------------

Code to passenger of all-terrain or other off-road motor vehicle injured in nontraffic accident.

I (a) Drowning T751 &V863  
MOD II

A 

Accident	Snowmobile ran off road and went into pond
----------	--

Code to unspecified occupant of all-terrain or other off road motor vehicle injured in traffic accident. Code as traffic accident since the accident originated on the road.

3. Status of victim

- a. General coding instructions relating to transport accidents are in Volume 1, Chapter XX. Refer to these instructions for clarification of the status of the victim when not clearly stated.

I (a) Multiple internal injuries T065  
 (b) Crushed by car T147 &V031

Code to pedestrian injured in collision with car, pick-up truck or van, traffic. Refer to Volume 1, Chapter XX, instruction 3, Crushed by car. The victim is classified as a pedestrian. Refer to Table of land transport accidents. Victim and mode of transport, pedestrian, in collision (with) car. Refer to Volume 1 for fourth character.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Transportation Accidents**

**Part J**

- b. In classifying motor vehicle traffic accidents, a victim of less than 14 years of age is assumed to be a passenger provided there is evidence the decedent was an occupant of the motor vehicle. A statement such as “thrown from car,” “fall from,” “struck head on dashboard,” “drowning,” or “carbon monoxide poisoning” is sufficient.

Female, 4 years old

- I (a) Fractured skull S029
- (b) Struck head on windshield when car &V476
- (c) struck tree that had fallen across road

Code to car occupant injured in collision with fixed or stationary object, passenger (V476).

- c. When transport accident descriptions do not specify the victim as being a vehicle occupant and the victim is described as:

pedestrian	versus (vs)	any vehicle (car, truck, etc.)
any vehicle (car, truck, etc.)	versus (vs)	pedestrian

classify the victim as a pedestrian (V01-V09).

4. Coding categories V01-V89

- a. When drowning occurs as a result of a motor vehicle accident NOS, code as noncollision transport accident. The assumption is the motor vehicle ran off the highway into a body of water. If drowning results from a specified type of motor vehicle accident, code the appropriate E-code for the specified type of motor vehicle accident.

I (a) Drowning T751 &V589

MOD II

A

Accident	Street	Truck accident
----------	--------	----------------

Refer to Table of land transport accidents. Code to occupant of truck injured in noncollision transport accident, unspecified.

I (a) Drowning T751 &V435

MOD II

A

Accident	Street	Driver-2 car collision
----------	--------	------------------------

Refer to Table of land transport accidents. Code to occupant of car injured in collision with car, driver.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Transportation Accidents**

**Part J**

b. When falls from transport vehicles occur, apply the following instructions:

- (1) Consider a transport vehicle to be in motion unless there is clear indication the vehicle was not in transit. Refer to Table of land transport accidents, specified type of vehicle reported, noncollision. Refer to Volume 1 for appropriate fourth character.

	I (a) Multiple injuries	T07
<u>MOD</u>	II	&V583
A	Accident	Home
	Fell from truck in driveway	

Refer to Table of land transport accidents under Victim and mode of transport. Select occupant of pick-up truck, noncollision transport accident, (V58.-). Refer to Volume 1 for fourth character and select 3, unspecified occupant of pick-up truck, nontraffic accident.

- (2) Consider a transport vehicle to be stationary when statements such as these are reported :
- (a) When alighting, boarding, entering, leaving, exiting, getting in or out of vehicle
- (b) Stated as stationary, parked, not in transit, not in motion

	I (a) Head injury	S099
<u>MOD</u>	II	&V784
A	Accident	Street
	Fell alighting from bus	

Refer to Table of land transport accidents under Victim and mode of transport. Select occupant of bus, noncollision transport accident, (V78.-). Refer to Volume 1 for fourth character and select 4, person injured while boarding or alighting.

	I (a) Head injury	S099
<u>MOD</u>	II	&V892
A	Accident	Street
	Fell on curb as he was exiting his daughter's vehicle	

Refer to Table of land transport accidents under Victim and mode of transport. Select occupant of motor vehicle (traffic), noncollision transport accident (V892).

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Transportation Accidents**

**Part J**

---

Place I (a) Head injury S099  
4

MOD II &W17  
A

Accident Street Fell from parked car

Code as indexed under Fall, from, vehicle, stationary (W17).

5. Additional examples

I (a) Fractures of ribs S223  
(b)  
(c)

MOD II &V234

A Accident Driver of motorcycle that collided with taxicab

Code to motorcycle rider injured in collision with car, pick-up truck or van, driver (V234).

I (a) Third degree burns T303  
(b) Auto accident - car overturned &V489  
(c)

Code to car occupant injured in noncollision transport accident, unspecified (V489).

I (a) Fracture of ribs S223  
(b)  
(c)

MOD II &V892

A Accident Street Vehicle Accident

Code to person injured in unspecified motor vehicle accident, traffic (V892).  
Code as motor vehicle accident since the accident occurred on the street.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Transportation Accidents**

**Part J**

---

6. Occupant of special all-terrain or other motor vehicle designed primarily for off-road use, injured in transport accident (V86)

This category includes accidents involving an occupant of any off-road vehicle. The fourth character indicates whether the decedent was injured in a nontraffic or traffic accident. Unless stated to the contrary, these accidents are assumed to be nontraffic.

- |  |       |
|--|-------|
| I (a) Multiple injuries                          | T07   |
| (b) Driver of snowmobile that collided with auto | &V860 |

Code to driver of all-terrain or other off-road motor vehicle injured in traffic accident since the collision occurred with an automobile.

- |                        |       |
|------------------------|-------|
| I (a) Injuries of head | S099  |
| (b) Fracture both legs | T025  |
| (c) Driver of ATV      | &V865 |

Code to driver of all-terrain or other off-road motor vehicle injured in nontraffic accident.

- |                            |       |
|----------------------------|-------|
| I (a) Head injuries        | S099  |
| (b) Overturning snowmobile | &V869 |

Code to unspecified occupant of all-terrain or other off-road motor vehicle injured in nontraffic accident.

- |                      |       |
|----------------------|-------|
| I (a) Fracture skull | S029  |
| (b) ATV accident     | &V869 |

Code to unspecified occupant of all-terrain or other off-road motor vehicle injured in nontraffic accident (V869)

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Transportation Accidents**

**Part J**

7. Traffic accident of specified type but victim’s mode of transport unknown (V87)  
Nontraffic accident of specified type but victim’s mode of transport unknown (V88)

a. If more than one type of vehicle is mentioned, do not make any assumptions as to which vehicle was occupied by the victim unless the vehicles are the same. Instead, code to the appropriate categories V87-V88. Statements such as these do not indicate status of victim:

- Auto (passenger) vs. truck
- Car vs. truck-driver
- Driver, car vs. truck
- Passenger car vs. truck
- Car vs. truck, driver
- Driver-car vs. truck

- I (a) Intrathoracic injury S279
- (b)
- (c) Auto vs. motor bike accident &V870

Do not make any assumption as to which vehicle the victim was occupying.  
Using the Index, code:

Accident

- transport (involving injury to) (see also Table of land transport accidents) V99
- - person NEC (unknown means of transportation) (in) V99
- - - collision (between)
- - - - car (with)
- - - - - two- or three-wheeled motor vehicle (traffic) V87.0

- I (a) Multiple injuries T07
- (b) Driver - collision of car and bus &V873
- (c)

Do not make any assumption as to which vehicle the victim was driving. Using the Index, code:

Accident

- transport (involving injury to) (see also Table of land transport accidents) V99
- - person NEC (unknown means of transportation) (in) V99
- - - collision (between)
- - - - car (with)
- - - - - bus (traffic) V87.3

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Transportation Accidents**

---

**Part J**

b. If reported types of vehicles are not indexed under Accident, transport, person, collision, code V877 for traffic and V887 for nontraffic.

- |   |       |
|---|-------|
| I (a) Multiple injuries                     | T07   |
| (b) Bus and pick-up truck collision, driver | &V877 |
| (c)   |       |

Do not make any assumption as to which vehicle the victim was driving. Collision between bus and pick-up is not indexed under Accident, transport, person, collision. Code V877.

8. Water transport accidents (V90-V94)

The fourth character subdivision indicates the type of watercraft. Refer to Volume 1, Chapter XX, Water transport accidents for a list of the fourth character subdivisions.

- |                     |  |          |
|---------------------|--|----------|
| I (a) Drowning      | T751 &V929   |          |
| (b) Fell over-board |  |          |
| <u>MOD</u> II       |  |          |
| A                   | <table border="1"><tr><td>Accident</td></tr></table> | Accident |
| Accident            |  |          |

Code drowning, due to fall overboard. Use fourth character “9,” unspecified watercraft.

9. Air and space transport accidents (V95-V97)

For air and space transport accidents, the victim is only classified as an occupant.

Military aircraft is coded to V958, Other aircraft accidents injuring occupant, since a military aircraft is not considered to be either a private aircraft or a commercial aircraft. Where death of military personnel is reported with no specification as to whether the airplane was a commercial or private craft, code V958.

10. Miscellaneous coding instructions (V01-V99)

- a. When multiple deaths occur from the same transportation accident, all the certifications should be examined, and when appropriate, the information obtained from one may be applied to all. There may be other information available such as newspaper articles. A query should be sent to the certifier if necessary to obtain the information.
- b. When classifying accidents which involve more than one kind of transport, use the following order of precedence:

aircraft and spacecraft (V95-V97)  
 watercraft (V90-V94)  
 other modes of transport (V01-V89, V98-V99)

- I (a) Multiple fractures and internal injuries                      T029 T148
- (b) Driver of car killed when a private plane                &V973
- (c) collided with car on highway after forced landing.

Code to person on ground injured in air transport accident following above order of precedence. Refer to Index under Accident, transport, aircraft, person, on ground.

- c. When no external cause information is reported and the place of occurrence of the injury was highway, street, road(way), or alley, assign the external cause code to person injured in unspecified motor vehicle accident occurring on the highway.

- I (a) Head injuries and fracture                                      S099 S029
- MOD II    &V892

A

Accident
----------

Highway
---------

Code to person injured in unspecified motor vehicle accident, traffic since the accident occurred on the highway.

## d. Homicide, suicide or undetermined in manner of death

- (1) When “undetermined” is reported in the manner of death box with transport accidents, code the external cause as accidental unless a statement on the certificate **clearly establishes** an investigation has not determined whether accidental, homicidal, or suicidal.

	I (a) Multiple head injuries	S097
	(b) Car ran off cliff	&V489
<u>MOD</u>	II	
C	Undetermined	

Code I(a) as indexed. Code I(b) as unspecified car occupant injured in noncollision transport accident. Do not code to undetermined since there is no statement that clearly establishes an investigation resulted in an undetermined verdict.

<u>Place</u>	I (a) Multiple head injuries	S097
8	(b) Car ran off cliff	&Y32
<u>MOD</u>	II Police report indicates possible suicide or accident. Verdict	
C	pending.	
	Undetermined	

Code I(a) as indexed. Code I(b) as indexed under Crash, transport vehicle, motor NEC, undetermined since there is a statement, which clearly establishes an investigation of “undetermined intent,” is pending.

- (2) When “homicide” is reported in the manner of death box with transport accidents, code the external cause as accidental unless a statement on the certificate **clearly establishes** an intentional act of homicide occurred.

<u>Place</u>	I (a) Multiple traumatic injuries	T07
8	(b) Decedent run over by vehicle several times in parking lot	&Y03
<u>MOD</u>	II	
H	Homicide	

Code I(a) as indexed. Code I(b) as indexed under Assault, crashing of motor vehicle. Homicide is coded since there was evidence the victim was repeatedly run over.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Transportation Accidents**

**Part J**

	I	(a) Multiple traumatic injuries	T07
		(b) Struck by car while walking on side of road	&V031
<u>MOD</u>	II		
H		Homicide	Hit and run – driver left scene of accident

Code I(a) as indexed. Code pedestrian struck by car on I(b). Do not code as homicide since there is no statement of intentional homicide.

- (3) When “suicide” is reported in the manner of death box with transport accidents, code the external cause qualified as suicide.

e. Garbage /dump truck accidents

When accidents involving garbage/dump trucks are reported and information indicates the mechanism of the body or truck bed caused the injuries, assign the E-code based on reported information. Usually, the statement of events will be falling on, struck by, or caught in and external codes W20, W22, or W23 will be used.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Crushed chest	S280
4		(b) Dump truck body fell on chest	&W20
<u>MOD</u>	II		
A		Accident	Street

Code external cause to Struck (by), object, falling, W20.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Fracture skull	S029
4		(b) Struck by dump truck body	&W22
<u>MOD</u>	II		
A		Accident	Street

Code external cause to Struck (by), object, W22.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Crushed chest	S280
4		(b) Caught in compactor of garbage truck	&W23
<u>MOD</u>	II		
A		Accident	Street

Code external cause to Caught, between, objects, W23.

K. Falls1. Other fall on same level (W18)

Code W18 if other or additional information is reported about the fall such as:

Fell from standing height  
Fell moving from wheelchair to bed  
Fell striking head  
Fell striking object  
Fell to floor  
Fell while transferring from chair to bed  
Fell while walking  
Lost balance and fell

<u>Place</u>	I (a) Fracture right hip	S720
0	II Lost balance and fell to floor	&W18
<u>MOD</u>		
A	<input type="checkbox"/> Accident	<input type="checkbox"/> Home

Code external cause to other fall on same level.

2. Unspecified fall (W19)

Code W19, unspecified fall, for terms such as:

Fall  
Fell  
Fell at a place

<u>Place</u>	I (a) Fracture right hip	S720
1	II Fell at nursing home	&W19
<u>MOD</u>		
A	<input type="checkbox"/> Accident	<input type="checkbox"/> Nursing Home

Code external cause to fall, unspecified.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Natural and Environmental Factors**

---

**Part L**

L. Natural and environmental factors

1. Lightning

Code X33 only when the decedent is injured from direct contact with lightning.

Code injuries, such as stroke or shock, due to direct contact with lightning to T750.

Code burn(s) due to lightning to burn(s) (T200-T289, T300-T319).

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Shock	T750
9		(b) Struck by lightning	T750 &X33

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Burns	T300
0		(b) House fire	&X00
		(c) House struck by lightning	

When a secondary fire results from lightning, code to the fire. Do not enter a code for lightning.

2. Exposure, cold exposure and hypothermia

When exposure, cold exposure or hypothermia is reported anywhere on the record with another stated or implied external cause, code the nature of injury code (T68-T699, T758) and the E-code for the exposure, cold exposure or hypothermia (X599, X31). Do not modify the nature of injury code for exposure NOS. Ampersand the external cause code for the other event.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Exposure	T758	X599
9		(b) Intoxication with hip fx	T519	&X45 S720
	II		X590	

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Hypothermia with drowning	T68	X31	T751	&W74
9		(b)				
		(c)				

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Natural and Environmental Factors**

**Part L**

<u>Place</u> 4	I (a) Exposure (b) (c)	T758 X83
<u>MOD</u> S	II Multiple fractures	T029 &X80
	Suicide	Jumped from bridge
<u>Place</u> 9	I (a) Exposure to cold (b) (c) II MVA	T699 X31  &V892
<u>Place</u> 9	I (a) Exposure and hypothermia (b) Unconsciousness (c)	T758 X31 T68 R402
<u>MOD</u> A	II Blunt trauma to head	S099 &W18 T758
	Accident	Exposed to elements after falling and striking head
<u>Place</u> 9	I (a) Hypothermia (b) (c) II Alcohol intoxication	T68 X31  T519 &X45

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Firearms and Firearm Injuries**

**Part M**

M. Firearms and firearm injuries

1. Coding specific types of firearms

The type of firearm involved in a death is identified at the three character level. Use the following guide to identify the type of firearm:

<b>Type Firearm</b>	<b>Accidental</b>	<b>Intentional Self-harm</b>	<b>Assault</b>	<b>Undetermined Intent</b>
<b>Handgun</b> 25 Caliber 32 Caliber 38 Caliber 45 Caliber 357 Magnum 380 Caliber Pistol Revolver Saturday night special	W32	X72	X93	Y22
<b>Rifle, shotgun, larger firearm</b> 25.06 (25 ought 6) 30.6 (30 ought 6) 30/30 308 AK47 M1 (carbine) M14 M16 Machine gun Rifle (army) (hunting) (military) Shotgun (8, 10, 12, 16, 20, 410 gauge, buckshot)	W33	X73	X94	Y23
<b>Other and unspecified firearms</b> 9 mm 22 Caliber gun 30 Caliber gun Airgun BB gun Pellet gun Pellet pistol Very pistol (Flare)	W34	X74	X95	Y24

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Firearms and Firearm Injuries**

**Part M**

2. External cause code

a.

<u>When reported as</u>	<u>Code</u>
“playing with gun” NOS or “cleaning gun” NOS	external cause as accidental (W32-W34)
“playing Russian roulette” (whether or not stated suicide)	external cause as handgun accident (W32)

Place I (a) Gunshot wound of femur S711 &W34  
9 (b) Cleaning gun T141

Code as accidental since reported due to cleaning gun.

Place I (a) Gunshot wound chest S219 &W32  
9 (b) Self-inflicted while playing Russian roulette

MOD II

S

Suicide
---------

Code as handgun accident since Russian roulette is reported.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Firearms and Firearm Injuries**

**Part M**

3. Nature of injury code

a.

<u>When</u>	<u>Is reported due to</u>	<u>Code</u>
Injury NOS	any caliber bullet gun went off pulled trigger specified firearm	the nature of injury to wound

Place I (a) Injury T141  
9 (b) Rifle T141 &W33

b.

<u>When reported as</u>	<u>Code</u>
Gunshot or bullet entering and/or exiting a site	the nature of injury to wound of site(s)

Place I (a) Bullet entering chest & S219 &W34 S212  
9 (b) exiting back

c.

<u>When reported as</u>	<u>Code</u>
Bullet (to site) Gunshot (to site) Shooting, shot (to site) Shotgun blast (to site)	the nature of injury to wound (of site(s))

Place I (a) Shot in head S019 &W34  
9

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Firearms and Firearm Injuries**

---

**Part M**

4. Other firearm examples

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Gunshot wound chest	S219	&Y24
9		(b) Self-inflicted		

Code as undetermined gunshot since self-inflicted is reported and is unspecified as accidental or intentional.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Gunshot injury chest	S219	&W34	S273
9		(b) and lung			

Code the nature of injury to wound of sites and external code to accidental gunshot wound

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Child Abuse, Battering and Other Maltreatment**

---

**Part N**

N. Child abuse, battering and other maltreatment (Y070-Y079)

Code to Child battering and other maltreatment (Y070-Y079) if the age of the decedent is under 18 years and the cause of death meets one of the following criteria:

1. The certifier specifies abuse, battering, beating, or other maltreatment, even if homicide is not specified.

Male, 3 years  
I (a) Traumatic head injuries S099  
(b)  
(c)  
MOD II &Y079  
H 

Homicide	Home	Deceased had been beaten
----------	------	--------------------------

2. The certifier specifies homicide and injury or injuries with indication of more than one episode of injury, i.e., current injury coupled with old or healed injury consistent with a history of child abuse.

Male, 1-1/2 years  
I (a) Anoxic encephalopathy G931  
(b) Subdural hematoma S065  
(c) Old and recent contusions of body T910 T090  
MOD II &Y079  
H 

Homicide
----------

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Child Abuse, Battering and Other Maltreatment**

**Part N**

3. The certifier specifies homicide and multiple injuries consistent with an assumption of battering or beating, if assault by a peer, intruder, or by someone unknown to the child cannot be reasonably inferred from the reported information.

	Female, 1 year			
	I (a) Massive internal bleeding	T148		
	(b) Multiple internal injuries	T065		
	(c)			
<u>MOD</u>	II Injury occurred by child being struck	T149	&Y079	
H	<table border="1"><tr><td>Homicide</td></tr></table>	Homicide		
Homicide				

**Exception:**

Deaths at ages under 18 years for which the cause of death certification specifies homicide and an injury occurring as an isolated episode, with no indication of previous mistreatment, should not be classified to Y070-Y079. This excludes from Y070-Y079 deaths due to injuries specified to be the result of events such as shooting, stabbing, hanging, fighting, or involvement in robbery or other crime, because it cannot be assumed such injuries were inflicted simply in the course of punishment or cruel treatment.

	Female, 1 year				
<u>Place</u>	I (a) Hypovolemic shock	T794			
0	(b) Laceration of heart	S268			
	(c) Multiple stab wounds thorax	S217	&X99		
<u>MOD</u>	II Stabbed with kitchen knife by mother	T141			
H	<table border="1"><tr><td>Homicide</td></tr></table>	Homicide	<table border="1"><tr><td>Home</td></tr></table>	Home	
Homicide					
Home					

## SECTION V

# Effects of External Cause of Injury and External Causes of Injury and Poisoning Guides for Differentiating Between Effects of External Causes Classifiable to Chapters I - XVIII and Chapters XIX

### Part O

#### O. Guides for differentiating between effects of external causes classifiable to Chapters I - XVIII and Chapter XIX

Categories in Chapters I-XVIII and XIX are mutually exclusive. Where provision has been made for coding effects of an external cause to Chapters I-XVIII, do not use a nature of injury code.

The effects of external causes classifiable to Chapters I-XVIII are primarily those associated with drugs, medicaments and biological substances, surgical procedures, and other medical procedures. Refer to Section V, Part R, Complications of medical and surgical care (Y40-Y84).

A limited number of conditions that can result from other external causes, e.g., certain localized effects of fumes, vapors and nonmedicinal chemical substances and respiratory conditions from aspiration of foreign substances are also classified to Chapters I-XVIII. It is intended that Chapters I-XVIII be used to identify the localized effects and the substance be identified by the external cause code in Chapter XX.

To determine if the conditions reported due to external causes, other than drugs, medicaments, and biological substances, surgical procedures, and other medical procedures, are classified to localized effects in Chapters I-XVIII or to the nature of injury in Chapter XIX – look up the stated condition in the Index and scan the listing under this condition for qualifying terms that relate to the reported external cause. For example, to determine whether pneumonia due to aspiration of vomitus should be coded to Chapter X or to Chapter XIX, look up “Pneumonia, aspiration, due to, food (regurgitated), milk, vomit.” This determination cannot be made by looking up “Aspiration.” Where there is provision in the Index for coding a condition due to an external cause to Chapter I-XVIII, take the external cause into account if it modifies the coding.

I (a) Pneumonia	&J690
(b) Aspiration of vomitus	W78

Code Pneumonia, aspiration, due to vomit. Code “aspiration of vomitus” as an external cause code only.

I (a) Pneumonia	&J690
(b) Aspiration	W80
(c) Cancer of lung	C349

Code Pneumonia, aspiration. Code I(b) “aspiration” as an external cause code only.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Guides for Differentiating Between Effects of External  
Causes Classifiable to Chapters I - XVIII and Chapters XIX**

**Part O**

---

- |                 |       |
|-----------------|-------|
| I (a) Pneumonia | &J690 |
| (b) Asphyxia    | W80   |
| (c) Aspiration  |       |

Code Pneumonia, aspiration. Code I(b) external cause code only.

- |                      |       |
|----------------------|-------|
| I (a) Pneumonia      | &J680 |
| (b) Smoke inhalation | X00   |
| II House fire        |       |

Code Pneumonia, in (due to), fumes and vapors (J680). Code I(b) external cause code only.

- |                             |       |
|-----------------------------|-------|
| I (a) Acute pulmonary edema | &J681 |
| (b) Inhaled gasoline fumes  | X46   |

Code Edema, pulmonary, acute, due to, chemicals fumes or vapors (J681). Code I(b) external cause code only.

- |              |                           |           |
|--------------|---------------------------|-----------|
| <u>Place</u> | I (a) Pneumonia           | J189      |
| 9            | (b) Cardiac arrest        | I469      |
|              | (c) Aspiration of vomitus | T179 &W78 |

Code each entity as indexed. Do not code the pneumonia on I(a) due to aspiration of vomitus since it is reported due to another condition.

## SECTION V

## Effects of External Cause of Injury and External Causes of Injury and Poisoning Threats to Breathing

### Part P

#### P. Threats to breathing

Certain effects of external causes can be classified to more than one nature of injury code depending on the type of external cause. Some of these effects are “anoxia,” “asphyxia,” “aspiration,” “choking,” “compression of neck,” “obstruction of a site,” “strangulation,” “stricture of neck,” and “suffocation.”

The most frequently reported external causes which result in these effects are “aspiration, ingestion, and inhalation of objects and substances,” “drowning,” “fires,” “fumes, gases and vapors,” “hanging,” “mechanical strangulation and suffocation,” and “submersion.”

The following pages contain tables that are used as guides in coding these types of external causes and effects.

In general, if the specific external cause is not in Tables 1-5, it will most likely be in Table 6, which contains the most frequently reported external causes which result in asphyxia, suffocation, etc. If not in any of the tables, code the effect as indexed.

Table	Title
Table 1	Drowning and submersion
Table 2	*Hanging and mechanical strangulation (by external means)
Table 3	Fires (includes burns, gases, fumes in association with burns and fires)
Table 4	Ingestion, inhalation of gases, fumes, vapors (without fires, burns)
Table 5	Compression chest, crushed chest by external means
Table 6	Aspiration NOS, ingestion NOS, inhalation NOS or aspiration, ingestion, inhalation of substances or objects (W78, W79, W80)

**\*NOTE:** Interpret mechanical strangulation as strangulation caused by external means to the exterior of the body.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Threats to Breathing**

**Part P**

**Table 1.** Drowning and submersion

<b>Instruction</b>	<b>When</b>	<b>Is reported due to</b>	<b>Code</b>
1	anoxia asphyxia strangulation suffocation	drowning submersion	upper line T751 and the appropriate external cause code.  lower line T751 only.

<b>Instruction</b>	<b>When</b>	<b>Is reported on the same line with</b>	<b>Code</b>
2	anoxia asphyxia strangulation suffocation	drowning submersion	T751 and the appropriate external cause code.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Threats to Breathing**

**Part P**

**Table 1.** Drowning and submersion

<b>Examples</b>		<b>Corresponding Table and Instruction</b>
1. <u>Place</u> 8 <u>MOD</u> A	I (a) Asphyxia (b) Drowning (c) II <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block; margin-right: 10px;">Accident</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">Drowned while swimming in river</div>	T751 &W69 T751 T751 1.1
<u>MOD</u> A	I (a) Asphyxia (b) Strangulation (c) Drowning II <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block; margin-right: 10px;">Accident</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block; margin-right: 10px;">Lake</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">Boat overturned</div>	T751 &V909 T751 T751 1.1
3. <u>Place</u> 8 <u>MOD</u> A	I (a) Anoxia (b) Drowning (c) II <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block; margin-right: 10px;">Accident</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">Fell into lake</div>	T751 &W70 T751 1.1
4. <u>Place</u> 9 <u>MOD</u> A	I (a) Drowning – asphyxia (b) (c) II <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block; margin-right: 10px;">Accident</div>	T751 &W74 1.2

## SECTION V

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Threats to Breathing**

## Part P

**Table 2.** Hanging and mechanical strangulation (by external means)

<b>Instruction</b>	<b>When</b>	<b>Is reported due to</b>	<b>Code</b>
1	asphyxia strangulation suffocation	hanging mechanical strangulation (by external means) compression of neck	upper line T71 and the appropriate external cause code.  lower line T71 only.

<b>Instruction</b>	<b>When</b>	<b>Is reported on the record with</b>	<b>Code</b>
2	asphyxia strangulation suffocation	hanging mechanical strangulation (by external means) compression of neck	the asphyxia, strangulation, suffocation, T71 followed by the appropriate external cause code.  T71 only where the hanging, mechanical strangulation, compression of neck is reported.

<b>Instruction</b>	<b>When</b>	<b>Is reported due to</b>	<b>Which is reported due to</b>	<b>Code</b>
3	asphyxia strangulation suffocation	asphyxia strangulation suffocation	the external means of the mechanical strangulation (such as: ligature, rope around neck, sheet )	uppermost line to T71 and the appropriate external cause code.  the next lower line to T71.  lower line blank.

<b>Instruction</b>	<b>When</b>	<b>Is reported due to</b>	<b>Code</b>
4	compression of neck stricture of neck	hanging mechanical strangulation (by external means) suffocation	upper line T71 only.  lower line T71 and the appropriate external cause code.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Threats to Breathing**

**Part P**

**Table 2.** Hanging and mechanical strangulation (by external means)

<b>Examples</b>		<b>Corresponding Table and Instruction</b>	
1. <u>Place</u> 0 <u>MOD</u> S	I (a) Asphyxia (b) Hanging (c) II Suicide      Home	T71 &X70 T71	2.1
2. <u>Place</u> 0 <u>MOD</u> S	I (a) Aspiration of vomitus (b) Strangulation (c) Hanging II Suicide      Home      Hanged self	T179 W78 T71 &X70 T71 T71	2.1 and 6.9
3.	I (a) Asphyxia (b) Compression of neck (c) Auto accident II	T71 &V499 T71	2.1
4. <u>Place</u> 9 <u>MOD</u> S	I (a) Suffocation by hanging (b) (c) II Suicide      Hanging by neck	T71 &X70 T71	2.2
5. <u>Place</u> 9	I (a) Asphyxia (b) Suffocation (c) Crib sheet II	T71 &W75 T71	2.3
6. <u>Place</u> 9 <u>MOD</u> H	I (a) Compression of neck (b) Hanging (c) II Homicide      Hanging	T71 T71 &X91 T71	2.4

**SECTION V****Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Threats to Breathing****Part P****Table 2.** Hanging and mechanical strangulation (by external means)

<b>Instruction</b>	<b>When</b>	<b>Is reported on the record with</b>	<b>Code</b>
5	compression of neck stricture of neck	hanging mechanical strangulation (by external means) suffocation	compression of neck, stricture of neck to T71 only.  T71 followed by the appropriate external cause code for the hanging, mechanical strangulation, suffocation.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Threats to Breathing**

**Part P**

**Table 2.** Hanging and mechanical strangulation (by external means)

<b>Examples</b>		<b>Corresponding Table and Instruction</b>
7. <u>Place</u> 9 <u>MOD</u> H	I (a) Compression of neck (b) (c) II Strangulation by cord around neck	T71  T71 & X91
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; display: inline-block;">Homicide</div>		2.5

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Threats to Breathing**

**Part P**

**Table 3.** Fires (includes burns, gases, fumes in association with burns and fires)

<b>Instruction</b>	<b>When</b>	<b>Is reported due to</b>	<b>Code</b>
1	asphyxia suffocation	ingestion, inhalation       with  mention of a fire (specified)	of gas, fumes, or vapors (carbon monoxide, products of combustion, smoke)   the asphyxia, suffocation to the nature of injury code for the gas, fumes, vapor and the appropriate external cause code for the fire where required.  lower line to the appropriate nature of injury code for the gas, fumes, vapor.

<b>Instruction</b>	<b>When</b>	<b>Is reported on the record with</b>	<b>Code</b>
2	asphyxia suffocation	ingestion, inhalation       with  mention of a fire (specified)	of gas, fumes, or vapors (carbon monoxide, products of combustion, smoke)   the asphyxia, suffocation to the nature of injury code for the gas, fumes, vapor and the appropriate external cause code for the fire where required.  the appropriate nature of injury code for the gas, fumes, vapor where reported.

<b>Instruction</b>	<b>When</b>	<b>Is reported due to</b>	<b>Code</b>
3	asphyxia suffocation	burns NOS (any degree) (any percentage) (any site)	upper line T300 and the appropriate external cause code.  lower line as indexed.

<b>Instruction</b>	<b>When</b>	<b>Is reported due to</b>	<b>Code</b>
4	asphyxia suffocation	fire NOS specified fire	upper line T300 and the appropriate external cause code.  lower line blank.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Threats to Breathing**

**Part P**

**Table 3.** Fires (includes burns, gases, fumes in association with burns and fires)

<b>Examples</b>		<b>Corresponding Table and Instruction</b>
1. <u>Place</u> 0 <u>MOD</u> A	I (a) Suffocation T599 &X00 (b) Inhalation of products of combustion T599 (c) II T599 <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin-top: 10px;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">Accident</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">Inhaled fumes in house fire</div> </div>	3.1
2. <u>Place</u> 9 <u>MOD</u> A	I (a) Suffocation T598 &X09 (b) Smoke inhalation T598 (c) Fire II <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin-top: 10px;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">Accident</div> </div>	3.1
3. <u>Place</u> 0 <u>MOD</u> A	I (a) Asphyxia – carbon monoxide T58 &X00 (b) (c) II <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin-top: 10px;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">Accident</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">Home</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">House fire</div> </div>	3.2
4. <u>Place</u> 0 <u>MOD</u> A	I (a) Asphyxia T300 &X04 (b) Burns of chest and face T210 T200 (c) II <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin-top: 10px;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">Accident</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">Home</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">Ignition of kerosene</div> </div>	3.3
5. <u>Place</u> 9 <u>MOD</u> A	I (a) Suffocation T300 &X00 (b) 3° burns T303 (c) II <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin-top: 10px;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">Accident</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">Burning Bldg.</div> </div>	3.3

**SECTION V****Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Threats to Breathing****Part P****Table 3.** Fires (includes burns, gases, fumes in association with burns and fires)

<b>Instruction</b>	<b>When</b>	<b>Is reported on the record with</b>	<b>Code</b>
5	asphyxia suffocation	fire NOS specified fire	the asphyxia, suffocation T300, followed by the appropriate external cause code for the fire.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Threats to Breathing**

**Part P**

**Table 3.** Fires (includes burns, gases, fumes in association with burns and fires)

<b>Example</b>	<b>Corresponding Table and Instruction</b>
6. <u>Place</u> I (a) Asphyxia, fire in house T300 &X00 0 (b) (c) II	3.5

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Threats to Breathing**

**Part P**

**Table 4.** Ingestion, inhalation of gases, fumes, vapors (without fires, burns)

<b>Instruction</b>	<b>When</b>	<b>Is reported due to</b>	<b>Code</b>
1	asphyxia suffocation	ingestion inhalation <span style="font-size: 2em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span> of gas, fumes, or vapors	upper line to the appropriate nature of injury code for the gas, fumes, or vapor and the appropriate external cause code.  lower line to the appropriate nature of injury code for the gas, fumes, or vapor.

<b>Instruction</b>	<b>When</b>	<b>Is reported on the same line with</b>	<b>Code</b>
2	asphyxia suffocation	ingestion inhalation <span style="font-size: 2em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span> of gas, fumes, or vapors	the appropriate nature of injury code for the gas, fumes, or vapor and the appropriate external cause code.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Threats to Breathing**

**Part P**

**Table 4.** Ingestion, inhalation of gases, fumes, vapors (without fires, burns)

<b>Examples</b>	<b>Corresponding Table and Instruction</b>
<p>1. <u>Place</u> I (a) Asphyxia T58 &amp;X67  0 (b) Inhalation of carbon monoxide T58  <u>MOD</u> (c)  S II T58</p> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin-top: 10px;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px 10px;">Suicide</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px 10px;">Home</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px 10px;">Inhaled car exhaust fumes in garage</div> </div>	4.1
<p>2. <u>Place</u> I (a) Suffocation by inhalation T598 &amp;X47  0 (b) of propane gas  <u>MOD</u> (c)  A II T598</p> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin-top: 10px;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px 10px;">Accident</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px 10px;">Home</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px 10px;">Inhaled propane gas</div> </div>	4.2

**SECTION V****Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Threats to Breathing****Part P****Table 5.** Compression chest, crushed chest by external means

<b>Instruction</b>	<b>When</b>	<b>Is reported due to</b>	<b>Code</b>
1	asphyxia suffocation	crushed chest	upper line S280 plus the appropriate external cause code.  lower line S280.

<b>Instruction</b>	<b>When</b>	<b>Is reported due to</b>	<b>Code</b>
2	asphyxia suffocation	compression chest	upper line S299 plus the appropriate external cause code.  lower line S299.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Threats to Breathing**

**Part P**

**Table 5.** Compression chest, crushed chest by external means

<b>Examples</b>		<b>Corresponding Table and Instruction</b>
1.	<p>I (a) Asphyxia S280 &amp;V892                      (b) Crushed chest S280                      (c) MVA</p> <p><u>MOD</u> A II</p> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; align-items: center;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 2px;">Accident</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 2px;">Street</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 2px;">MVA</div> </div>	5.1
2.	<p><u>Place</u> 7 I (a) Suffocation S299 &amp;W30                      (b) Compression chest S299                      (c) Tractor accident</p> <p><u>MOD</u> A II</p> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; align-items: center;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 2px;">Accident</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 2px;">Farm</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 2px;">Tractor overturned on victim</div> </div>	5.2

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Threats to Breathing**

**Part P**

**Table 6.** Aspiration NOS, ingestion NOS, inhalation NOS, or aspiration, ingestion, inhalation of substances or objects (W78, W79, W80)

**EXCLUDES:** Ingestion, inhalation of drugs and poisonous substances

Instruction	When	Is reported due to	Code
1	asphyxia aspiration choking obstruction of a site occlusion of a site strangulation suffocation	aspiration NOS ingestion NOS inhalation NOS  or  aspiration ingestion inhalation	upper line to T17 plus appropriate fourth character and the appropriate external cause code (W78, W79, W80).  lower line to T17 with appropriate fourth character.
2	asphyxia aspiration choking obstruction of a site occlusion of a site strangulation suffocation	foreign body in a site (such as: blood, food, gum, medicine, mucus, vomitus)	upper line to T17 plus appropriate fourth character and the appropriate external cause code (W78, W79, W80).  lower line to T17 with appropriate fourth character.
3	asphyxia aspiration choking obstruction of a site occlusion of a site strangulation suffocation	foreign body NOS (such as: blood, food, gum, medicine, mucus, vomitus)	upper line to T17 plus appropriate fourth character and the appropriate external cause code (W78, W79, W80).  lower line blank.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Threats to Breathing**

**Part P**

**Table 6.** Aspiration NOS, ingestion NOS, inhalation NOS, or aspiration, ingestion, inhalation of substances or objects (W78, W79, W80)

**EXCLUDES:** Ingestion, inhalation of drugs and poisonous substances

<b>Examples</b>		<b>Corresponding Table and Instruction</b>
1. <u>Place</u> 9	I (a) Strangulation (b) Aspiration of food (c) II	T179 &W79 T179 6.1
2. <u>Place</u> 9	I (a) Obstruction of pharynx (b) Bolus of meat in throat (c) II	T172 &W79 T172 6.2
3. <u>Place</u> 9	I (a) Obstruction of trachea (b) Bolus of meat (c) II	T174 &W79 6.3
4. <u>Place</u> 9	I (a) Asphyxia (b) Aspiration (c) Vomitus II	T179 &W78 T179 6.1 and 6.3

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Threats to Breathing**

**Part P**

**Table 6.** Aspiration NOS, ingestion NOS, inhalation NOS, or aspiration, ingestion, inhalation of substances or objects (W78, W79, W80)

**EXCLUDES:** Ingestion, inhalation of drugs and poisonous substances

<b>Instruction</b>	<b>When</b>	<b>Is reported on the same line with</b>	<b>Code</b>
4	asphyxia aspiration choking obstruction of a site occlusion of a site strangulation suffocation	aspiration NOS ingestion NOS inhalation NOS  or aspiration ingestion inhalation } of substances or objects	on the same line, T17 with appropriate fourth character and the appropriate external cause code (W78, W79, W80).
5	asphyxia aspiration choking obstruction of a site occlusion of a site strangulation suffocation	foreign body in a site (such as: blood, food, gum, medicine, mucus, vomitus)	on the same line, T17 with appropriate fourth character and the appropriate external cause code (W78, W79, W80).
6	asphyxia aspiration choking obstruction of a site occlusion of a site strangulation suffocation	foreign body NOS (such as: blood, food, gum, medicine, mucus, vomitus)	on the same line, T17 with appropriate fourth character and the appropriate external cause code (W78, W79, W80).

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Threats to Breathing**

**Part P**

**Table 6.** Aspiration NOS, ingestion NOS, inhalation NOS, or aspiration, ingestion, inhalation of substances or objects (W78, W79, W80)

**EXCLUDES:** Ingestion, inhalation of drugs and poisonous substances

<b>Examples</b>			<b>Corresponding Table and Instruction</b>		
5. <u>Place</u> 9	I  II	(a) Asphyxia by aspiration of vomitus (b) (c)	T179	&W78	6.4
6. <u>Place</u> 9	I  II	(a) Choked by peanut obstructing (b) trachea (c)	T174	&W79	6.5
7. <u>Place</u> 9	I  II	(a) Choked on chicken bone (b) (c)	T179	&W79	6.6
8. <u>Place</u> 9	I  II	(a) Obstruction airway by bolus of food (b) (c)	T179	&W79	6.6

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Threats to Breathing**

**Part P**

**Table 6.** Aspiration NOS, ingestion NOS, inhalation NOS, or aspiration, ingestion, inhalation of substances or objects (W78, W79, W80)

**EXCLUDES:** Ingestion, inhalation of drugs and poisonous substances

<b>Instruction</b>	<b>When</b>	<b>Is reported due to</b>	<b>Code</b>
7	aspiration NOS aspiration of substances strangulation NOS strangulation by substances	a disease	upper line T17 plus appropriate fourth character and the appropriate W78, W79, W80 if not previously coded.  lower line as indexed.
8	aspiration NOS	vomiting	upper line T179, W78.  lower line R11.
9	aspiration NOS ingestion NOS inhalation NOS  or aspiration } of ingestion } substances inhalation } or objects	injuries (other than those classified to T17-) and/or an external cause (other than W78, W79, W80)	upper line T17 plus appropriate fourth character. Also, code the appropriate W78, W79, W80 if not previously coded.  lower line as indexed.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Threats to Breathing**

**Part P**

**Table 6.** Aspiration NOS, ingestion NOS, inhalation NOS, or aspiration, ingestion, inhalation of substances or objects (W78, W79, W80)

**EXCLUDES:** Ingestion, inhalation of drugs and poisonous substances

<b>Examples</b>					<b>Corresponding Table and Instruction</b>
9.	<u>Place</u> 9	I	(a) Aspiration (b) C.V.A (c) II	T179 &W80 I64	6.7
10.	<u>Place</u> 9	I	(a) Aspiration (b) Vomiting (c) II	T179 &W78 R11	6.8
11.	<u>Place</u> 9	I	(a) Choked (b) Aspiration of blood (c) Crushed chest II Car vs. Pedestrian	T179 W80 T179 S280 &V031	6.1 and 6.9
12.	<u>Place</u> 9 <u>MOD</u> A	I	(a) Aspiration (b) Drowning (c) II <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">Accident</div>	T179 W80 T751 &W74	6.9

Q. Poisoning

When poisoning (any) is reported, code nature of injury code and external cause code for the substance.

When poisoning by fumes, gas, liquids, or solids is reported, refer to Index under "Poisoning (acute)" to determine the nature of injury code for the substance.

To determine the external cause code when a poisonous substance is ingested, inhaled, injected, or taken, refer to the description of such circumstances (acts) for example, Ingestion, Inhalation, or Took.

When a condition is reported due to poisoning and the Index provides a code for the condition qualified as "toxic," use this code. If the Index does not provide a code for the condition qualified as "toxic," code the condition as indexed.

1. Poisoning by substances other than drugs

Assume poisoning (self- inflicted) by a substance to be accidental unless otherwise indicated.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Aplastic anemia	D612
9		(b) Benzene poisoning	T521 &X46

Code I(a) Anemia, aplastic, toxic. Code I(b) to nature of injury and external cause code for benzene poisoning from Table of Drugs and Chemicals.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Toxic poisoning	T659 &X46
9		(b) Drank turpentine	T528

Code I(a), nature of injury code for poison NOS and the most specific external cause code (turpentine) taking into account the entire certificate. Code nature of injury for turpentine on I(b).

a. Carbon monoxide poisoning

Code carbon monoxide poisoning from motor vehicle exhaust gas to noncollision motor vehicle accident (traffic) according to type of motor vehicle involved unless there is indication the motor vehicle was not in transit. Consider statements of “sleeping in car,” “sitting in parked car,” “in parked car” or place stated as “garage” to indicate the motor vehicle was “not in transit.” Assume “not in transit” in self-harm (intentional) and self-inflicted cases.

I	(a) Carbon monoxide poisoning	T58 &V892
	(b)	
	(c)	
II	Motor vehicle exhaust gas	T58

Code I(a) nature of injury for carbon monoxide and most specific external cause. Code external cause to person injured in unspecified motor vehicle accident, traffic. Refer to Table of land transport accidents under Victim and mode of transport. Select occupant of motor vehicle (traffic), noncollision transport accident. Code nature of injury for exhaust gas in Part II.

<u>Place</u>	I (a) Poisoned by carbon monoxide	T58 &X47
9	II Sitting in parked car	

Code I(a) nature of injury and external cause for carbon monoxide from Table of drugs and chemicals. The external cause includes poisoning by gas, motor exhaust, not in transit.

<u>Place</u>	I (a) Carbon monoxide inhalation	T58 &X67
5	II Found in garage. Suicide.	

Code I(a) nature of injury and external cause for carbon monoxide from Table of drugs and chemicals. The external cause includes intentional self-harm poisoning by gas, motor exhaust, not in transit.

b. Inhalation and sniffing sprays and aerosol substances

When inhalation of sprays, aerosol substances, etc. is reported, code to the appropriate accidental poisoning category for the external cause.

**Exceptions:**

“Glue sniffing” and “cocaine sniffing” are indexed to mental and behavioral disorders due to psychoactive substance use (F181, F142).

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Toxicity	T659	&X46		
	0	(b) Inhalation of aerosol substance	T659			
		(c)				
<u>MOD</u>	II	Breathed “PAM” (freon) in plastic bag	T535			
A		<table border="1"> <tr> <td>Accident</td> <td>Home</td> </tr> </table>	Accident	Home		
Accident	Home					

Code I(a) nature of injury code for toxicity as indexed. Code external cause to accidental inhalation of freon gas or spray (X46), the specific substance indicated by the certifier. Code nature of injury for aerosol on I(b) and freon in Part II.

c. Intoxication by certain substances or toxic poisoning due to disease

When ammonia intoxication ( $\text{NH}_3$ ), carbon dioxide intoxication ( $\text{CO}_2$ ), or toxic poisoning is reported due to a disease, **do not** code to poisoning. When due to a disease, code ammonia intoxication to R798, carbon dioxide intoxication to R068, and toxic poisoning to R688.

I	(a)	Ammonia intoxication	R798
	(b)	Cirrhosis of liver	K746

Code I(a) as indexed, Intoxication, ammonia, due to disease (R798).

I	(a)	Carbon dioxide intoxication	R068
	(b)	Chronic pulmonary emphysema	J439

Code I(a) as indexed, Intoxication, carbon dioxide, due to disease (R068).

I	(a)	Toxic poisoning	R688
	(b)	Gastroenteritis	A099

Code I(a) as indexed, Poisoning, toxic, from a disease (R688).

d. Condition qualified as “toxic” with poisoning reported

- (1) When a condition is qualified as “toxic” and there is indication of poisoning on the certificate, code the external cause code for the poisoning where the “toxic” is reported, followed by the condition code. If the Classification provides a code for the condition qualified as “toxic,” use this code. If no provision is made for qualifying the condition as toxic, code to the unspecified code for the condition.

<u>Place</u>	I (a) Toxic nephritis	&X48 N144
9	II Organophosphate poisoning, accidental	T600

Code most specific external cause code on I(a) where toxic is reported followed by condition code for toxic nephritis as indexed. Code nature of injury for organophosphate in Part II.

<u>Place</u>	I (a) Toxic GI hemorrhage	&X49 K922
9	(b) Carbolic acid	T540

Code most specific external cause code on I(a) where toxic is reported followed by condition code for GI hemorrhage as indexed. The Classification does not provide a code for GI hemorrhage qualified as toxic. Code nature of injury for carbolic acid on I(b).

<u>Place</u>	I (a) Toxic diarrhea	&X48 K521
9	II Rat poison	T604

Code most specific external cause code on I(a) where toxic is reported followed by condition code for toxic diarrhea as indexed. Code nature of injury for rat poison in Part II.

- (2) When a condition is qualified as “toxic” and there is no indication of poisoning on the certificate, code the condition as indexed to the unspecified code.

I (a) Toxic anemia	D612
--------------------	------

Code toxic anemia as indexed since there is no indication of poisoning on the certificate.

2. Poisoning by drugs

- a. When the following statements are reported, see Table of Drugs and Chemicals and code as accidental poisoning unless otherwise indicated.

Interpret all these statements to mean poisoning by drug and code as poisoning whether or not the drug was given in treatment:

Drug taken inadvertently  
Lethal (amount) (dose) (quantity) of a drug  
Overdose of drug  
Poisoning by a drug  
Toxic effects of a drug  
Toxic reaction to a drug  
Toxicity (of a site) by a drug  
Wrong dose taken accidentally  
Wrong drug given in error

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Cardiac arrest	I469
9		(b) Digitalis toxicity	T460 &X44
		(c) Congestive heart failure	I500

Code digitalis toxicity to digitalis poisoning. Code nature of injury and external cause code for digitalis poisoning on I(b). Do not ampersand a disease condition when poisoning from a drug occurs while the drug is being administered for medical reasons.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Shock	R578
9		(b) Insulin overdose	T383 &X44
		(c) Diabetes	E149

Code I(a) shock, toxic since reported due to poisoning. Code insulin overdose to insulin poisoning. Code nature of injury and external cause code for insulin poisoning on I(b). Do not ampersand a disease condition when poisoning from a drug occurs while the drug is being administered for medical reasons.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Poisoning**

**Part Q**

---

- b. Interpret the term “intoxication by drug” to mean poisoning by drug unless indicated or stated to be due to drug therapy or as a result of treatment for a condition (refer to Section V, Part R, 1, (6), “Intoxication by drug” due to drug therapy).

<u>Place</u> 9	I (a) Respiratory failure	J969
	(b) Drug intoxication	T509 &X44
	II Ingested undetermined amount of drugs	T509

Code “drug intoxication” to poisoning when there is no indication the drug was given for therapy. Code I(b) nature of injury and external cause code for drug poisoning. Code nature of injury code for drug NOS in Part II.

- c. When poisoning by drug NOS is reported in Part I and a specified drug is reported in Part II, code the external cause code to the specified drug.

<u>Place</u> 9	I (a) Took overdose of drug	T509 &X41
	II Overdose of barbiturates	T423

Code “took overdose of drug” as accidental unless otherwise specified. Code I(a) nature of injury for drug NOS and external cause code to the specified drug reported in Part II. Code nature of injury for barbiturates in Part II.

## Part Q

- d. When a condition is qualified as “toxic” or “drug induced” and there is indication of drug poisoning on the certificate, code the external cause code for the drug poisoning where the “toxic” or “drug induced” is reported, followed by the condition code. If the Classification provides a code for the condition qualified as “toxic” or “drug induced,” use this code. If no provision is made for qualifying the condition as “toxic” or “drug induced,” whichever applies, code to the unspecified code for the condition. Code the nature of injury code for poisoning by the specified drug.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a)	Toxic hemolytic anemia	&X41	D594
	9		(b) Levodopa toxicity		T428

Code most specific external cause on I(a) where toxic is reported followed by condition code for toxic hemolytic anemia as indexed. Code nature of injury for levodopa on I(b).

When a condition is qualified as “toxic” and there is no indication of drug poisoning on the certificate, code the condition as indexed.

When a condition is qualified as “drug induced” and there is no mention of drug poisoning on the certificate, code as a complication of drug therapy (refer to Section V, Part R, 1, (5), “Drug induced” complications).

- e. Poisoning by combination of drugs (X40-X44)

(1) When poisoning by a combination of drugs is stated or indicated to be accidental, intentional self-harm (suicide), or undetermined code as follows:

- (a) When poisoning by a combination of drugs classified to the same external cause code is reported, use that external cause code.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a)	Doxepin and barbiturate overdose	T430	&X41	T423
	9					

Code external cause code to X41 since both doxepin and barbiturates are indexed to this code. Code nature of injury for each drug reported.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a)	Doxepin and prozac overdose	T430	&X61	T432
	9					
<u>MOD</u>			Suicide			
S						

Code external cause code to X61 since both doxepin and prozac are indexed to this code. Code nature of injury for each drug reported.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Poisoning**

**Part Q**

- (b) When poisoning from a single drug is reported in Part I with a combination of drugs in Part II, code the external cause code for the drug reported in Part I. Code the nature of injury for each drug reported.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Acute barbiturate intoxication	T423	&X41
9	II	Took unknown amount of	T423	T390
<u>MOD</u>		barbiturates and aspirin		

A

Accident
----------

Code external cause code to X41, accidental poisoning by barbiturates, the single drug reported in Part I. Code nature of injury for barbiturates on I(a) and for barbiturates and aspirin in Part II.

- (c) When poisoning by a combination of drugs classified to different external cause codes is reported and (b) does not apply, use the following external cause codes when the manner of death is reported as:

Accident ----- Code X44, Accidental poisoning by and exposure to other and unspecified drugs, medicaments and biological substances.

Intentional self-harm --- Code X64, Intentional self-poisoning by (Suicide) and exposure to other and unspecified drugs, medicaments and biological substances.

Undetermined ----- Code Y14, Poisoning by and exposure to other and unspecified drugs, medicaments and biological substances, undetermined intent.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Drug intoxication	T509	&X44
9		(b) Digitalis, cocaine	T460	T405

The external cause code for accidental poisoning by digitalis is X44 and for cocaine is X42. Since the drugs are assigned to different external cause codes, code X44, Accidental poisoning by and exposure to other and unspecified drugs, medicaments and biological substances. Code nature of injury for each drug reported.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Poisoning**

**Part Q**

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Drug toxicity	T509	&X64
9		(b) Overdose of salicylates	T390	T423
		(c) and seconal		
<u>MOD</u>	II	Overdose of drugs	T509	
S		Suicide		

The external cause code for intentional self-harm (suicide) by salicylates is X60 and for seconal, X61. Since the drugs are assigned to different external cause codes, code X64, Intentional self poisoning by and exposure to other and unspecified drugs, medicaments and biological substances. Code nature of injury for each drug reported.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Darvon and promazine	T404	&Y14	T433
9		(b) intoxication			
<u>MOD</u>	II	Drug intoxication	T509		
C		Undetermined			

The external cause code for poisoning of undetermined intent by darvon is Y12 and for promazine, Y11. Since the drugs are assigned to different external cause codes, code Y14, Poisoning by and exposure to other and unspecified drugs, medicaments and biological substances, undetermined intent. Code nature of injury for each drug reported.

3. Percentage of drug(s) in blood

When a percentage (%) of any drug(s) in the blood is reported, code the nature of injury code for the drug if there is mention of drug poisoning elsewhere on the record.

When a complication is reported due to a percentage (%) of any drug(s), code as a complication of drug therapy unless otherwise indicated.

When a percentage (%) of any drug(s) in the blood is reported without mention of drug poisoning or a complication, do not enter a code for the drug.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Gunshot wound brain	S069	&X74
9	II	.05 mg. barbiturates in blood		
<u>MOD</u>		Suicide		
S				

Since there is no mention of poisoning or a complication of the barbiturates, **do not** enter a code for the percentage of drug in the blood.

4. Poisoning by alcohol and drugs

When alcoholism or alcohol poisoning (any F10-, R780, R826, R893, T510-T519) is reported in Part I with drug poisoning in Part I, code the alcohol to the appropriate code (F10-, R780, R826, R893, T510-T519), the nature of injury code for the drug and code the appropriate external cause code for the drug preceded by an ampersand. If alcohol poisoning is reported, code the external cause code for alcohol also, but do not precede this code with an ampersand. Interpret the following statements to mean poisoning by alcohol and drugs and code the appropriate E-code for alcohol poisoning:

Alcohol and drug interaction  
Alcohol and drug synergism  
Combination of alcohol and drugs  
Combined action alcohol and drugs  
Combined effects of alcohol and drugs  
Mixed effects of alcohol and drugs  
Synergistic effects of alcohol and drugs

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Combined effects of alcohol	T519	X45	T509	&X44
	9	(b) and drugs				
<u>MOD</u>	II	Ingested alcohol and drugs	F109	T509		
A		Accident				

Interpret I(a) as alcohol poisoning and drug poisoning. Code the nature of injury and external cause for the alcohol and drugs. Precede the E-code for the drugs with an ampersand. In Part II, code the ingested alcohol as indexed. Code nature of injury for drugs as last entry.

<u>Place</u>	I	(a) Alcohol ingestion	F109		
	9	(b) Barbiturate intoxication	T423	&X41	

Code I(a) alcohol ingestion as indexed and code the nature of injury and external cause for barbiturate intoxication on I(b).

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Poisoning**

**Part Q**

<u>Place</u>	I (a) Alcoholism	F102
9	II Alcohol and barbiturate intoxication	T519 X45 T423 &X41
<u>MOD</u>		

A

Accident

Code alcoholism as indexed in Part I. Code the nature of injury and external cause for the alcohol and barbiturate intoxication in Part II. Precede the E-code for the drug with an ampersand.

<u>Place</u>	I (a) Barbiturate toxicity	T423 &X61
9	II Barbiturate and alcohol intoxication	T423 T519 X65
<u>MOD</u>		

S

Suicide

Code I(a) nature of injury for barbiturate T423 and external cause code X61 for suicidal barbiturate toxicity. Precede the E-code for barbiturate with an ampersand. Code the nature of injury and external cause for barbiturate and alcohol intoxication as indexed Part II.

<u>Place</u>	I (a) Poisoning by alcohol	T519 &X45
9	II Toxic levels of heroin and flunitrazepam	T401 X44 T424

Code I (a) nature of injury for alcohol, T519 and external cause X45. Precede the E-code for alcohol with an ampersand. Code the nature of injury and external cause for the heroin and flunitrazepam in Part II.



## SECTION V

## Effects of External Cause of Injury and External Causes of Injury and Poisoning Complications of Medical and Surgical Care

---

### Part R:

#### R. Complications of medical and surgical care (Y40-Y84)

Code any complication, abnormal reaction, misadventure to patient, or other adverse effect that occurred as a result of or during medical care except obstetrical procedures to the appropriate category in Chapters I-XIX, but take into account the medical care if it modifies the code assignment. Assign the appropriate external cause (E-code) pertaining to the medical care regardless of whether the complication is classified to Chapters I-XVIII or to Chapter XIX.

The E-code distinguishes between:

1. Drugs, medicaments and biological substances causing adverse effects in therapeutic use (Y40-Y59).
2. Misadventures to patients during surgical and medical care (Y60-Y69).
3. Surgical and other medical procedures as the cause of abnormal reaction of the patient, or of later complication, without mention of misadventure at the time of the procedure (Y83-Y84).

## SECTION V

## Effects of External Cause of Injury and External Causes of Injury and Poisoning Complications of Medical and Surgical Care

### Part R

#### Use of ampersand (More than one instruction may apply)

1. Always precede the condition that necessitated the medical or surgical care with an ampersand the first time it is reported. Generally, the first condition on the lowest used line will be the reason for medical care.

I	(a) Pneumonia	J958
	(b) Surgery	Y839
	(c) Pulmonary hemorrhage	R048
	(d) Lung cancer	&C349

2. Precede the external cause (Y40-Y84) with an ampersand **if the complication** is classified to Chapter XIX (T80-T88).

I	(a) Pulmonary embolism	T817
	(b) Surgery	&Y839

3. Precede the first complication with an ampersand **if the complication** is classified to Chapter I-XVIII and the condition requiring medical or surgical care is **NOT** reported.

I	(a) Renal failure	&N19
	(b) Drug therapy	Y579

4. If the medical or surgical care was administered for an injury, precede the code for the external cause of the injury with an ampersand.

	I	(a) Pneumonia	J958
<u>Place</u>		(b) Surgery	Y839
9		(c) Fracture of hip	S720
		(d) Fall	&W19

5. If two or more conditions for which the medical or surgical care could be administered are reported and the reason for treatment cannot be determined, precede the first condition with an ampersand.

I	(a) Pneumonia	J958
	(b) Surgery	Y839
II	Lung cancer, gastric ulcer	&C349 K259

6. If the medical care was administered for diagnostic purposes, precede the code for the condition that was found or confirmed by the diagnostic finding with an ampersand the first time it is reported.

I	(a) Cerebral edema	G978
	(b) Cerebral arteriogram	Y848
	(c) Brain tumor	&D432

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

**Part R**

1. Drugs, medicaments and biological substances causing adverse effects in therapeutic use (Y40-Y59)

a. Complications of drugs

Although almost any condition reported due to drug therapy is regarded as a complication, there are a few diseases that are not considered complications. The drug therapy (Y40-Y59) is not coded when there is no evidence of a complication.

Interpret “due to drug therapy” as a condition(s) on an upper line with drug therapy as the first condition on the next lower line.

(1) The following are not regarded as complications of drug therapy.

(a) These conditions due to drug therapy:

Infectious and parasitic diseases	A000-A309, A320-A329, A360-A399, A420-A449, A481-A488, A500-A690, A692-B199, B250-B349, B500-B942, B949 <b>(EXCEPT: Antineoplastic drugs Y431-Y433; Immunosuppressive agents Y434)</b>  B200-B24
Neoplasms	C000-D45, D47-D489
Diabetes	E10-E14 <b>(EXCEPT: Steroids Y425, Y427)</b>
Hemophilia	D66-D682
Alcoholic disorders	E244, E52, F101-F109, G312, G405, G621, G721, I426, K292, K700-K709, K860, L278, R780, R826, R893
Rheumatic fever or rheumatic heart disease	I00-I099
Arteriosclerosis and arteriosclerotic conditions	

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

**Part R**

Influenza	J09-J118
Hernia	K400-K469
Congenital malformations	Q000-Q999

This is not an all inclusive list.

- I (a) Lung cancer C349
- (b) Drug therapy

Since lung cancer is not considered a complication of drug therapy, no code is assigned for I(b).

- I (a) Pancytopenia D619
- (b) Lung cancer chemotherapy C349

Do not code the chemotherapy since there is no reported complication. Lung cancer is the first condition on the next lower line.

- (b) Any condition stated as congenital, familial, hereditary, idiopathic or conditions with a duration that predates the drug therapy.

- I (a) Congenital cardiomyopathy I424
- (b) Drug therapy

Do not code the drug therapy since conditions stated as congenital cannot be considered as complications.

- I (a) Nephritis 6 months N059
  - (b) Drug therapy 2 months
- Reject 1

Do not code the drug therapy on I(b). The nephritis cannot be considered as a complication since it occurred prior to the drug therapy.

## SECTION V

## Effects of External Cause of Injury and External Causes of Injury and Poisoning Complications of Medical and Surgical Care

### Part R

---

- (2) Code any condition classifiable to Chapters I-XVIII that could result from a drug, medicament, or biological substance (including anesthesia) known or presumed to have been properly administered to the appropriate category in these chapters.

If the Classification provides a code for the condition reported as “due to drug” or “drug induced,” use this code. If no provision is made for the condition reported as “due to drug” or “drug induced,” code to the unspecified code for the condition.

When a condition classifiable to Chapters I-XVIII is reported due to a drug reaction (named drug) NOS, e.g., insulin reaction, code the condition as indexed and code the drug reaction to the external cause code.

Classify only those complications that cannot be assigned to Chapters I-XVIII to Chapter XIX (T80.-, T88.-).

- |                                      |            |
|--------------------------------------|------------|
| I (a) Respiratory and cardiac arrest | &R092 I469 |
| (b) Local anesthesia reaction        | Y483       |

Code the conditions reported on I(a) as complications of local anesthesia since the local anesthesia is presumed to have been properly administered. Precede the first complication with an ampersand. Since a complication is reported, assign only an external cause on I(b) indicating Adverse effect in therapeutic use.

- |                     |            |
|---------------------|------------|
| I (a) Drug reaction | T887 &Y400 |
| (b) Penicillin      |            |

Code the drug reaction on I(a) to nature of injury and external cause since no specified complication is reported. Precede the E-code with an ampersand. Do not enter a code for penicillin on I(b) since it was coded on I(a).

- |                         |       |
|-------------------------|-------|
| I (a) Encephalitis      | &G040 |
| (b) Measles vaccination | Y590  |

Code the encephalitis as a complication of the measles vaccine since the measles vaccine is presumed to have been properly administered. Encephalitis is indexed following vaccination or other immunization procedure. Precede the complication (G040) with an ampersand. Code the measles vaccination to Y590, Adverse effect in therapeutic use.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

**Part R**

- |   |                                   |            |
|---|-----------------------------------|------------|
| I | (a) Pulmonary embolism            | I269       |
|   | (b) Estrogen to control excessive | Y425 &N920 |
|   | (c) menses                        |            |

Code the pulmonary embolism as a complication of the estrogen since the estrogen is presumed to have been properly administered. Code the estrogen as Adverse effect in therapeutic use and excessive menses as indexed. Precede the code for excessive menses with an ampersand to indicate the condition requiring treatment.

(3) Unless there are indications to the contrary, assume the drug, medicament, or biological substance was used for medical care purposes and was properly administered in correct dosage. **Do not** make this assumption **if:**

- The drug was one which is not used for medical care purposes, e.g., LSD or heroin,  
**or**
- It was an analgesic, sedative, narcotic or psychotropic drug (or combination thereof) or drug NOS  
**AND** the certifier indicated the death was due to an “accident” “suicide” or it occurred under “undetermined circumstances ,”  
**or**
- One or more of these drugs was taken in conjunction with alcohol

Code to poisoning (refer to Section V, Part Q, 2, Poisoning by drugs).

- |              |   |                                  |           |
|--------------|---|----------------------------------|-----------|
| <u>Place</u> | I | (a) Respiratory failure          | J969      |
| 9            |   | (b) Ingestion of mixed sedatives | T426 &X41 |
| <u>MOD</u>   |   |                                  |           |
| A            |   | Accident                         |           |

Code I(a) as indexed. Code I(b) nature of injury and external cause code for accidental poisoning by mixed sedatives. Code as poisoning since the drug is a sedative and the certifier indicated the death was due to an accident. Precede the E-code with an ampersand.

- |              |    |                               |           |
|--------------|----|-------------------------------|-----------|
| <u>Place</u> | I  | (a) Cerebral anoxia           | G931      |
| 9            |    | (b) Ingestion of barbiturates | T423 &X41 |
|              | II | Had been drinking             | F109      |

Code I(a) as indexed. Code I(b), accidental ingestion of barbiturates since the drug is a sedative and it was taken in conjunction with alcohol. Precede the E-code with an ampersand. Code Part II as indexed.

- (4) When the condition for which the drug is usually administered is reported elsewhere on the certificate, code this condition as indexed, preceded by an ampersand to identify the condition requiring treatment.

I (a) Hemorrhage	K922
(b) Ulcer of stomach	K259
(c) Cortisone therapy	Y420
II Scleroderma	&M349

The ulcer of the stomach is the complication of the cortisone therapy. Code the E-code for cortisone on I(c). Since cortisone is used in treatment of scleroderma, precede this condition with an ampersand.

When a complication occurs as the result of a drug being given in treatment and the condition requiring the drug is not reported elsewhere on the certificate, **do not assume** a disease condition.

When a complication classifiable to Chapters I-XVIII occurs as the result of a drug being administered in therapeutic use and the condition requiring the treatment is not reported, place an ampersand preceding the code for the complication.

I (a) Renal failure	&N19
(b) Ingested antidiabetic drug	Y423

The renal failure on I(a) is the complication of the antidiabetic drug. Code the E-code for antidiabetic drug on I(b). **Do not** assume a disease condition requiring therapy even though antidiabetic drug is one used in the treatment of diabetes. Precede the complication with an ampersand.

- (5) “Drug induced” complications

When a condition is stated to be “drug induced,” consider the condition to be a complication of drug therapy, unless otherwise indicated. Code as follows:

- (a) If the complication is classified to Chapter I-XVIII, code the E-code for the drug, followed by the code for the complication.

I (a) Drug induced aplastic anemia	Y579 D611
II Carcinoma of lung	&C349

Code I(a) Y579, complication of an unspecified drug, and the “drug induced aplastic anemia” as indexed. Ampersand the carcinoma of lung as the condition requiring treatment.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

**Part R**

---

I (a) Drug induced polyneuropathy Y579 &G620

Code I(a) Y579, complication of an unspecified drug, and the “drug induced polyneuropathy” as indexed. Place an ampersand preceding the code for the complication.

- (b) If the complication is classified to Chapter XIX, code the nature of injury code for the complication followed by the E-code for the drug. Place an ampersand preceding the E-code.

I (a) Chloramphenicol induced reaction T887 &Y402  
(b) Septicemia &A419

Code I(a) as a complication of the drug (named). Code the nature of injury for the complication followed by the E-code for the named drug. Place an ampersand preceding the E-code and the septicemia to indicate the condition requiring treatment.

- (6) “Intoxication by drug” due to drug therapy

When “intoxication by drug” is reported or indicated to be treatment for a condition or due to drug therapy, consider these to be complications of drug therapy, not poisoning.

I (a) Cardiac arrest I469  
(b) Digitalis intoxication T887 &Y520  
(c) ASHD &I251

Code the digitalis intoxication as drug therapy since it is indicated as treatment for a condition by its position on the record. Code the intoxication as indexed under Intoxication, drug, correct substance properly administered and the E-code for digitalis.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

**Part R**

(7) Combined effects of two or more drugs

When a complication is reported due to the combined effects of two or more drugs, code the complication as indexed. On the next lower line, code the appropriate E-code (Y400-Y599). To determine the appropriate E-code, refer to the column for “Adverse effect in therapeutic use” in the Table of drugs and chemicals. (refer to Section V, Part R, 1 (3) when coded as poisoning)

- (a) When the drugs are classified to different fourth characters of the same three-character category, code the appropriate E-code with the fourth character for “other.”

I (a) Cardiac arrest	I469
(b) Valium and sleeping pills	Y478
(c) Anxiety	&F419

Code I(b) to the appropriate E-code for the combined effects of two drugs in therapeutic use classified to the same three-character category.

- (b) When the drugs are classified to different three-character categories, code the E-code to Y578, “Other drugs and medicaments.”

I (a) Congestive heart failure	I500
(b) Cor pulmonale	&I279
II Hemorrhage from anticoagulant and aspirin	R5800 Y578

Code Y578, the appropriate E-code for combined effect of two drugs in therapeutic use classified to different three-character categories.

(8) Complication of chemotherapy

- (a) When a complication of chemotherapy is reported, code the complication as indexed and Y579 unless a malignancy is reported on the certificate. When the complication is classified to Chapters I-XVIII and the reason for the chemotherapy is not reported, precede the complication with an ampersand.

I (a) Aplastic anemia	&D611
(b) Chemotherapy	Y579

Code I(a), aplastic anemia due to drugs (D611) and code I(b) Y579, adverse effect of unspecified drug in correct usage. Precede the complication with an ampersand.

- (b) When a complication of chemotherapy is reported with mention of a malignancy on the certificate, consider the chemotherapy to be antineoplastic drugs and code E-code Y433.

I (a) Purpura	D692
(b) Chemotherapy	Y433
(c) Leukemia	&C959

Code I(a) as indexed. Consider the chemotherapy on I(b) as antineoplastic drugs and code Y433. Ampersand the leukemia as the condition requiring treatment.

(9) Complications of immunosuppression

Immunosuppression can be drug therapy or a complication of drug therapy. Code immunosuppression as **drug therapy** unless reported **due to** a drug, then code as a complication of the drug (D849). If the drug is not reported elsewhere on the certificate, code Y434 for the immunosuppressive drug.

I (a) Pneumonia and sepsis	J189 A419
(b) Immunosuppression	D849
(c) Chemotherapy for carcinoma of brain	Y433
(d)	&C719

Since the immunosuppression is due to chemotherapy, consider as a complication. Ampersand the carcinoma of brain as the condition requiring treatment.

**SECTION V****Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care****Part R**

- 
- |                                  |       |
|----------------------------------|-------|
| I (a) Immunosuppression          | D849  |
| (b) Vancomycin                   | Y408  |
| (c) Acute bacterial endocarditis | &I330 |

Since the immunosuppression is due to a drug, consider as a complication. Ampersand the acute bacterial endocarditis as the condition requiring treatment.

- |                           |      |
|---------------------------|------|
| I (a) Infection           | B99  |
| (b) Immunosuppression for | Y434 |
| (c) Carcinoma of prostate | &C61 |

Consider the infection as a complication of drug therapy (immunosuppression) on I(b). Ampersand the carcinoma of prostate as the condition requiring treatment.

- |                                |       |
|--------------------------------|-------|
| I (a) Cardiorespiratory arrest | I469  |
| (b) Sepsis                     | A419  |
| (c) Immunosuppression for      | Y434  |
| (d) Rheumatoid vasculitis      | &M052 |

Consider the sepsis as a complication of drug therapy (immunosuppression) on I(c). Ampersand the rheumatoid vasculitis as the condition requiring treatment.

- |                       |       |
|-----------------------|-------|
| I (a) Sepsis          | A419  |
| (b) Immunosuppression | Y427  |
| (c) Renal transplant  | &N289 |
| II Steroid therapy    |       |

Consider the sepsis as a complication of drug therapy (immunosuppression) on I(b). Code external cause code to steroids, the immunosuppressive drug reported elsewhere on the certificate. Code and ampersand Disease, kidney, as the condition for which the renal transplant was performed and the condition requiring the immunosuppressive drug.

- |                          |       |
|--------------------------|-------|
| I (a) Respiratory arrest | R092  |
| (b) Septicemia           | A419  |
| (c) Immunosuppression    | Y434  |
| II Renal transplant      | &N289 |

Consider the septicemia as a complication of drug therapy (immunosuppression) on I(c). In Part II, code and ampersand Disease, kidney, as the condition for which the renal transplant was performed and the condition requiring the immunosuppressive drug.

SECTION V

Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care

Part R

- 
- |    |                                     |       |
|----|-------------------------------------|-------|
| I  | (a) Bacteremia                      | A499  |
|    | (b) Immunosuppression               | Y434  |
|    | (c)                                 |       |
| II | Idiopathic thrombocytopenia purpura | &D693 |

Consider the bacteremia as a complication of drug therapy (immunosuppression) on I(b). Ampersand the idiopathic thrombocytopenia purpura as the condition requiring treatment.

- |    |                             |           |
|----|-----------------------------|-----------|
| I  | (a) Cardiac arrest          | I469      |
|    | (b) ASHD                    | I251      |
|    | (c)                         |           |
| II | D.M., AS, immunosuppression | E149 I709 |

Do not enter a code for the immunosuppression since there is not a reported complication.

(10) Drugs administered for one year or more

When a complication is reported due to a drug being administered for one year or more, consider the drug was given on a continuing basis. Code as a current complication; **do not** code as sequela.

- |   |                         |       |
|---|-------------------------|-------|
| I | (a) Hypercortosteronism | E242  |
|   | (b) Steroids - 6 years  | Y427  |
|   | (c) Arthritis           | &M139 |

Consider the steroids as being administered on a continuing basis for six years. Code as a current complication of the drug. Code I(a) Hypercortosteronism, correct substance properly administered (E242).

**SECTION V****Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care****Part R**2. Surgical procedures as the cause of abnormal reaction of the patient or later complication (Y83)a. Complications of surgical procedures

Although almost any condition reported due to surgery is regarded as a complication of surgery, there are few diseases that are not considered complications. The surgical procedure (Y83) is not coded when there is no evidence of a surgical complication.

Interpret “due to surgery” as a condition(s) on an upper line with a surgical procedure as the first condition on the next lower line.

(1) The following are not regarded as complications of surgical procedures:

(a) These conditions reported due to surgery:

Infectious and parasitic diseases	A000-A309, A320-A329, A360-A399, A420-A449, A481-A488, A500-A690, A692-B349, B500-B978
Neoplasms	C000-D489
Hemophilia	D66, D67, D680, D681, D682
Diabetes	E10-E14
Alcoholic disorders	E52, E244, F101-F109, G312, G405, G621, G721, K860, I426, K292, K700-K709, L278, R780, R826, R893
Rheumatic fever or rheumatic heart disease	I00-I099
Hypertensive diseases	I11-I139
Coronary artery disease Coronary disease	I251
Ischemic cardiomyopathy	I255
Chronic or degenerative myocarditis	I514

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

**Part R**

Arteriosclerosis and arteriosclerotic conditions <u>except</u> those classified to I219	
Calculus or stones of any type or site	
Influenza	J09-J118
Hernia except ventral (incisional)	K400-K429 K440-K469
Diverticulitis	K570-K579
Rheumatoid arthritis	M050-M089
Collagen diseases	M300-M359
Congenital malformations	Q000-Q999

This is not an all inclusive list.

- I (a) Myocardial infarction I219
- (b) Arteriosclerosis I709
- (c) Surgery

Since arteriosclerosis is not accepted as a complication of surgery, do not code the surgery.

- I (a) Diabetic gangrene E145
- (b) Leg amputation

Do not code the leg amputation (surgery) since there is no indication of a surgical complication.

- I (a) Pneumonia J189
- (b) Brain tumor removal D432

Do not code the removal since there is no complication. Brain tumor is the first condition on the next lower line.

SECTION V

Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care

Part R

(b) Do not accept conditions with a duration which predates the surgery

I (a) MI	2 weeks	I219
(b) Surgery	2 days	
		Reject 1

Do not code the surgery on I(b). Since the MI occurred before the surgery was performed it cannot be a complication.

(2) When a condition reported due to a **named** surgical (operative) procedure can be considered as a complication or abnormal reaction, code as follows:

**STEP 1:** Determine if the complication is in the Index qualified by the named surgery reported

I (a) Lymphedema	I972
(b) Postmastectomy	Y836
(c) Breast cancer	&C509

Code I(a) using Step 1:

Lymphedema  
- postmastectomy I97.2

I (a) Hemorrhage	T828
(b) Coronary artery bypass graft	&Y832
(c) Coronary heart disease	&I259

Code I(a) using Step 1:

Hemorrhage  
- due to or associated with  
- - device, implant or graft  
- - - heart NEC T82.8

“Coronary” is not indexed, but is located in the heart; therefore, heart can be used in place of coronary.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

**Part R**

---

**NOTE:** Before continuing to **STEP 2** (below), it is important to determine the nature of the named surgery.

- |                               |       |
|-------------------------------|-------|
| I (a) Hemorrhage              | T828  |
| (b) Cardiac revascularization | &Y832 |
| (c) Cardiovascular disease    | &I516 |

Revascularization is defined as the re-establishment of adequate blood supply to a part, by means of a vascular graft.  
Code I(a) as indexed:

- Hemorrhage  
- due to or associated with  
- - device, implant or graft  
- - - heart NEC T82.8

**STEP 2:** If the Index does not qualify the complication with the named surgery, determine if the complication is indexed under Complications (from) (of), surgical procedure.

- |                                      |       |
|--------------------------------------|-------|
| I (a) Hemorrhage                     | T810  |
| (b) Postlaminectomy                  | &Y836 |
| (c) Intervertebral disc degeneration | &M513 |

The Index does not qualify hemorrhage as postlaminectomy.  
Code I(a) as indexed:

- Complications (from) (of)  
- surgical procedure  
- - hemorrhage or hematoma (any site) T81.0

Code I(b), as indexed under Complication, laminectomy.

SECTION V

Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care

Part R

---

I	(a) Intestinal obstruction	K913
	(b) Colostomy	Y833
	(c) Ulcerative colitis	&K519

Code I(a) as indexed:

Complications (from) (of)  
- surgical procedure  
- - intestinal obstruction K91.3

Code I(b), surgery, as indexed under Complications, colostomy. Code I(c), ulcerative colitis, as indexed and precede with an ampersand indicating the reason for the surgery.

**STEP 3:** If the Index does not qualify the complication with the named surgery nor is the complication indexed under Complications (from) (of), surgical procedures, determine if the named surgery is indexed under Complications (from) (of).

I	(a) Stroke	T828
	(b) Coronary artery bypass	&Y832
	(c) Arteriosclerotic heart disease	&I251

The Index does not qualify stroke with coronary artery bypass nor is stroke indexed under Complications, surgical procedures; therefore, code I(a) using **Step 3:**

Complications (from) (of)  
- coronary artery (bypass) graft  
- - specified NEC T82.8

Stroke is neither an infection nor an inflammation nor mechanical; therefore, select “specified NEC.”

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

---

**Part R**

I (a) MI	T828
(b) Postfemoral bypass graft	&Y832
(c) Peripheral vascular disease	&I739

Code I(a) as indexed:

Complications (from) (of)

- graft

- - femoral artery (bypass) - See Complications, graft, arterial

Complications (from) (of)

- graft

- - arterial

- - - specified NEC T82.8

Code I(b), Y832, as indexed under Complication, graft.  
Precede the E-code (Y832) by an ampersand.

I (a) Cerebral embolism	T858
(b) Bypass	&Y832

Code I(a) as indexed:

Complications (from) (of)

- bypass (see also Complications, graft)

Complications (from) (of)

- graft

- - specified NEC T85.8

Code I(b), Y832, as indexed under Complications, bypass.  
Precede the E-code (Y832) by an ampersand.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

**Part R**

---

I (a) Anemia	T858
(b) Gastrointestinal bypass	&Y832
(c) Diverticulitis	&K579

Code I(a) as indexed:

Complications (from) (of)  
- bypass (see also Complications, graft)

Complications (from) (of)  
- graft  
- - intestinal tract  
- - - specified NEC T85.8

Code I(b), Y832, as indexed under Complications, bypass.  
Precede the E-code (Y832) by an ampersand. Code I(c),  
Diverticulitis, K579, as indexed. Precede the code (K579) by  
an ampersand to indicate the reason for surgery.

(3) When a condition that is

- (a) reported due to a **named** surgery cannot be assigned a code using **STEP 1- STEP 3** or
- (b) reported due to a surgery (operation) (of a site) NOS, and can be considered as a complication or abnormal reaction, code as follows:

**STEP 4:** Determine if the complication is in the Index, qualified:

- (a) as reported
- (b) with any term meaning “due to” **surgery** (see Section II, Part C, 2, a, “Due to” written in or implied)
- (c) as surgical or as complicating surgery
- (d) as postoperative or postsurgical
- (e) as postprocedural
- (f) during or resulting from a procedure, **so stated**
- (g) resulting from a procedure, **so stated**

I	(a) Pulmonary insufficiency following	&J952
	(b) Surgery	Y839

Code I(a) as reported using **Step 4 (a)**:

Insufficiency  
- pulmonary  
- - following  
- - - surgery J952

Precede the code J952 by an ampersand.

Code I(b), surgery, Y839, as indexed under Complication, surgical operation NEC.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

**Part R**

---

I (a) Hypothyroidism	E890
(b) Thyroid surgery	Y839
(c) Thyroid cancer	&C73

Code I(a) using **Step 4 (b)**. Refer to “due to” list in Section II, Part C, 2, a, “Due to” written in or implied.

Hypothyroidism  
- due to  
- - surgery E890

Thyroid surgery is equivalent to surgery NOS.

I (a) Cardiac insufficiency	T818
(b) Surgery	&Y839

Code I(a) using **Step 4 (c)**:

Insufficiency  
- cardiac  
- - complicating surgery T818

Code I(b), surgery, Y839, as indexed under Complication, surgical operation NEC. Precede the E-code (Y839) by an ampersand.

I (a) Pneumonia	&J958
(b) Surgery	Y839

Code I(a) using **Step 4 (d)**. Indexed as Pneumonia (see also Pneumonitis).

Pneumonitis  
- postoperative J958

Precede the code J958 by an ampersand.

Code I(b), surgery, Y839, as indexed under Complication, surgical operation NEC.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

---

**Part R**

I (a) Renal failure &N990  
(b) Surgery Y839

Code I(a) using Step 4 (e):

Failure  
- renal  
- - postprocedural N99.0

Precede the code N990 by an ampersand.  
Code I(b), surgery, Y839, as indexed under Complication,  
surgical operation NEC.

I (a) Cerebral anoxia &G978  
(b) Surgery Y839

Code I(a) using Step 4 (f):

Anoxia  
- cerebral  
- - during or resulting from a procedure G97.8

Precede the code G978 by an ampersand.  
Code I(b), surgery, Y839, as indexed under Complication,  
surgical operation NEC.

I (a) Anoxic brain damage &G978  
(b) Surgery Y839

Code I(a) using Step 4 (g):

Damage  
- brain  
- - anoxic  
- - - resulting from a procedure G97.8

Precede the code G978 by an ampersand.  
Code I(b), surgery, Y839, as indexed under Complication,  
surgical procedure NEC.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

---

**Part R**

**STEP 5:** If the Index does not provide for the complication qualified with any of the terms defined in the previous steps, determine if the complication is indexed under Complications (from)(of), surgical procedure.

**NOTE:** If a “named” surgery is reported, this step has already been completed in **Step 2**.

I (a) Hyperglycemia	&E891
(b) Surgery	Y839

Code I(a) as indexed:

Complications (from) (of)  
- surgical procedure  
- - hyperglycemia E89.1

Precede the code E891 by an ampersand.

Code I(b), surgery, Y839, as indexed under Complication, surgical operation NEC.

**NOTE:** Do not apply Step 6 when assigning a complication code for conditions classified to R00-R99.

**STEP 6:** If the Index does not provide for the complication as above, determine if:

- (a) the site of the complication is in the Index under Complications (from) (of), surgical procedure  
**or**
- (b) the system in which the complication occurred (based upon the code assigned in the Index) is in the Index under Complications (from)(of), surgical procedure.

I	(a) MI	T818
	(b) Surgery	&Y839

Code I(a) using **Step 6 (a):**

Complications (from)(of)  
- surgical procedure  
- - cardiac T81.8

The site of a myocardial infarction is the muscle tissue of the heart which is synonymous with cardiac. Code I(b), surgery, Y839, as indexed under Complication, surgical operation NEC. Precede the E-code with an ampersand.

I	(a) Uremia	&N998
	(b) Surgery	Y839

Code I(a) using **Step 6 (b):**

Complications (from) (of)  
- surgical procedure  
- - genitourinary  
- - - specified NEC N99.8

Uremia NOS is indexed to N19 which indicates this condition is a specified disease in the genitourinary system.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

---

**Part R**

I (a) Mesenteric embolism	K918
(b) Gallbladder surgery	Y839
(c) Gallstones	&K802

Code I(a) using Step 6 (b):

Complications (from)(of)  
- surgical procedure  
- - digestive system  
- - - specified NEC K91.8

Mesenteric embolism is indexed to K550 which indicates that this condition is a specified disease in the digestive system.

**STEP 7:** When a reported complication cannot be classified to a system which is indexed, code to T818, other complications of procedures, not elsewhere classified.

I (a) Anemia	T818
(b) Surgery	&Y839

Anemia is not indexed as due to surgery or as postoperative. Anemia is a disease of the blood-forming organs and neither the term nor the body system is indexed under Complication (from) (of), surgical procedure.

Code I(a) as indexed:

Complications (from)(of)  
- surgical procedure  
- - specified NEC T81.8

Code I(b), surgery, Y839, as indexed under Complication, surgical operation NEC. Precede the E-code with an ampersand.

## SECTION V

## Effects of External Cause of Injury and External Causes of Injury and Poisoning Complications of Medical and Surgical Care

---

### Part R

I (a) Cardiac arrest	I469
(b) Brain death	T818
(c) Surgery	&Y839

Code line I(b) using **Step 7**. Brain death is not a codable condition but can be a complication of surgery.

Complications (from) (of)  
- surgical procedure  
- - specified NEC T818

Code I(c) surgery, Y839, as indexed under Complication, surgical operation NEC. Precede the E-code with an ampersand.

b. Condition necessitating surgery

- (1) When a complication of surgery is reported and the underlying condition which necessitated the surgery is stated or implied, place an ampersand (&) preceding this condition to indicate the reason for surgery.

I (a) Pulmonary embolism	T817
(b) Surgery for	&Y839
(c) Gangrene of foot	&R02

Code the pulmonary embolism as the complication, Y839 for the surgery, and precede the code for gangrene with an ampersand to identify the reason for surgery. Precede the surgery code with an ampersand since the complication is coded to Chapter XIX.

- (2) When the condition necessitating the surgery is not stated or implied and the complication is classifiable to Chapters I-XVIII, place an ampersand preceding the code for the complication.

I (a) Renal failure	&N990
(b) Surgery	Y839

Code I(a), renal failure, N990, as the complication of the surgery (Y839) on I(b). Precede the N990 with an ampersand since it is classified to Chapter I-XVIII and the reason for the surgery is not reported.

- (3) **Do not** ampersand a condition necessitating surgery unless a complication of the surgical procedure is coded.

I (a) ASHD	I251
II SP mastectomy, Cancer of breast	C509

Do not precede the reason for surgery, C509 with an ampersand since no complication of the mastectomy is reported.

- (4) When the condition that necessitated the surgery is not reported, but the organ or site is implied by the operative term, code disease of the organ or site.

**Exception:****Appendectomy**

Code appendicitis (K37) when appendectomy is the only operative procedure reported. If appendectomy is reported with other abdominal or pelvic surgery, assume the appendectomy to be incidental to the other surgery and **do not** code K37.

Use the following codes when these surgical procedures are reported and the condition necessitating the surgery is not reported:

Aorta (with any other vessel NEC) bypass or graft .....	I779
Aorta coronary bypass or graft .....	I251
Atrio-ventricular shunt.....	G919
Bariatric surgery .....	E668
Billroth (I or II) .....	K3190
Brock valvulotomy.....	Q223
Cardiac revascularization.....	I251
Carotid endarterectomy.....	I679
Choledochoduodenostomy.....	K839
Cholecystectomy.....	K829
Cholelithotomy .....	K802
Colostomy .....	K639
Coronary artery bypass graft (CABG).....	I251
Coronary endarterectomy.....	I251
Coronary revascularization .....	I251
Endarterectomy (artery) (aorta) .....	I779
Femoral bypass .....	I779
Femoral-popliteal bypass .....	I779
Gastrectomy .....	K3190
Gastric stapling .....	E668
Gastroenterostomy .....	K929
Gastro-intestinal surgery NOS.....	K929
Gastrojejunostomy .....	K929
Gastrojejunectomy .....	K929
Herniorrhaphy .....	code hernia
Hip fixation .....	S720
Hip pinning .....	S720
Hip prosthesis.....	M259
Hip replacement .....	M259
Hysterectomy .....	N859
Ileal conduit .....	N399
Ileal loop .....	N399
Iliofemoral bypass.....	I779
Lobectomy-when indicating lung .....	J9840
Mammary artery(internal) implant .....	I251
Nephrectomy.....	N289
Revascularization of heart.....	I251
Revascularization, myocardial.....	I251
T and A .....	J359
Thoracoplasty.....	J989
Tonsillectomy .....	J359

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

**Part R**

Ureterosigmoid bypass.....	N399
Ureterosigmoidostomy.....	N399
Vein stripping.....	I839
Ventricular peritoneal shunt.....	G919
Vineberg operation.....	I251

When the condition that necessitated the surgery is not reported, do not assume a disease condition for surgical procedures such as the following:

amputation	pelvic exenteration
arteriovenous shunt	portocaval shunt
chordotomy	radical neck dissection
craniotomy	rhizotomy
cystostomy	sympathectomy
D & C	tracheotomy
gastrostomy	tracheostomy
laminectomy	tubal ligation
laparotomy	vagotomy
lobectomy NOS	vasectomy
lobotomy	vas ligation

If one of these types of procedures is the only entry on the certificate, code R99.

When the following complications of surgery are reported and the reason for the surgery is not reported, use the following codes as the reason the surgery was performed:

	Reason for Surgery <u>Code</u>
Postsurgical hypothyroidism	E079
Postsurgical hypoinsulinemia	K869
Postsurgical blind loop syndrome	K639
Other and unspecified postsurgical malabsorption	K639
I (a) Postsurgical blind loop syndrome	Y839 K912 &K639

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

**Part R**

When a complication is reported due to:

“Surgery” with the underlying condition that necessitated the surgery stated, code:

the complication to Chapters I-XIX, the surgery to the appropriate external cause code (Y83-) preceded by an ampersand, if required, and the underlying condition necessitating the surgery preceded by an ampersand.

- |                  |       |
|------------------|-------|
| I (a) Hemorrhage | T810  |
| (b) Surgery      | &Y839 |
| (c) Ca. of lung  | &C349 |

Code I(a) as postoperative hemorrhage (T810). Code the external cause code for the surgical procedure and precede by an ampersand. Code C349, cancer of lung and precede by an ampersand to identify the stated underlying condition for which surgery was performed.

- |  |                |
|--|----------------|
| I (a) Pulmonary hemorrhage                           | R048           |
| (b) Lung cancer                                      | &C349          |
| II Pneumonia due to surgery for pulmonary hemorrhage | J958 Y839 R048 |

Code line I(a) and (b) as indexed. Precede cancer of lung with an ampersand to indicate the underlying reason for which surgery was performed. Since the first entry in Part II, pneumonia, is reported due to surgery, code as a complication of surgery.

“Surgery” with the condition which necessitated the surgery not stated and only one condition for which surgery could have been performed is reported, code:

the complication to Chapters I-XIX, the surgery to the appropriate external cause code (Y83-) preceded by an ampersand, if required. Since only one condition for which the surgery could have been performed is reported, code the condition and precede with an ampersand to identify the reason for the surgery.

- |                             |       |
|-----------------------------|-------|
| I (a) Mesenteric thrombosis | K918  |
| (b) Surgery                 | Y839  |
| II ASHD                     | &I251 |

Code mesenteric thrombosis as the complication of the surgery and code Y839 for the surgery. Since ASHD is the only condition on the certificate for which surgery could have been performed, precede the code for this condition by an ampersand.

SECTION V

Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care

Part R

“Surgery” with the condition which necessitated the surgery not stated and two or more conditions for which surgery could have been performed are reported, code:

the complication to Chapters I-XIX and the surgery to appropriate external cause code (Y83-) preceded by an ampersand, if required. Ampersand the first mentioned condition for which the surgery could have been performed.

- I (a) Wound dehiscence T813
- (b) Surgery &Y839
- II Cancer of lung, gastric ulcer &C349 K259

Code I(a), wound dehiscence, T813, as the complication of the surgery and code I(b), surgery, Y839. Code Part II as indexed and precede the code for cancer of lung by an ampersand since it is the first mentioned condition for which the surgery could have been performed.

“Surgery” without indication of the condition which necessitated the surgery, code:

the complication to Chapters I-XIX, and the surgery to appropriate external cause code (Y83-) only. If the complication is classifiable to Chapters I-XVIII, precede the code for the complication with an ampersand.

- I (a) Shock & hemorrhage T811 T810
- (b) Surgery &Y839

Code I(a), shock and hemorrhage, T811 T810, both as complications of the surgery. Code I(b), surgery, Y839 and precede the code by an ampersand.

Surgical procedure such as **aneurysmectomy, cholelithotomy, hemorrhoidectomy or herniorrhaphy** which indicates the condition for which the surgery was performed, code:

the complication to Chapters I-XIX, the surgery to the appropriate external cause code (Y83-) preceded by an ampersand, if required, and code the condition implied by the surgery following the external cause code for the surgery. Place an ampersand preceding the code for the condition.

- I (a) CHF I978
- (b) Cholelithotomy Y838 &K802

Code I(a), CHF (congestive heart failure), as the complication of surgery. Code I(b), cholelithotomy, Y838 K802. Cholelithotomy indicates cholelithiasis (K802) was the condition for which surgery was performed. Precede K802 by an ampersand.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

**Part R**

---

Surgical procedure that indicates an organ or site with one related condition for which the surgery could have been performed, code:

the complication to Chapters I-XIX, the surgery to the appropriate external cause code (Y83-) preceded by an ampersand, if required. Code the condition for which surgery could have been performed and precede with an ampersand.

- |                           |       |
|---------------------------|-------|
| I (a) MI                  | T818  |
| (b) Gastrectomy           | &Y836 |
| II Bleeding gastric ulcer | &K254 |

Code I(a), MI, as the complication of the surgery. Code I(b), gastrectomy, Y836, as indexed and precede with an ampersand. Code Part II, bleeding gastric ulcer, as indexed and precede with an ampersand to indicate it was the condition for which surgery was performed.

- |                      |       |
|----------------------|-------|
| I (a) Cardiac arrest | T818  |
| (b) CABG             | &Y832 |
| II Heart disease     | &I519 |

Code I(a), cardiac arrest, as the complication of the surgery. Code I(b), CABG, Y832 as indexed and precede with an ampersand. Code Part II, heart disease, as indexed and precede with an ampersand to indicate it was the condition for which surgery was performed.

Surgical procedure that indicates an organ or site without a related condition for which the surgery could have been performed, code:

the complication to Chapters I-XIX, the surgery to the appropriate external cause code (Y83-) preceded by an ampersand, if required, and code disease of the organ or site following the external cause code for the surgery. Place an ampersand preceding the code for the condition.

- |                      |            |
|----------------------|------------|
| I (a) Cardiac arrest | I469       |
| (b) Pneumonia        | J958       |
| (c) Pancreatectomy   | Y836 &K869 |

Code I(a), cardiac arrest, as indexed. Code I(b), pneumonia, as the complication of the surgery. Code I(c), pancreatectomy, as indexed, and since the surgery indicates a disease of the pancreas, code this as the reason for surgery. Precede K869 by an ampersand.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

**Part R**

Prophylactic or nontherapeutic surgery, code:

the complication to Chapters I-XIX, and the surgery to the appropriate external cause code (Y83-) preceded by an ampersand, if required. Do not assume or ampersand a disease condition. When the complication is classifiable to Chapters I-XVIII, precede the code for the complication with an ampersand.

- |    |                 |       |
|----|-----------------|-------|
| I  | (a) Sepsis      | A419  |
|    | (b) Infection   | T814  |
|    | (c) Liposuction | &Y838 |
| II |                 |       |

Code I(a), sepsis, as indexed. Code I(b), infection, as the complication of the nontherapeutic surgery. Code I(c) as a specified type of surgical operation.

c. Conditions qualified as postoperative

- (1) When the following postoperative terms or a synonymous term qualifies a condition, determination must be made as to whether the condition is a surgical complication or the condition for which the surgery was performed.

p.o	postoperative	status postop
post-named surgery	status p.o.	status postoperative
(postgastrectomy)	status post-named surgery	status post surgery
postop	(status post gastrectomy)	

- (2) The following conditions are common complications of surgery. Code these conditions as postoperative complications when preceded by or followed by one of the postoperative terms except when it is stated elsewhere on the certificate as the reason the surgery was performed.

abscess	hemorrhage, hematoma	sepsis
adhesions	infarction	septicemia
aspiration	infection	septic shock
atelectasis	occlusion	shock
bowel obstruction	peritonitis	thrombophlebitis
cardiac arrest	phlebitis, phlebothrombosis	thrombosis
embolism	pneumonia	wound infection
fistula	pneumothorax	
gas gangrene	renal failure (acute)	
hemolysis, hemolytic		
infection		

This list is not all inclusive.

(3) When “postoperative,” “postop,” “status postoperative,” etc., qualifies (preceding or following) a complication:

(a) If the complication is classified to Chapters I-XVIII, code the external cause code followed by the code for the complication.

I (a) Pneumonia postgastrectomy                      Y836    J958    &K3190

Code pneumonia as the complication of surgery when reported as “postoperative” or a synonymous term. Since the reason for surgery is not stated, code disease stomach and precede by an ampersand to indicate the reason for surgery.

I (a) Postgastrectomy dumping syndrome    Y836    K911  
 (b)  
 (c) Carcinoma of stomach                                      &C169

Code I(a), Y836, as indexed under Complication, gastrectomy, and K911, as indexed under Syndrome, dumping. Code I(c) C169, as indexed under Neoplasm, stomach, malignant. Place an ampersand (&) preceding C169 to identify the underlying reason for surgery.

I (a) Pulmonary edema                                      J958  
 (b) P.O. bowel obstruction                                      Y839    K566  
 (c) Ca. of cecum    &C180  
 II Surgery for bowel obstruction                                      K566

Code I(a), pulmonary edema, as the complication of surgery. Code I(b) to surgery Y839 and code bowel obstruction as indexed K566 since it is stated as the reason for surgery. Code I(c), cancer of cecum, as indexed and precede the code by an ampersand to indicate the underlying reason for surgery. Part II, do not enter a code for surgery since P.O. was reported on line (b) and a surgery code was entered there. Code bowel obstruction as indexed.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

**Part R**

---

(b) If the complication is classified to Chapter XIX, code the nature of injury code followed by the external cause code.

- |                                      |            |
|--------------------------------------|------------|
| I (a) Sepsis and anuria              | A419 R34   |
| (b) P.O. peritonitis                 | T814 &Y839 |
| (c) P.O. ca. of colon c̄ obstruction | &C189 K566 |

Code peritonitis as the complication as indexed under Peritonitis, postprocedural, T814. Code Y839 for the procedure. Peritonitis is considered to be a complication of surgery when reported as “postop” and not reported as the reason for surgery. Place an ampersand preceding the surgery code and the cancer of colon to identify the underlying reason for surgery.

- |                         |            |
|-------------------------|------------|
| I (a) Cardiac arrest    | I469       |
| (b) Peritonitis, postop | T814 &Y839 |
| (c) Cholelithiasis      | &K802      |

Code I(a) as indexed. Code I(b), peritonitis, as the complication, T814 and Y839 for the procedure. Peritonitis is considered a complication of surgery when reported as “staus postop” and not reported as the reason for surgery. Precede the E-code with an ampersand. Code I(c), cholelithiasis, as indexed and precede the code by an ampersand to indicate the condition necessitating surgery.

- |                          |            |
|--------------------------|------------|
| I (a) MI postgastrectomy | T818 &Y836 |
| II Gastric ulcer surgery | &K259      |

Code I(a), M.I. postgastrectomy, T818 Y836. M.I. is considered to be a complication of surgery when reported as “postoperative” and not reported as the reason for surgery. Precede the E-code with an ampersand. Code Part II, gastric ulcer, K259 as indexed and precede the code by an ampersand to indicate the condition necessitating surgery. Do not enter a code in Part II for surgery since gastrectomy was reported on I(a) and the code was entered there.

**SECTION V****Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care****Part R**

---

- |                              |            |
|------------------------------|------------|
| I (a) Postoperative embolism | T817 &Y836 |
| (b) Appendectomy             |            |
| (c) Acute appendicitis       | &K359      |

Code I(a), postoperative embolism, as indexed to T817 and Y836 as indexed under Complication, appendectomy. Precede the E-code with an ampersand. Code I(c), acute appendicitis, as indexed and precede the code by an ampersand to identify the underlying condition that necessitated surgery.

- |                                    |            |
|------------------------------------|------------|
| I (a) Heart failure                | I509       |
| (b) ASHD                           | &I251      |
| II Thrombophlebitis, postoperative | T817 &Y839 |

Code I(a) and I(b) as indexed. Code Part II, thrombophlebitis, postoperative, T817 Y839. Precede the E-code (Y839) by an ampersand. Thrombophlebitis is considered to be a complication of surgery when reported as “postoperative” and not reported as the condition that necessitated surgery. Precede the code on I(b), I251 (ASHD), by an ampersand to indicate the underlying condition necessitating surgery.

- |                            |            |
|----------------------------|------------|
| I (a) Pneumonia            | J189       |
| (b) P.O. infection (wound) | T814 &Y839 |
| (c) Intestinal obstruction | &K566      |

Code I(a) as indexed. Code I(b), p.o. infection (wound), T814 Y839. Precede the E-code with an ampersand. Infection is considered to be a complication of surgery when reported as “postop” and not reported as the reason for surgery. Code I(c), intestinal obstruction, K566 and precede the code by an ampersand to indicate the condition necessitating surgery.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

**Part R**

---

(c) When “postoperative intestinal obstruction” (any K560-K567) is reported and no condition which could have necessitated the procedure is reported:

(i) Code the postoperative intestinal obstruction as the condition which necessitated the surgical procedure if another condition is reported due to the postoperative obstruction.

I (a) Peritonitis	T814
(b) Postoperative bowel	&Y839 &K566
(c) obstruction	

Code I(a), peritonitis, as the complication of surgery. Code I(b), postoperative bowel obstruction Y839 K566. Precede the E-code with an ampersand. Precede the K566 with an ampersand to indicate the condition necessitating surgery.

(ii) Code the postoperative intestinal obstruction to K913 as the complication if no other condition is reported due to postoperative obstruction.

I (a) Postoperative ileus	Y839 &K913
---------------------------	------------

Code I(a) Y839 K913. Precede K913 by an ampersand. Consider the postoperative ileus to be the complication since no other condition is reported due to this condition.

**NOTE:**

(4) Status post - When status post (s/p) qualifies a condition, disregard the statement of status post and code the condition as indexed. This applies whether or not surgery is mentioned elsewhere on the certificate.

I (a) Cardiogenic shock	R570
(b) Myocardial infarction	I219
(c) Ischemic heart disease; status post MI; CABG	I259 I219

Code each condition as indexed. No code is entered for the surgery since no complication is reported. Assume the ischemic heart disease was the reason the CABG was performed.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

---

**Part R**

I	(a) S/P cardiac arrest	I469
	(b) Arteriosclerosis	I709
II	S/P gastrectomy, cancer stomach	C169

Code each condition as indexed. No code is entered for the surgery since no complication is reported.

I	(a) Status post MI	I219
	(b) ASHD	I251

Code the MI as indexed.

## SECTION V

## Effects of External Cause of Injury and External Causes of Injury and Poisoning Complications of Medical and Surgical Care

### Part R

---

d. Complication as first entry on lowest used line in Part I

- (1) When one of the conditions listed below is reported as the first entry on the lowest used line in Part I with surgery (any) reported on same line or in Part II, code this condition as a complication of surgery.

**Do not** apply this instruction:

- (a) When the surgery is stated to have been performed 28 days or more prior to death.
- (b) When the condition on the lowest used line predates the surgery.
- (c) When the surgery is stated to have been performed for the condition reported as the first entry on the lowest line.

Acute renal failure
Aspiration
Atelectasis
Bacteremia
Cardiac arrest (any I469)
Disseminated intravascular coagulopathy (DIC)
Embolism (any site)
Gas gangrene
Hemolysis, hemolytic infection
Hemorrhage NOS
Infarction (any site)
Infection NOS
Occlusion (any site)
Phlebitis (any site)
Phlebothrombosis (any site)
Pneumonia (J120-J168, J180-J189, J690, J698)
Pneumothorax
Pulmonary insufficiency
Renal failure (acute) NOS
Septicemia (any A400-A419)
Shock (R570-R579)
Thrombophlebitis (any site)
Thrombosis (any site)

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

**Part R**

- 
- |                                  |            |
|----------------------------------|------------|
| I (a) Pneumonia                  | J958       |
| (b)                              |            |
| (c)                              |            |
| II Diabetic gangrene, amputation | &E145 Y835 |

Code pneumonia as a complication of the amputation since it is the first entry on the lowest used line in Part I and surgery, not indicated to have been performed 28 days or more prior to death, is reported in Part II.

- |                                     |            |
|-------------------------------------|------------|
| I (a) Pneumonia                     | J189       |
| (b) Pulmonary embolism, gastrectomy | T817 &Y836 |
| (c)                                 |            |
| II Cancer of stomach                | &C169      |

Code pulmonary embolism as a complication of gastrectomy since it is the first entry on the lowest used line in Part I and gastrectomy, not stated to have been performed 28 days or more prior to death, is reported on the same line as the embolism.

Date of death 09/17/96

- |                                    |           |
|------------------------------------|-----------|
| I (a) Pleural effusion             | J90       |
| (b) Pulmonary embolism & pneumonia | T817 J189 |
| (c)                                |           |
| II                                 | &Y839     |

Operation block  
/9/15/96/

**NOTE:** When a date is entered in the operation block, code as if surgery was performed on that date.

Code I(a) as indexed. Code pulmonary embolism as the complication of surgery since this condition is the first condition on the lowest used line in Part I and surgery was performed less than 28 days prior to death.

SECTION V

Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care

Part R

- I (a) Pulmonary infarction I269
- (b)
- (c)
- II Cardiac catheterization

Cardiac catheterization is not classified as a surgical procedure; therefore, do not code the pulmonary infarction as a complication.

- (2) When any of the conditions listed below are reported as the first entry on the lowest used line in Part I and **abdominal or pelvic surgery** is reported on the same line or in Part II, code complication as indexed and the surgery to appropriate external cause code (Y83-) where it is indicated on the record by the certifier.

Peritonitis  
Intestinal obstruction (K560-K567)

- I (a) Pneumonia J189
- (b) Peritonitis K659
- (c) Intestinal obstruction K913
- II Colostomy - ulcerative colitis Y833 &K519

Code intestinal obstruction on I(c) as a complication of the surgery reported in Part II, since the surgery was abdominal and there is no indication that this procedure was performed 28 days or more prior to death.

- (3) When any of the conditions listed below are reported as the first entry on the lowest used line in Part I and **surgery of the same site or region** is reported on the same line or in Part II, code complication as indexed and the surgery to appropriate external cause code (Y83-) where it is indicated on the record by the certifier.

Hemorrhage of a site  
Fistula of site(s)

- I (a) Pneumonia J189
- (b) Gastrointestinal hemorrhage T810
- II Gastrectomy for stomach cancer &Y836 &C169

Code gastrointestinal hemorrhage as a complication of the surgery reported in Part II since the surgery was of the same region and there is no indication that surgery was performed 28 days or more prior to death.

SECTION V

Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care

Part R

---

- (4) When conditions listed in paragraph d(1), (2), and (3) are reported as the first entry on the lowest used line in Part I and **surgery stated to have been performed 28 days or more prior to death** is reported on the same line or in Part II, code condition as indexed. Do not code as a complication of the surgery.

I (a) Congestive heart failure	I500
(b) Shock	R579
(c) Acute renal failure	N179
II Surgery performed 6 wks. ago for colon cancer	C189

Code all conditions on this record as indexed. Do not code acute renal failure as a complication of surgery since the surgery was performed 28 days or more prior to death.

- (5) When adhesions are reported as the first entry on the lowest used line in Part I and **surgery stated to have been performed less than one year prior to death** is reported on same line or in Part II, code adhesions to K918 and code the surgery to appropriate E-code (Y83-).

I (a) Septic shock	A419
(b) Peritonitis	K659
(c) Adhesions	K918
II Surgery - 6 mos. ago for ca. of colon	Y839 &C189

Code adhesions on I(c) as a complication of surgery and code the external cause code for the surgery as the first entry in Part II. Code the condition for which surgery was performed and precede by an ampersand.

- (6) When adhesions are reported as the first entry on the lowest used line in Part I and **surgery stated to have been performed one year or more prior to death** is reported on same line or in Part II, code adhesions to K918, Other postprocedural disorders of the digestive system and code the surgery to Y883, sequela of surgery.

I (a) Renal failure	N19
(b) Intestinal obstruction	K566
(c) Adhesions	K918
II Surgery - 16 months ago for diverticulitis	Y883 &K579

Code adhesions on I(c) as a complication of the surgery reported in Part II. Since this surgery was performed more than 1 year ago, code Y883 for the sequela of surgery. Code diverticulitis as the condition for which surgery was performed.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

**Part R**

e. Ill-defined condition as first entry on lowest used line in Part I

When an ill-defined condition classifiable to the following codes:

- I959 (Hypotension, unspecified)
- I99 except occlusion and infarction (Other and unspecified disorders of circulatory system)
- J960 (Acute respiratory failure)
- J969 (Respiratory failure, unspecified)
- P285 (Respiratory failure of newborn)
- R000-R568, R590-R948, R960-R99 (Symptoms, signs, and abnormal clinical and laboratory findings, not elsewhere classified)

is reported as the first entry on the lowest used line in Part I with surgery reported on the same line or in Part II, proceed:

- (1) Code the ill-defined condition, then code the remaining conditions as if the ill-defined condition had not been reported.

- I (a) Senility and MI R54 T818
- II Gastrectomy &Y836 &K3190

Code senility on I(a) R54 as indexed. Then code MI as if senility had not been reported. MI is coded as the complication of the surgery reported in Part II. Gastrectomy indicates a disease of the stomach. Precede both the code for the surgery and the code for Disease, stomach, with an ampersand.

- I (a) Renal failure N990
- (b) Cause unknown R97
- II Mastectomy Y836 &N649

Code cause unknown on I(b) as indexed, then code renal failure as the complication of the surgery reported in Part II as if cause unknown had not been reported. Code Part II, mastectomy, Y836 N649. Code Disease, breast as the condition necessitating the mastectomy and precede it by an ampersand.

## SECTION V

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

## Part R

**Exceptions:**

Code each entry as indexed when:

<b>The first entry on the lowest line in Part I is classifiable to</b>	<b>And a condition classifiable to one of the following codes is reported on the same line or in Part II</b>		
R000 Tachycardia, unspecified	I010-I099 I110-I119 I130-I461	I470-I519 J380-J399	
R002 Palpitations	I010-I099 I110-I119	I130-I461 I470-I519	
R010 Benign and innocent cardiac murmurs R011 Cardiac murmur, unspecified R012 Other cardiac sounds	I010-I099 I110-I119	I130-I461 I470-I519	
R02 Gangrene NEC	A480 E100-E104 E105 E106 E107 E109 E110-E114 E115 E116 E117 E119 E120-E124 E125 E126 E127 E129 E130-E134	E135 E136 E137 E139 E140-E144 E145 E146 E147 E149 I702 I709 I730-I739 K350-K389 K400 K402 K403 K409	K410 K412 K413 K419 K420 K429 K430 K439 K440 K449 K450 K458 K460 K469
R030 Elevated blood pressure reading, without diagnosis of hypertension	I10-I139		

## SECTION V

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

## Part R

<b>The first entry on the lowest line in Part I is classifiable to</b>	<b>And a condition classifiable to one of the following codes is reported on the same line or in Part II</b>	
R040 Epistaxis	C300-C319 C783 C910-C959 D023 D140 D385	I10 J00-J019 J068-J069 J300-J311 J320-J348 J393-J399
R041 Hemorrhage from throat	C090-C148 C320-C329 C783 C798 C910-C959 D000 D020 D104-D109	D141 D370 D380 J00 J020-J040 J042-J069 J311-J312 J350-J399
R042 Hemoptysis R048 Hemorrhage from other sites in respiratory passages	A162-A1690 C320-C349 C780 C783 C910-C959 D020-D022	D141-D143 D380-D381 J040-J22 J370-J387 J393-J989
R05 Cough	F453 J101 J1010	J111 J1110 R042
R060 Dyspnea	A162-A1690 B909 C33-C399 C780-C783 D142-D159	D381-D383 D385-D386 J40-J989 P221

## SECTION V

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

## Part R

The first entry on the lowest line in Part I is classifiable to	And a condition classifiable to one of the following codes is reported on the same line or in Part II										
R061 Stridor	J385										
R062 Wheezing	<table border="0"> <tr> <td>A162-A1690</td> <td>D381-D383</td> </tr> <tr> <td>B909</td> <td>D385-D386</td> </tr> <tr> <td>C33-C399</td> <td>J40-J989</td> </tr> <tr> <td>C780-C783</td> <td>P221</td> </tr> <tr> <td>D142-D159</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	A162-A1690	D381-D383	B909	D385-D386	C33-C399	J40-J989	C780-C783	P221	D142-D159	
A162-A1690	D381-D383										
B909	D385-D386										
C33-C399	J40-J989										
C780-C783	P221										
D142-D159											
R064 Hyperventilation	F453										
R066 Hiccough	F453										
R090 Asphyxia	T360-T659										
R104 Other and unspecified abdominal pain	R100 R193										
R11 Nausea and vomiting	<table border="0"> <tr> <td>J1010</td> <td>J118</td> </tr> <tr> <td>J108</td> <td>K250-K289</td> </tr> <tr> <td>J1110</td> <td>K800-K820</td> </tr> </table>	J1010	J118	J108	K250-K289	J1110	K800-K820				
J1010	J118										
J108	K250-K289										
J1110	K800-K820										
R17 Unspecified jaundice	<table border="0"> <tr> <td>B150-B199</td> <td>C787-C788</td> </tr> <tr> <td>C220-C259</td> <td>K700-K839</td> </tr> </table>	B150-B199	C787-C788	C220-C259	K700-K839						
B150-B199	C787-C788										
C220-C259	K700-K839										
R18 Ascites	<table border="0"> <tr> <td>C160-C269</td> <td>C796</td> </tr> <tr> <td>C56</td> <td>C80-C969</td> </tr> <tr> <td>C784</td> <td>K700-K709</td> </tr> <tr> <td>C787-C788</td> <td>K740-K746</td> </tr> </table>	C160-C269	C796	C56	C80-C969	C784	K700-K709	C787-C788	K740-K746		
C160-C269	C796										
C56	C80-C969										
C784	K700-K709										
C787-C788	K740-K746										
R233 Spontaneous ecchymoses	D690-D699										

## SECTION V

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

## Part R

<b>The first entry on the lowest line in Part I is classifiable to</b>	<b>And the condition classifiable to one of the following codes is reported on the same line or in Part II</b>
R250 Abnormal head movements R251 Tremor, unspecified R252 Cramp and spasm R253 Fasciculation R258 Other and unspecified abnormal involuntary movements	G110-G119 G20-G259 G400-G419 G510 G800-G839
R260 Ataxic gait R261 Paralytic gait R262 Difficulty in walking, not elsewhere classified R268 Other and unspecified abnormalities of gait and mobility	A521
R270 Ataxia, unspecified	A521 A523 G110-G119
R278 Other and unspecified lack of coordination	A521 G110-G119
R290 Tetany	E200-E209
R291 Meningismus	J1010                      J1110 J108                         J118
R298 Other and unspecified symptoms and signs involving the nervous and musculoskeletal systems	G800-G839

## SECTION V

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

## Part R

<b>The first entry on the lowest line in Part I is classifiable to</b>	<b>And a condition classifiable to one of the following codes is reported on the same line or in Part II</b>
R300 Dysuria R301 Vesical tenesmus R309 Painful micturition, unspecified	C600-C689 D280-D309 C790-C791 D390-D419 C796 N000-N999 C798 Q600-Q649 D060-D061
R31 Unspecified hematuria	B508 D060-D061 B54 D280-D309 C600-C689 D390-D419 C790-C791 N000-N999 C796 Q600-Q649 C798
R32 Unspecified urinary incontinence R33 Retention of urine	C600-C689 D280-D309 C790-C791 D390-D419 C796 N000-N999 C798 Q600-Q649 D060-D061
R34 Anuria and oliguria	C600-C689 D280-D309 C790-C791 D390-D419 C796 N000-N999 C798 Q600-Q649 D060-D061 T795
R35 Polyuria R36 Urethral discharge R390 Extravasation of urine R391 Other difficulties with micturition R392 Extrarenal uremia R398 Other and unspecified symptoms and signs involving the urinary system	C600-C689 D280-D309 C790-C791 D390-D419 C796 N000-N999 C798 Q600-Q649 D060-D061

## SECTION V

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

## Part R

The first entry on the lowest line in Part I is classifiable to	And a condition classifiable to one of the following codes is reported on the same line or in Part II
R400 Somnolence R401 Stupor	E100 E147 E107 E15 E110 K729 E117 S020-S024 E120 S026-S029 E127 S060-S099 E130 T902 E137 T905-T909 E140
R402 Coma, unspecified	E100 E132-E136 E101 E137 E102-E106 E139 E107 E140 E109 E141 E110 E142-E146 E111 E147 E112-E116 E149 E117 E15 E119 E160-E162 E120 K729 E121 S020-S024 E122-E126 S026-S029 E127 S060-S099 E129 T902 E130 T905-T909 E131
R529 Pain, unspecified	G547
R568 Other and unspecified convulsions	A35 G400-G419 O100-O11 O13-O16

## SECTION V

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

## Part R

<b>The first entry on the lowest line in Part I is classifiable to</b>		<b>And a condition classifiable to one of the following codes is reported on the same line or in Part II</b>	
R590	Localized enlarged lymph nodes	B270-B279 C810-C969	
R591	Generalized enlarged lymph nodes	B24 B270-B279 B588	B589 C810-C969
R599	Enlarged lymph nodes, unspecified	B270-B279 C810-C969	
R600	Localized edema	E43	N000-N058
R601	Generalized edema	E877	N059
R609	Edema, unspecified	E43 E877 N000-N058	
R628	Other lack of expected normal physiological development	B24 E45 E46	
R630	Anorexia	F500	
R631	Polydipsia	E232 N251	
R64	Cachexia	B24 E41 E46	
R730	Abnormal glucose tolerance test	E100-E162 E891	
R780	Finding of alcohol in blood	F101-F109	

## SECTION V

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

## Part R

<b>The first entry on the lowest line in Part I is classifiable to</b>	<b>And a condition classifiable to one of the following codes is reported on the same line or in Part II</b>	
R788 Finding of other specified substances, not normally found in blood	A000-A079 A090-A499 J13-J159 J180-J189	
R798 Other specified abnormal findings of blood chemistry	E100 E127 E101 E129 E102-E106 E130 E107 E131 E109 E132-E136 E110 E137 E111 E139 E112-E116 E140 E117 E141 E119 E142-E146 E120 E147 E121 E149 E122-E126	
R799 Abnormal finding of blood chemistry, unspecified	E101 E127 E107 E131 E111 E137 E117 E141 E121 E147	
R80 Isolated proteinuria	C900 N000-N079 D511 N170-N19 D649 N250-N289	
R81 Glycosuria	E100-E149 E748	
R823 Hemoglobinuria	B508 B54 D595-D596	

**SECTION V****Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care****Part R**

---

<b>The first entry on the lowest line in Part I is classifiable to</b>	<b>And a condition classifiable to one of the following codes is reported on the same line or in Part II</b>
R824 Acetonuria	E101 E127 E107 E131 E111 E137 E117 E141 E121 E147
R826 Abnormal urine levels of substances chiefly nonmedicinal as to source	F101-F109
R893 Abnormal findings in specimens from other organs, systems and tissues	F101-F109

## SECTION V

## Effects of External Cause of Injury and External Causes of Injury and Poisoning Complications of Medical and Surgical Care

### Part R

---

I (a) Pneumonia	J189
(b) Coma	R402
II Surgery for diabetic gangrene	E145

Code I(a) and I(b) as indexed. Coma is reported as the first condition on the lowest used line, **but** diabetic gangrene is reported in Part II. Therefore, pneumonia cannot be coded as a complication of surgery. Do not enter a code for surgery since no complication is reported.

I (a) Aspiration pneumonia	J690
(b) Jaundice	R17
II Cholecystectomy for gallstones	K802

Code I(a) and I(b) as indexed. Jaundice is reported as the first condition on the lowest used line with gallstones reported in Part II. Therefore, aspiration pneumonia cannot be coded as a complication of surgery. Code Part II, K802 (gallstones). Do not enter a code for the cholecystectomy since no complication was reported.

I (a) Sepsis	A419
(b) Gangrene, pneumonia, and	R02 J189 I709
(c) arteriosclerosis	
II Surgery	

Code I(a) and I(b) as indexed. Gangrene is reported as the first condition on the lowest used line, but arteriosclerosis is reported on the same line; therefore, pneumonia cannot be a complication of surgery. Do not enter a code for surgery since no complication is reported.

f. Relating condition for which surgery was performed to the site of the surgery

- (1) When a condition of unspecified site is reported with surgery of a defined site, code the condition of unspecified site to the defined site.

I (a) Aneurysm	I719
II Operation for aortic aneurysm	I719

Code I(a), aneurysm of unspecified site to aortic aneurysm, I719, since the surgery is of a defined site. Code aortic aneurysm in Part II. Do not enter a code for the surgery since there is no reported complication.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

**Part R**

---

- (2) When a condition of a site is reported with surgery of a more defined part of the site, code the condition to the more specified site.

I (a) Carcinoma colon C186  
II Left colectomy

Code I(a), carcinoma colon to carcinoma left colon, C186, since the surgery is of a more specified part of the colon. Do not enter a code for the surgery since there is no reported complication.

I (a) Valvular heart disease I059 I069  
II Status post mitral and aortic valve repair

Code I(a) valvular heart disease of unspecified valve to disease, mitral and aortic valves since the surgery is of specified valves. Do not enter a code for the surgery since there is no reported complication.

- (3) When a condition of a site is reported with surgery for the same condition of unspecified or a less defined part of the site, code the condition to the most defined site.

I (a) Cancer of head of pancreas C250  
II Pancreatectomy for cancer C250

Code I(a), cancer head of pancreas, C250. Code Part II as cancer of head of pancreas since elsewhere a more defined site was reported of the condition for which surgery was performed. Do not enter a code for the surgery since there is no reported complication.

- (4) Do not apply these instructions when more than one condition or a condition of multiple specified sites which could have necessitated the surgery is reported.

I (a) Cardiac arrest I469  
(b) Respiratory arrest R092  
(c) Carcinoma of lung, liver, brain C349 C787 C793  
II Findings of operation: Carcinoma C80

Code I(a), I(b) and I(c) as indexed and according to neoplasm instructions. Code Part II, carcinoma, C80. Do not code the carcinoma to a more defined site since multiple specified sites are reported for which the surgery could have been performed. Do not enter a code for the surgery since there is no reported complication.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

**Part R**

---

g. Complications of amputation and amputation stump

When a complication (stated or implied) occurs as a result of an amputation, code the complication to Chapters I-XIX. When the complication is classifiable to Chapters I-XVIII and the condition that necessitated the amputation is not reported, precede the code for the complication with an ampersand.

- |                                  |       |
|----------------------------------|-------|
| I (a) Renal failure              | &N990 |
| (b) Below knee amputation of leg | Y835  |

Code I(a), renal failure, N990 as the complication of surgery. Code I(b), below knee amputation of leg, Y835. Precede the N990 with an ampersand since it is classified to Chapter XIV and the condition that necessitated the amputation is not reported.

When there is a complication of an amputation stump, code the complication to T873-T876 or to the appropriate code in Chapters I-XVIII. (Do not use T873-T876 for “stump” of internal organs).

- |                                 |            |
|---------------------------------|------------|
| I (a) Infected amputation stump | T874 &Y835 |
| (b) Osteosarcoma of leg         | &C402      |

Code I(a), infected amputation stump T874 Y835. Precede the E-code, Y835, by an ampersand. Code I(b), osteosarcoma of leg, C402. Precede C402 by an ampersand to indicate the condition that necessitated the amputation.

3. Complications of medical procedures other than surgical (Y84)

Medical procedures are any type of nonsurgical procedures used in the treatment of diseases or injuries. Although almost any condition reported due to medical procedures is regarded as a complication, there are a few diseases that are not considered complications. Do not code the conditions listed under 2. a. (1) (a) and (b) in Section V, Part R as complications of medical procedures. The medical procedure (Y84) is not coded when there is no evidence of a complication. If the reason for the medical procedure is not reported, do not assume a disease condition.

Interpret “due to medical procedures” as a condition(s) on an upper line with a medical procedure as the first condition on the next lower line.

- a. When a condition is reported due to a named medical procedure other than a surgical operation or is modified by a named procedure and can be considered as a complication(s) or adverse effect, code as follows:

**STEP 1:** Determine if the complication is in the Index qualified by the specific procedure reported.

I	(a) Kidney blockage	&N990
	(b) Postcystoscopic procedure	Y848

Code I(a) as indexed using **Step 1:**

Block

- kidney

- - postcystoscopic or postprocedural N99.0.

Code I(b) Y848 as indexed under Complication, procedures other than surgical operation, specified NEC. Precede N990 with an ampersand.

**STEP 2:** If the Index does not qualify the complication with the specified procedure, determine if the procedure is indexed under Complications (from) (of).

I	(a) Urinary tract infection	T835
	(b) Post-indwelling urinary catheter	&Y846

Code I(a) using **Step 2:**

Complications (from) (of)  
 - catheter (device)  
 - - urinary (indwelling)  
 - - - infection or inflammation T83.5

Select infection or inflammation since urinary tract infection is an infectious condition.

Code I(b) Y846 as indexed under Complication, catheter, catheterization (urinary). Precede the E-code with an ampersand.

I	(a) Pulmonary embolism	T838
	(b) Catheter	&Y846

Code I(a) using **Step 2:**

Complications (from) (of)  
 - catheter (device)  
 - - specified NEC T83.8

Select specified since pulmonary embolism is a specified complication.

Code I(b) Y846 as indexed under Complication, catheter, catheterization (urinary). Precede the E-code with an ampersand.

When the Index does not provide for the term as specified in **STEP 1** and **STEP 2**, code the complication as if procedure NOS was reported instead of the named medical procedure as defined in the following instructions:

**NOTE:** Before continuing to **STEP 3**, it is important to determine the nature of the named procedure.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

---

**Part R**

b. When a condition that is

- (1) reported due to a named procedure cannot be assigned a code using **STEP 1** or **STEP 2** or
- (2) reported due to a procedure other than surgical operation NOS or therapy NOS, and can be considered as a complication(s) or adverse effect, code as follows:

**STEP 3:** Determine if the complication is in the Index, qualified:

- (a) as reported
- (b) with any term meaning “due to” procedure or medical care (see Section II, Part C, 2, a, “Due to” written in or implied)
- (c) as postprocedural

I (a) Renal failure	&N990
(b) Paracentesis	Y844

Code I(a) as indexed using **Step 3 (c)**:

Failure  
- renal  
- - postprocedural N99.0

Code I(b) Y844 as indexed under Complication, paracentesis. Precede N990 with an ampersand.

**STEP 4:** If the Index does not provide a code for the complication in Steps 1-3, determine if:

- (a) the site of the complication is in the Index under Complications (from) (of)
  - medical procedure
- or**
- (b) the system in which the complication occurred (based upon the code assigned in the Index) is in the Index under Complications (from) (of)
  - medical procedure
- (c) the system in which the complication occurred (based upon the code assigned in the Index) is in the Index under Complications (from) (of)
  - postprocedural

I (a) Cardiac arrest	T818
(b) Therapy	&Y849
(c) Arteriosclerotic heart disease	&I251

Code I(a) using **Step 4 (a)**:

Complications (from) (of)  
 - medical procedure  
 - - cardiac T81.8

Select cardiac since this is the site of the complication.

Code I(b) Y849 as indexed under Complication, procedures other than surgical operation. Precede the E-code and the condition requiring treatment with an ampersand.

SECTION V

Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care

---

Part R

- |                       |       |
|-----------------------|-------|
| I (a) Pulmonary edema | &J958 |
| (b) Endotracheal tube | Y848  |

Code I(a) using **Step 4 (b)**:

- Complications (from) (of)  
- medical procedure  
- - respiratory  
- - - specified NEC J95.8

Select respiratory, specified since pulmonary edema is classified to J81, a specified disease in the respiratory system.

Code I(b) Y848 as indexed under Complication, procedures other than surgical operation, specified NEC. Precede J958 with an ampersand.

- |                       |       |
|-----------------------|-------|
| I (a) Stroke          | I64   |
| (b) Cerebral embolism | T817  |
| (c) Renal angiogram   | &Y848 |

Code I(b) using **Step 4 (b)**:

- Complications (from) (of)  
- medical procedure  
- - circulatory T81.7

Select circulatory since cerebral embolism is classified to I634, a specified disease in the circulatory system.

Code I(c) Y848 as indexed under Complication, procedures other than surgical operation, specified NEC. Precede the E-code with an ampersand.

**STEP 5:** When a reported specified complication cannot be classified to a system that is indexed, code T818, Other complications of procedures, not elsewhere classified.

I (a) Shock	R579
(b) Coagulation disorder	T818
(c) Hyperthermia therapy	&Y848

Coagulation disorder is not indexed as due to a procedure or as postprocedural. This condition is classified to D689, a disease of the blood-forming organs. Neither the term nor the body system is indexed under Complications (from) (of), medical procedure.

Code I(b) using **Step 5:**

Complications (from) (of)  
- procedure  
- - specified T81.8

Select specified since coagulation disorder is a specified complication.

Code I(c) Y848 as indexed under Complication, procedures other than surgical operation, specified NEC. Precede the E-code with an ampersand.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

**Part R**

4. Complications of procedures involving administration of drugs, radiation, and instruments

a. Many procedures (e.g., angiogram, barium enema, pyelogram) involve the administration of drugs and the use of x-ray or radioactive substances and various instruments. When complications of these procedures are reported, determine, if possible, which specific part of the procedure caused the complication. Assign the appropriate codes for the complication and the procedure. When the complication is classified to Chapters I-XVIII and the reason for the procedure is not reported, precede the code for the complication with an ampersand. If the reason for the medical care is not reported, do not assume a disease condition.

- |                               |       |
|-------------------------------|-------|
| I (a) Pulmonary embolism      | T828  |
| (b) Cardiac catheterization   | &Y840 |
| (c) Ventricular septal defect | &Q210 |

Code I(a) as the complication of the catheterization. Code I(b) as indexed, Y840 and precede with an ampersand. Code I(c) as indexed and precede with an ampersand to indicate the reason for the procedure.

- |                                     |           |
|-------------------------------------|-----------|
| I (a) Barium impaction of intestine | Y575 K564 |
| (b) Barium enema                    |           |
| (c) Colon polyps                    | &K635     |

Code the barium on I(a) to adverse effect in therapeutic use, Y575, since it was the drug that caused the impaction. Code the complication, impaction, as indexed, Impaction, intestine, K564. Do not enter a code on I(b) for barium since it was coded on I(a). Code I(c) as indexed and precede with an ampersand to indicate the reason for the procedure.

- |                                    |       |
|------------------------------------|-------|
| I (a) Anaphylactic shock           | T886  |
| (b) Contrast medium (aortogram)    | &Y575 |
| II Dissecting aortic arch aneurysm | &I710 |

Code I(a) as the complication of the contrast medium. Indexed as Shock, anaphylactic, correct substance properly administered. Code I(b) contrast medium as adverse effect in therapeutic use, since the drug caused the anaphylactic shock. Code Part II as indexed and precede with an ampersand to indicate the reason for the procedure.

**SECTION V****Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care****Part R**

I (a) Peritonitis	K659
(b) Hemorrhage of colon	K918
(c) Barium enema	Y848
(d) Diverticulitis	&K579

Code I(a) as indexed. Code I(b) as the complication of the administration of the enema. Code I(c) barium enema, Y848, since the hemorrhage most likely resulted from the administration of the enema rather than the barium. Code I(d) as indexed and precede with an ampersand to indicate the reason for the procedure.

I (a) Cerebral hemorrhage	T817
(b) Cerebral arteriogram	&Y848

Code I(a) as the complication of the arteriogram. Code I(b) cerebral arteriogram, Y848, since the hemorrhage resulted from the procedure and precede with an ampersand. Do not assume a disease condition for the cerebral arteriogram.

- b. When a complication results from the administration of anesthesia, code the complication as indexed and code the appropriate external cause code (Y480-Y485) (refer to Section V, Part R, 1, Drugs, medicaments and biological substances causing adverse effects in therapeutic use).

I (a) Cardiac failure	I509
(b) Anesthesia for prostate surgery	Y484
(c)	&N429

Code I(a) as indexed and as the complication of the anesthesia. Code I(b) anesthesia to adverse effect in therapeutic use, Y484, since it was the anesthesia that caused the heart failure. Code I(c) N429, disease prostate, as the reason for surgery and precede with an ampersand.

I (a) Cardiac failure	T818
(b) Prostate surgery under anesthesia	&Y839
(c) Benign prostatic hypertrophy	&N40

Code I(a) as indexed under Failure, heart, complicating surgery. Code I(b) prostate surgery as indexed. Code I(c) as indexed and precede with an ampersand to indicate the reason for surgery.

---

5. Complications of radiation during medical care (Y842)

When a complication results from exposure to radiation, except radio-frequency radiation, infrared heaters or lamps and visible or ultraviolet light sources, consider as exposure of patient to radiation during medical care unless there is information on the certificate that indicates otherwise. Code complications of radiation during medical care as follows:

a. Complications qualified as “radiation,” “radiation-induced,” “due to radiation,” or “following radiation”

(1) Coding the complication

(a) If the Index provides a code for the complication qualified by one of these terms, use that code.

(b) If the Index does not provide a code for the complication qualified by one of these terms, code the complication as indexed without the qualifier.

(2) Placement of codes

(a) If the complication is qualified as “radiation” or “radiation-induced” and classified to Chapters I-XVIII, code the external cause code followed by the code for the complication.

(b) If the complication is qualified as “radiation” or “radiation-induced” and classified to Chapter XIX, code the nature of injury code followed by the external cause code.

b. Code the external cause code to Y842, (Radiological procedure and radiotherapy).

c. Use of ampersand

(1) If the reason for the radiation therapy is reported, precede this condition with an ampersand.

(2) If the reason for the radiation therapy is not reported and a malignant neoplasm is reported, precede the neoplasm with an ampersand.

(3) If the reason for the radiation therapy is not reported and the complication is classified to Chapters I-XVIII, precede the complication with an ampersand.

**SECTION V****Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care****Part R**

- |  |           |
|--|-----------|
| I (a) Pulmonary edema                      | J81       |
| (b) Radiation pneumonitis                  | Y842 J700 |
| (c) Radiation therapy for cancer of breast |           |
| (d)  | &C509     |

Code I(b) to the external cause as indexed where the radiation is first reported followed by the code for the complication. Pneumonitis is the complication of the radiation and is indexed, Pneumonitis, radiation. Precede the code for cancer of breast with an ampersand to indicate the reason for the radiation.

- |                          |           |
|--------------------------|-----------|
| I (a) Carcinomatosis     | C80       |
| (b) Oat cell carcinoma   | &C349     |
| (c)                      |           |
| II X-ray fibrosis - lung | Y842 J701 |

Code Part II to the external cause as indexed followed by the code for the complication. Fibrosis of lung is the complication and is indexed, Fibrosis, lung, following radiation. Code I(b) as indexed and precede with an ampersand to indicate the reason for the radiation.

- |                       |       |
|-----------------------|-------|
| I (a) Pneumonia       | J700  |
| (b) Radiation         | Y842  |
| (c) Carcinoma of face | &C760 |

Pneumonia is the complication of the radiation reported on I(b). Code I(a) as indexed, Pneumonia, radiation. Code the external cause as indexed on I(b). Code I(c) as indexed and precede with an ampersand to indicate the reason for the radiation.

- |                       |       |
|-----------------------|-------|
| I (a) Debility        | R53   |
| (b) Radiation therapy | Y842  |
| (c) Hodgkin's disease | &C819 |

Debility is the complication of the radiation reported on I(b). Code I(a) as indexed since the Classification does not provide a code for radiation debility. Code the external cause as indexed on I(b). Code I(c) as indexed and precede with an ampersand to indicate the reason for the radiation.

**SECTION V****Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care****Part R**

I (a) Radiation-induced acute	Y842 J700
(b) bronchitis	
II Carcinoma of trachea	&C33

Code I(a) to the external cause as indexed, followed by the code for the complication. Acute bronchitis is the complication and is indexed Bronchitis, acute, due to radiation. Code Part II as indexed and precede with an ampersand to indicate the reason for the radiation.

I (a) Alopecia	L581
(b) Radiation	Y842
II Hodgkin's granuloma	&C817

Alopecia is the complication of the radiation reported on I(b). Code I(a) as indexed under Alopecia, X-ray. Code the external cause as indexed on I(b). Code Part II as indexed and precede with an ampersand to indicate the reason for the radiation.

I (a) Peritonitis	K659
(b) Intestinal fistula	&K632
(c) Radiation therapy	Y842

Intestinal fistula is the complication of the radiation reported on I(c). Code I(b) as indexed since the Classification does not provide a code for radiation intestinal fistula. Code the external cause as indexed on I(c). Precede the complication (intestinal fistula) with an ampersand since it is classified to Chapters I-XVIII and the reason for the radiation was not reported.

- d. When radiation fibrosis is reported without a site or of a site not indexed, code the fibrosis to T66, Complications, radiation.

I (a) Cerebral anoxia	G931
(b) Carcinoma of tongue	&C029
II Radiation fibrosis, upper airway obstruction	T66 &Y842 J988

Code Part II Complications, radiation for the fibrosis and the external cause as indexed. Code the nature of injury followed by the external cause. Place an ampersand preceding the E-code and the condition on I(b) to indicate the reason for the radiation.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care**

**Part R**

I (a) Radiation pelvic fibrosis	T66 & Y842
(b) Carcinoma of uterus	& C55

Code I(a) Complications, radiation for the pelvic fibrosis and the external cause as indexed. Code the nature of injury followed by the external cause. Place an ampersand preceding the E-code and the condition on I(b) to indicate the reason for the radiation.

6. Misadventures to patients during surgical and medical care (Y60-Y69)

Except for poisoning, overdose of drug and wrong drug given in error, code most misadventures (accidents or errors) to patients during surgical and medical care to Complications of surgical and medical care (T800-T889) in the nature of injury chapter and to Y600-Y69 in the external cause chapter. Code burns from local applications or irradiation to burns in the nature of injury chapter and to Y600-Y69 in the external cause chapter. Code trauma from instruments during delivery to Chapter XV and do not use an external cause. A limited number of conditions attributable to misadventure to patient (Y600-Y69) in the external cause code, e.g., serum hepatitis, are classified to Chapters I-XVIII.

**Indications of Misadventures**

Hemorrhage (of a site) Rupture (of a site)	Stated as intraoperative or during medical and surgical care
Cut or cutting (of a site) Perforation (of a site) Puncture (of a site) Laceration (of a site)	Reported as postoperative, intraoperative, during or due to medical and surgical care
Burns (of a site)	From local applications or irradiation
Serum hepatitis	From blood transfusions
Fracture (thoracic area)	From cardiopulmonary resuscitation From Heimlich maneuver

This list is not all inclusive.

## SECTION V

## Effects of External Cause of Injury and External Causes of Injury and Poisoning Complications of Medical and Surgical Care

---

### Part R

When a misadventure to patient during surgical and medical care (classifiable to Y600-Y69) is reported and the condition which necessitated the surgical or medical care is stated or implied, precede the code for this condition with an ampersand. Apply the instructions for Condition necessitating Surgery in Section V, Part R, 2, b.

- |                         |       |
|-------------------------|-------|
| I (a) Hemorrhage during | T810  |
| (b) craniotomy          | &Y600 |
| (c) Brain tumor         | &D432 |

Code I(a) Complication, surgical procedure, hemorrhage. Since “during” is stated, interpret I(b) as a misadventure and code Misadventure, hemorrhage, surgical operation. Code I(c) as indexed and precede with an ampersand to indicate the reason for surgery.

- |                            |             |
|----------------------------|-------------|
| I (a) Perforation of colon | T812        |
| (b) Colostomy              | &Y600 &K639 |

Code I(a) Perforation, surgical. Interpret I(b) as a misadventure and code Misadventure, perforation, surgical operation. Since the surgery indicates a disease of the colon, code this as the reason for surgery. Precede K639 with an ampersand

- |  |            |
|--|------------|
| I (a) Cardiac tamponade                        | I319       |
| (b) Perforation of auricle by cardiac catheter | T812 &Y605 |
| II Therapeutic misadventure                    | T889       |

The perforation occurred during a cardiac catheterization. Code I(b) as accidental perforation of organ during a procedure, and accidental perforation during a heart catheterization. Code Part II as indexed, Misadventure (prophylactic) (therapeutic).

- |                                      |            |
|--------------------------------------|------------|
| I (a) Peritonitis                    | K659       |
| (b) Accidental perforation of        | T812 &Y607 |
| (c) colon                            |            |
| II Self-administered tap water enema |            |

I(b) is a reported misadventure occurring during medical care. Code T812, accidental perforation during a procedure and Y607, accidental perforation during the administration of an enema.

**SECTION V****Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Complications of Medical and Surgical Care****Part R**

- 
- |                       |       |
|-----------------------|-------|
| I (a) Serum hepatitis | B169  |
| (b) Blood transfusion | Y640  |
| (c) Leukemia          | &C959 |

Serum hepatitis is a misadventure occurring during a blood transfusion. Code I(a) B169, serum hepatitis, and I(b) Y640, Contaminated medical or biological substance transfused or infused. Code I(c) as indexed and precede with an ampersand to indicate the reason for the transfusion.

- |                         |       |
|-------------------------|-------|
| I (a) Burns             | T300  |
| (b) Radiation therapy   | &Y632 |
| (c) Cancer of esophagus | &C159 |

Code I(a) T300, radiation burns. Code I(b) Y632, Overdose of radiation given during therapy. Code I(c) as indexed and precede with an ampersand to indicate the reason for the radiation.

- |                                   |       |
|-----------------------------------|-------|
| I (a) Rib fracture                | T818  |
| (b) Cardiopulmonary resuscitation | &Y658 |
| (c) Pulmonary embolism            | &I269 |

Rib fracture due to cardiopulmonary resuscitation is considered a misadventure. Code I(a) Complications, medical procedure, specified NEC T818. Code I(b) Misadventure, specified type Y658. Code I(c) as indexed and precede with an ampersand to indicate the reason for cardiopulmonary resuscitation.

- |                       |     |
|-----------------------|-----|
| I (a) HIV             | B24 |
| (b) Blood transfusion |     |
| (c) Hemophilia        | D66 |

Code I(a) and I(c) as indexed. No code for I(b) since there are no complications reported. Do not consider HIV (any B20-B24) as a misadventure occurring during a blood transfusion.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Sequela of Injuries, Poisonings, and  
Other Consequences of External Causes**

**Part S**

S. Sequela of injuries, poisonings, and other consequences of external causes

A sequela is a late effect, an after effect, or a residual of a nature of injury or external cause. The Classification provides categories T900-T983 for sequela of nature of injury codes and Y850-Y899 for sequela of external causes. There are separate instructions for determining if the nature of injury or the external cause should be coded as sequela. **If either the nature of injury or the external cause requires a sequela code, both the nature of injury and the external cause must be coded to a sequela category.**

1. Sequela of injuries, poisoning, and other consequences of external causes (T900-T983)

Use these categories for the classification of injuries and poisonings (conditions in S00-T88) if:

- a. A statement of sequela of the condition in S00-T88 is reported unless the interval between date of injury and date of death is less than 1 year.

I	(a) Sequela of hip fracture	T931
	(b)	
	(c)	
II		&Y86

Code I(a) to T931 since it is stated as a sequela of hip fracture. Code Part II as sequela of accident NEC.

- b. The condition in S00-T88 is stated to be ancient, healed, history of, late effect of, old, remote, regardless of reported duration, or the interval between onset of this condition and death is indicated to be 1 year or more, whether or not the residual (sequela) effect is specified.

	Date of death 12/1/98	
	I (a) Old head injury	T909
<u>MOD</u>	II	&Y86
A	Accident	Farm
	Date of injury 9/3/98	Tractor overturned

Code I(a) old head injury to Sequela, injury, head since it is stated as old. Interpret “tractor overturning on farm” as contact with agricultural machinery. Code Part II accident - tractor overturned to sequela of other accidents since it resulted in an injury stated as old.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Sequela of Injuries, Poisonings, and  
Other Consequences of External Causes**

---

**Part S**

- c. A condition with a duration of 1 year or more that was due to the condition in S00-T88 is reported.

I (a) Paralysis	16 mos.	T941
(b) Spinal cord injury		T913
(c) Auto accident		&Y850

Code I(a) paralysis to sequela of traumatic paralysis since it is reported due to trauma and has a duration of 1 year or more. Code I(b) spinal cord injury to Sequela, injury, spinal, cord since it caused a condition of 1 year or more. Code I(c) auto accident, to Sequela, motor vehicle accident.

- d. More than one nature of injury or a nature of injury and an external cause are reported on the same line with a duration of 1 year or more, apply the duration to each condition.

I (a) Head injury and skull fracture	Years	T909	T902
(b)			
II Fall		&Y86	

Code both conditions on I(a) as sequela. Do not disregard the duration since there is more than one injury on same line.

I (a) Gunshot wound head	Years	T901	&Y86
--------------------------	-------	------	------

Code both head wound and gunshot as sequela. Apply duration to nature of injury and external cause.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Sequela of Injuries, Poisonings, and  
Other Consequences of External Causes**

---

**Part S**

2. Sequela of external causes (Y850-Y899)

- Y850 Sequela of motor vehicle accident (includes V01-V89)
- Y859 Sequela of other and unspecified transport accidents (includes V90-V99)
- Y86 Sequela of other accidents (excludes W78-W80)
- Y870 Sequela of intentional self-harm
- Y871 Sequela of assault
- Y872 Sequela of events of undetermined intent
- Y880 Sequela of adverse effects caused by drugs, medicaments, and biological substances in therapeutic use
- Y881 Sequela of misadventures to patients during surgical and medical procedures
- Y882 Sequela of adverse incidents associated with medical devices in diagnostic and therapeutic use
- Y883 Sequela of surgical and medical procedures as the cause of abnormal reaction of the patient, or of later complication, without mention of misadventure at the time of the procedure
- Y890 Sequela of legal intervention
- Y891 Sequela of war operations
- Y899 Sequela of unspecified external cause

Use the preceding categories with the appropriate fourth characters for the classification of external causes of injury (V010-Y849) if:

- a. A statement of sequela of the external cause is reported unless the interval between date of external cause and date of death is less than 1 year.

- I (a) Paralysis, sequela of T941 & Y86
- (b) fall down steps

Code I(a) to sequela of traumatic paralysis and sequela of fall down the steps.

**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Sequela of Injuries, Poisonings, and  
Other Consequences of External Causes**

---

**Part S**

b. An injury that is stated to be ancient, healed, history of, late effect of, old, remote, or a delayed union, malunion or nonunion of a fracture that was due to the external cause is reported.

	I	(a) Pneumonia	J189			
<u>MOD</u>		(b) Debility	R53			
A		(c) Nonunion of hip fracture	M841			
	II	Inanition	R64	Y86		
		<table border="1"><tr><td>Accident</td></tr></table>	Accident		<table border="1"><tr><td>Fell at home</td></tr></table>	Fell at home
Accident						
Fell at home						

Code I(c) as indexed. Code sequela of fall last in Part II since the fall resulted in nonunion of the fracture.

	I	(a) ASHD	I251	
	II	Old fractured hip	T931	&Y86

Code I(a) ASHD as indexed. Code Part II old fractured hip, T931 Y86, since the injury was specified as old.

c. If the external cause is stated to be ancient, history of, old, remote, regardless of reported duration, or the interval between onset of the external cause and death is indicated to be 1 year or more.

	I	(a) Old fall, fractured hip	6 months	T931	&Y86		
		(b)					
		(c)					
<u>MOD</u>	II			T931			
A		<table border="1"><tr><td>Accident</td></tr></table>	Accident		<table border="1"><tr><td>Fell and fractured hip 6 months ago</td></tr></table>		Fell and fractured hip 6 months ago
Accident							
Fell and fractured hip 6 months ago							

Code as sequela since the external cause is stated as “old.”



**SECTION V**

**Effects of External Cause of Injury and  
External Causes of Injury and Poisoning  
Sequela of Injuries, Poisonings, and  
Other Consequences of External Causes**

---

**Part S**

f. The complication of the external cause classified to Chapters I-XVIII and the external cause is reported on the same line and the duration is 1 year or more.

I (a) Radiation enteritis	3 years	Y883 K520
(b) Lung cancer		&C349

Code I(a) as a sequela of radiation therapy. Do not disregard the duration. Precede the code for the lung cancer with an ampersand to indicate the reason for medical care.

## APPENDIX A

### Standard Abbreviations and Symbols

---

When an abbreviation is reported on the certificate, refer to this list to determine what the abbreviation represents. **If an abbreviation represents more than one term, determine the correct abbreviation by using other information on the certificate.** If no determination can be made, use abbreviation for first term listed.

AAA	abdominal aortic aneurysm	AEG	air encephalogram
AAS	aortic arch syndrome	AF	auricular or atrial fibrillation; acid fast
AAT	alpha-antitrypsin	AFB	acid-fast bacillus
AAV	AIDS-associated virus	AGG	agammaglobulinemia
AB	abdomen; abortion; asthmatic bronchitis	AGL	acute granulocytic leukemia
ABD	abdomen	AGN	acute glomerulonephritis
ABE	acute bacterial endocarditis	AGS	adrenogenital syndrome
ABS	acute brain syndrome	AHA	acquired hemolytic anemia; autoimmune hemolytic anemia
ACA	adenocarcinoma	AHD	arteriosclerotic heart disease
ACD	arteriosclerotic coronary disease	AHHD	arteriosclerotic hypertensive heart disease
ACH	adrenal cortical hormone	AHG	anti-hemophilic globulin deficiency
ACT	acute coronary thrombosis	AHLE	acute hemorrhagic leukoencephalitis
ACTH	adrenocorticotrophic hormone	AI	aortic insufficiency; additional information
ACVD	arteriosclerotic cardiovascular disease	AIDS	acquired immunodeficiency syndrome
ADEM	acute disseminated encephalomyelitis	AKA	above knee amputation
ADH	antidiuretic hormone		
ADS	antibody deficiency syndrome		

## APPENDIX A

### Standard Abbreviations and Symbols

---

ALC	alcoholism	ARV	AIDS-related virus
ALL	acute lymphocytic leukemia	ARVD	arrhythmogenic right ventricular dysplasia
ALS	amyotrophic lateral sclerosis	AS	arteriosclerotic; arteriosclerosis; aortic stenosis
AMI	acute myocardial infarction	ASA	acetylsalicylic acid (aspirin)
AML	acute myelocytic leukemia	ASAD	arteriosclerotic artery disease
ANS	arteriolonephrosclerosis	ASCAD	arteriosclerotic coronary artery disease
AOD	arterial occlusive disease	ASCD	arteriosclerotic coronary disease
AODM	adult onset diabetes mellitus	ASCHD	arteriosclerotic coronary heart disease
AOM	acute otitis media	ASCRD	arteriosclerotic cardiorenal disease
AP	angina pectoris; anterior and posterior repair; artificial pneumothorax; anterior pituitary	ASCVA	arteriosclerotic cerebrovascular accident
A&P	anterior and posterior repair	ASCVD	arteriosclerotic cardiovascular disease
APC	auricular premature contraction; acetylsalicylic acid, acetophenetidin, and caffeine	ASCVR	arteriosclerotic cardiovascular renal disease
APE	acute pulmonary edema; anterior pituitary extract	ASCVRD	arteriosclerotic cardiovascular renal disease
APH	antepartum hemorrhage	ASD	atrial septal defect
AR	aortic regurgitation	ASDHD	arteriosclerotic decompensated heart disease
ARC	AIDS-related complex		
ARDS	adult respiratory distress syndrome		
ARF	acute respiratory failure, acute renal failure		
ARM	artificial rupture of membranes		

## APPENDIX A

### Standard Abbreviations and Symbols

---

ASHCVD	arteriosclerotic hypertensive cardiovascular disease	AVH	acute viral hepatitis
ASHD	arteriosclerotic heart disease; atriaseptal heart defect	AVP	aortic valve prosthesis
ASHHD	arteriosclerotic hypertensive heart disease	AVR	aortic valve replacement
ASHVD	arteriosclerotic hypertensive vascular disease	AWMI	anterior wall myocardial infarction
ASO	arteriosclerosis obliterans	AZT	azidothymidine
ASPVD	arteriosclerotic peripheral vascular disease	BA	basilar artery; basilar arteriogram; bronchial asthma
ASVD	arteriosclerotic vascular disease	B&B	bronchoscopy and biopsy
ASVH(D)	arteriosclerotic vascular heart disease	BBB	bundle branch block
AT	atherosclerosis; atherosclerotic; atrial tachycardia; antithrombin	B&C	biopsy and cauterization
ATC	all-terrain cycle	BCE	basal cell epithelioma
ATN	acute tubular necrosis	BE	barium enema
ATS	arteriosclerosis	BEH	benign essential hypertension
ATSHD	arteriosclerotic heart disease	BGL	Bartholin's gland
ATV	all-terrain vehicle	BKA	below knee amputation
AUL	acute undifferentiated leukemia	BL	bladder; bucolingual; blood loss; Burkett's lymphoma
AV	arteriovenous; atrioventricular; aortic valve	BMR	basal metabolism rate
AVF	arterio-ventricular fibrillation; arteriovenous fistula	BNA	bladder neck adhesions
		BNO	bladder neck obstruction
		BOMSA	bilateral otitis media serous acute

## APPENDIX A

### Standard Abbreviations and Symbols

---

BOMSC	bilateral otitis media serous chronic	CAS	cerebral arteriosclerosis
BOW	“bag of water” (membrane)	CASCVD	chronic arteriosclerotic cardiovascular disease
B/P, BP	blood pressure	CASHD	chronic arteriosclerotic heart disease
BPH	benign prostate hypertrophy	CAT	computerized axial tomography
BSA	body surface area	CB	chronic bronchitis
BSO	bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy	CBC	complete blood count
BSP	Bromosulfaphthalein (test)	CBD	common bile duct; chronic brain disease
BTL	bilateral tubal ligation	CBS	chronic brain syndrome
BUN	blood, urea, and nitrogen test	CCF	chronic congestive failure
BVL	bilateral vas ligation	CCI	chronic cardiac or coronary insufficiency
B&W	Baldy-Webster suspension (uterine)	CF	congestive failure; cystic fibrosis; Christmas factor (PTC)
BX	biopsy	CFT	chronic follicular tonsillitis
BX CX	biopsy cervix	CGL	chronic granulocytic leukemia
Ca	cancer	CGN	chronic glomerulonephritis
CA	cancer; cardiac arrest; carotid arteriogram	CHA	congenital hypoplastic anemia
CABG	coronary artery bypass graft	CHB	complete heart block
CABS	coronary artery bypass surgery	CHD	congestive heart disease; coronary heart disease; congenital heart disease; Chediak-Higaski Disease
CAD	coronary artery disease		
CAG	chronic atrophic gastritis		
CAO	coronary artery occlusion; chronic airway obstruction		

## APPENDIX A

### Standard Abbreviations and Symbols

---

CHF	congestive heart failure	COOMBS	test for Rh sensitivity
C <sub>2</sub> H <sub>5</sub> OH	ethyl alcohol	COLD	chronic obstructive lung disease
CI	cardiac insufficiency; cerebral infarction	COPD	chronic obstructive pulmonary disease
CID	cytomegalic inclusion disease	COPE	chronic obstructive pulmonary emphysema
CIS	carcinoma in situ	CP	cerebral palsy; cor pulmonale
CJD	Creutzfeldt-Jakob Disease	C&P	cystoscopy and pyelography
CLD	chronic lung disease; chronic liver disease	CPB	cardiopulmonary bypass
CLL	chronic lymphatic leukemia; chronic lymphocytic leukemia	CPC	chronic passive congestion
CMID	cytomegalic inclusion disease	CPD	cephalopelvic disproportion; contagious pustular dermatitis
CML	chronic myelocytic leukemia	CPE	chronic pulmonary emphysema
CMM	cutaneous malignant melanoma	CRD	chronic renal disease
CMV	cytomegalic virus	CREST	calcinosis cutis, Raynaud's phenomenon, sclerodactyly, and telangiectasis
CNHD	congenital nonspherocytic hemolytic disease	CRF	cardiorespiratory failure; chronic renal failure
CNS	central nervous system	CRST	calcinosis cutis, Raynaud's phenomenon, sclerodactyly, and telangiectasis
CO	carbon monoxide	CS	coronary sclerosis; cesarean section; cerebro-spinal
COAD	chronic obstructive airway disease	CSF	cerebral spinal fluid
CO <sub>2</sub>	carbon dioxide	CSH	chronic subdural hematoma
COBE	chronic obstructive bullous emphysema		
COBS	chronic organic brain syndrome		
COFS	cerebro-oculo-facio-skeletal		

## APPENDIX A

### Standard Abbreviations and Symbols

---

CSM	cerebrospinal meningitis	DCR	dacrocystorhinostomy
CT	computer tomography; cerebral thrombosis; coronary thrombosis	D&D	drilling and drainage; debridement and dressing
CTD	congenital thymic dysplasia	D&E	dilation and evacuation
CU	cause unknown	DFU	dead fetus in utero
CUC	chronic ulcerative colitis	DIC	disseminated intravascular coagulation
CUP	cystoscopy, urogram, pyelogram (retro)	DILD	diffuse infiltrative lung disease
CUR	cystocele, urethrocele, rectocele	DIP	distal interphalangeal joint; desquamative interstitial pneumonia
CV	cardiovascular; cerebrovascular	DJD	degenerative joint disease
CVA	cerebral vascular accident	DM	diabetes mellitus
CV Accident	cerebral vascular accident	DMT	dimethyltriptamine
CVD	cardiovascular disease	DOA	dead on arrival
CVHD	cardiovascular heart disease	DOPS	diffuse obstructive pulmonary syndrome
CVI	cardiovascular insufficiency; cerebral vascular insufficiency	DPT	diphtheria, pertussis, tetanus vaccine
CVRD	cardiovascular renal disease	DR	diabetic retinopathy
CWP	coal worker's pneumoconiosis	DS	Down's syndrome
CX	cervix	DT	due to; delirium tremens
DA	degenerative arthritis	D/T	due to; delirium tremens
DBI	phenformin hydrochloride	DU	diagnosis unknown; duodenal ulcer
D&C	dilation and curettage		

## APPENDIX A

### Standard Abbreviations and Symbols

---

DUB	dysfunctional uterine bleeding	EMD	electromechanical dissociation
DUI	driving under influence	EMF	endomyocardial fibrosis
DVT	deep vein thrombosis	EMG	electromyogram
DWI	driving while intoxicated	EN	erythema nodosum
DX	dislocation; diagnosis; disease	ENT	ear, nose, and throat
EBV	Epstein-Barr virus	EP	ectopic pregnancy
ECCE	extracapsular cataract extraction	ER	emergency room
ECG	electrocardiogram	ERS	evacuation of retained secundines
E coli	Escherichia coli	ESRD	end-stage renal disease
ECT	electric convulsive therapy	EST	electric shock therapy
EDC	expected date of confinement	ETOH	alcohol
EEE	Eastern equine encephalitis	EUA	exam under anesthesia
EEG	electroencephalogram	EWB	estrogen withdrawal bleeding
EFE	endocardial fibroelastosis	FB	foreign body
EGL	eosinophilic granuloma of lung	FBS	fasting blood sugar
EH	enlarged heart; essential hypertension	Fe	symbol for iron
EIOA	excessive intake of alcohol	FGD	fatal granulomatous disease
EKC	epidemic keratoconjunctivitis	FHS	fetal heart sounds
EKG	electrocardiogram	FHT	fetal heart tone
EKP	epikeratoprosthesis	FLSA	follicular lymphosarcoma
ELF	elective low forceps	FME	full-mouth extraction
EMC	encephalomyocarditis	FS	frozen section; fracture site

## APPENDIX A

### Standard Abbreviations and Symbols

---

FT	full term	gtt	drop
FTA	fluorescent treponemal antibody test	GU	genitourinary; gastric ulcer
5FU	fluorouracil	GVHR	graft-versus-host reaction
FUB	functional uterine bleeding	GYN	gynecology
FULG	fulguration	HA	headache
FUO	fever unknown origin	HAA	hepatitis-associated antigen
FX	fracture	HASCVD	hypertensive arteriosclerotic cardiovascular disease
FYI	for your information	HASCVR	hypertensive arteriosclerotic cardiovascular renal disease
GAS	generalized arteriosclerosis	HASHD	hypertensive arteriosclerotic heart disease
GB	gallbladder; Guillain-Barre (syndrome)	HC	Huntington's chorea
GC	gonococcus; gonorrhea; general circulation (systemic)	HCPS	Hantavirus (cardio) pulmonary syndrome, Hantavirus cardiopulmonary syndrome
GE	gastroesophageal	HCT	hematocrit
GEN	generalized	HCVD	hypertensive cardiovascular disease
GERD	gastroesophageal reflux disease	HCVRD	hypertensive cardiovascular renal disease
GI	gastrointestinal	HD	Hodgkin's disease; heart disease
GIST	gastrointestinal stromal tumor	HDN	hemolytic disease of newborn
GIT	gastrointestinal tract	HDS	herniated disc syndrome
GMSD	grand mal seizure disorder	HEM	hemorrhage
GOK	God only knows		
GSW	gunshot wound		
GTT	glucose tolerance test		

## APPENDIX A

### Standard Abbreviations and Symbols

---

HF	heart failure; hay fever	HTN	hypertension
HGB; Hgb	hemoglobin	HVD	hypertensive vascular disease
HHD	hypertensive heart disease	Hx	history of
HIV	human immunodeficiency virus	IADH	inappropriate antidiuretic hormone
HMD	hyaline membrane disease	IASD	interatrial septal defect
HN <sub>2</sub>	nitrogen mustard	ICCE	intracapsular cataract extraction
HNP	herniated nucleus pulposus	ICD	intrauterine contraceptive device
H/O	history of	I&D	incision and drainage
HPN	hypertension	ID	infectious disease; incision and drainage
HPS	Hantavirus pulmonary syndrome	IDA	iron deficiency anemia
HPVD	hypertensive pulmonary vascular disease	IDD	insulin-dependent diabetes
HRE	high-resolution electro-cardiology	IDDI	insulin-dependent diabetes
HS	herpes simplex; Hurler's syndrome	IDDM	insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus
HSV	herpes simplex virus	IGA	immunoglobulin A
HTLV	human T-cell lymphotropic virus	IHD	ischemic heart disease
HTLV-III/LAV	human T-cell lymphotropic virus-III/lymphadenopathy-associated virus	IHSS	idiopathic hypertrophic subaortic stenosis
HTLV-3	human T-cell lymphotropic virus-III	ILD	ischemic leg disease
HTLV-III	human T-cell lymphotropic virus-III	IM	intramuscular; intramedullary; infectious mononucleosis
		IMPP	intermittent positive pressure

## APPENDIX A

### Standard Abbreviations and Symbols

---

INAD	infantile neuroaxonal dystrophy	IVP	intravenous pyelogram
INC	incomplete	IVSD	intraventricular septal defect
INE	infantile necrotizing encephalomyelopathy	IVU	intravenous urethrography
INF	infection; infected; infantile; infarction	IWMI	inferior wall myocardial infarction
INH	Isoniazid; inhalation	JBE	Japanese B encephalitis
INS	idiopathic nephrotic syndrome	KFS	Klippel-Feil syndrome
IRHD	inactive rheumatic heart disease	KS	Klinefelter's syndrome
ISD	interatrial septal defect	KUB	kidney, ureter, bladder
ITP	idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura	K-W	Kimmelstiel-Wilson disease or syndrome
IU	intrauterine	LAP	laparotomy
IUCD	intrauterine contraceptive device	LAV	lymphadenopathy-associated virus
IUD	intrauterine device (contraceptive); intrauterine death	LAV/ HTLV-III	lymphadenopathy-associated virus/Human T-cell lymphotropic virus-III
IUP	intrauterine pregnancy	LBBB	left bundle branch block
IV	intervenous; intravenous	LBNA	lysis bladder neck adhesions
IVC	intravenous cholangiography; inferior vena cava	LBW	low birth weight
IVCC	intravascular consumption coagulopathy	LBWI	low birth weight infant
IVD	intervertebral disc	LCA	left coronary artery
IVH	intraventricular hemorrhage	LDH	lactic dehydrogenase
		LE	lupus erythematosus; lower extremity; left eye

## APPENDIX A

### Standard Abbreviations and Symbols

---

LKS	liver, kidney, spleen	LVF	left ventricular failure
LL	lower lobe	LVH	left ventricular hypertrophy
LLL	left lower lobe	MAC	mycobacterium avium complex
LLQ	lower left quadrant	MAI	mycobacterium avium intracellulare
LMA	left mentoanterior (position of fetus)	MAL	malignant
LML	left middle lobe; left mesiolateral	MBAI	mycobacterium avium intracellulare
LMCAT	left middle cerebral artery thrombosis	MBD	minimal brain damage
LML	left mesiolateral; left mediolateral (episiotomy)	MD	muscular dystrophy; manic depressive; myocardial damage
LMP	last menstrual period; left mento- posterior (position of fetus)	MDA	methylene dioxyamphetamine
LN	lupus nephritis	MEA	multiple endocrine adenomatosis
LOA	left occipitoanterior	MF	myocardial failure; myocardial fibrosis; mycosis fungoides
LOMCS	left otitis media chronic serous	MGN	membranous glomerulonephritis
LP	lumbar puncture	MHN	massive hepatic necrosis
LRI	lower respiratory infection	MI	myocardial infarction; mitral insufficiency
LS	lumbosacral; lymphosarcoma	MPC	meperidine, promethazine, chlorpromazine
LSD	lysergic acid diethylamide	MRS	methicillin resistant staphylococcal
LSK	liver, spleen, kidney	MRSA	methicillin resistant staphylococcal aureus
LUL	left upper lobe	MRSAU	methicillin resistant staphylococcal aureus
LUQ	left upper quadrant		
LV	left ventricle		

## APPENDIX A

### Standard Abbreviations and Symbols

---

MS	multiple sclerosis; mitral stenosis	OA	osteoarthritis
MEOF	multi-system organ failure	OAD	obstructive airway disease
MT	malignant teratoma	OB	obstetrical
MUA	myelogram	OBS	organic brain syndrome
MVP	mitral valve prolapse	OBST	obstructive; obstetrical
MVR	mitral valve regurgitation; mitral valve replacement	OD	overdose; oculus dexter (right eye); occupational disease
NACD	no anatomical cause of death	OHD	organic heart disease
NAFLD	nonalcoholic fatty liver disease	OLT	orthotopic liver transplant
NCA	neurocirculatory asthenia	OM	otitis media
NDI	nephrogenic diabetes insipidus	OMI	old myocardial infarction
NEG	negative	OMS	organic mental syndrome
NFI	no further information	ORIF	open reduction, internal fixation
NFTD	normal full-term delivery	OS	oculus sinister (left eye); occipitosacral (fetal position)
NG	nasogastric	OT	occupational therapy; old TB
NH <sub>3</sub>	symbol for ammonia	OU	oculus uterque (each eye); both eyes
NIDD	non-insulin-dependent diabetes	PA	pernicious anemia; paralysis agitans; pulmonary artery; peripheral arteriosclerosis
NIDDI	non-insulin-dependent diabetes	PAC	premature auricular contraction; phenacetin, aspirin, caffeine
NIDDM	non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus	PAF	paroxysmal auricular fibrillation
NSTEMI	non-ST-elevation myocardial infarction	PAOD	peripheral arterial occlusive disease; peripheral arteriosclerosis occlusive disease
N&V	nausea and vomiting		
NVD	nausea, vomiting, diarrhea		

## APPENDIX A

### Standard Abbreviations and Symbols

---

PAP	primary atypical pneumonia	PIE	pulmonary interstitial emphysema
PAS	pulmonary artery stenosis	PIP	proximal interphalangeal joint
PAT	pregnancy at term; paroxysmal auricular tachycardia	PKU	phenylketonuria
Pb	chemical symbol for lead	PMD	progressive muscular dystrophy
PCD	polycystic disease	PMI	posterior myocardial infarction; point of maximum impulse
PCF	passive congestive failure	PML	progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy
PCP	pentachlorophenol; pneumocystis carinii pneumonia	PN	pneumonia; periarteritis nodosa; pyelonephritis
PCT	porphyria cutanea tarda	PO	postoperative
PCV	polycythemia vera	POC	product of conception
PDA	patent ductus arteriosus	POE	point (or portal) of entry
PE	pulmonary embolism; pleural effusion; pulmonary edema	PP	postpartum
PEG	percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy; pneumoencephalography	POSS	possible; possibly
PEGT	percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy tube	PPD	purified protein derivative test for tuberculosis
PET	pre-eclamptic toxemia	PPH	postpartum hemorrhage
PG	pregnant; prostaglandin	PPLO	pleuropneumonia-like organism
PGH	pituitary growth hormone	PPS	postpump syndrome
PH	past history; prostatic hypertrophy; pulmonary hypertension	PPT	precipitated; prolonged prothrombin time
PI	pulmonary infarction	PREM	prematurity
PID	pelvic inflammatory disease; prolapsed intervertebral disc	PROB	probably

## APPENDIX A

### Standard Abbreviations and Symbols

---

PROM	premature rupture of membranes	PWMI	posterior wall myocardial infarction
PSVT	paroxysmal supraventricular tachycardia	PX	pneumothorax
PT	paroxysmal tachycardia; pneumothorax; prothrombin time	R	right
PTA	persistent truncus arteriosus	RA	rheumatoid arthritis; right atrium; right auricle
PTC	plasma thromboplastin component	RAAA	ruptured abdominal aortic aneurysm
PTCA	percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty	RAD	radiation absorbed dose; rheumatoid arthritis disease
PTLA	percutaneous transluminal laser angioplasty	RAI	radioactive iodine
PU	peptic ulcer	RBBB	right bundle branch block
PUD	peptic ulcer disease; pulmonary disease	RBC	red blood cells
PUO	pyrexia of unknown origin	RCA	right coronary artery
P&V	pyloroplasty and vagotomy	RCS	reticulum cell sarcoma
PVC	premature ventricular contraction	RD	Raynaud's disease; respiratory disease
PVD	peripheral vascular disease; pulmonary vascular disease	RDS	respiratory distress syndrome
PVI	peripheral vascular insufficiency	RE	regional enteritis
PVL	periventricular leukomalacia	REG	radioencephalogram
PVT	paroxysmal ventricular tachycardia	RESP	respiratory
PVS	premature ventricular systole (contraction)	RHD	rheumatic heart disease
PWI	posterior wall infarction		

## APPENDIX A

### Standard Abbreviations and Symbols

---

RLF	retrolental fibroplasia	SA	sarcoma; secondary anemia
RLL	right lower lobe	SACD	subacute combined degeneration
RLQ	right lower quadrant	SARS	severe acute respiratory syndrome
RMCA	right middle cerebral artery	SBE	subacute bacterial endocarditis
RMCAT	right middle cerebral artery thrombosis	SBO	small bowel obstruction
RML	right middle lobe	SBP	spontaneous bacterial peritonitis
RMLE	right mediolateral episiotomy	SC	sickle cell
RNA	ribonucleic acid	SCC	squamous cell carcinoma
RND	radical neck dissection	SCI	subcoma insulin; spinal cord injury
R/O	rule out	SD	spontaneous delivery; septal defect; sudden death
RSA	reticulum cell sarcoma	SDAT	senile dementia Alzheimer's type
RSR	regular sinus rhythm	SDII	sudden infant death in infancy
Rt	right	SDS	sudden death syndrome
RT	recreational therapy; right	SEPT	septicemia
RTA	renal tubular acidosis	SF	scarlet fever
RUL	right upper lobe	SGA	small for gestational age
RUQ	right upper quadrant	SH	serum hepatitis
RV	right ventricle	SI	saline injection
RVH	right ventricular hypertrophy	SIADH	syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone
RVT	renal vein thrombosis		
RX	drugs <u>or</u> other therapy <u>or</u> treatment		

## APPENDIX A

### Standard Abbreviations and Symbols

---

SICD	sudden infant crib death	SSPE	subacute sclerosing panencephalitis
SID	sudden infant death	STAPH	staphylococcal; staphylococcus
SIDS	sudden infant death syndrome	STB	stillborn
SIRS	systemic inflammatory response syndrome	STREP	streptococcal; streptococcus
SLC	short leg cast	STS	serological test for syphilis
SLE	systemic lupus erythematosus; Saint Louis encephalitis	STSG	split thickness skin graft
SMR	submucous resection	SUBQ	subcutaneous
SNB	scalene node biopsy	SUD	sudden unexpected death
SO or S&O	salpingo-oophorectomy	SUDI	sudden unexplained death of an infant
SOB	shortness of breath	SUID	sudden unexpected infant death
SOM	secretory otitis media	SVC	superior vena cava
SOR	suppurative otitis, recurrent	SVD	spontaneous vaginal delivery
S/P	status post	SVT	supraventricular tachycardia
SPD	sociopathic personality disturbance	Sx	symptoms
SPP	suprapubic prostatectomy	SY	syndrome
SQ	subcutaneous	T&A	tonsillectomy and adenoidectomy
S/R	schizophrenic reaction; sinus rhythm	TAH	total abdominal hysterectomy
S/p P/T	schizophrenic reaction, paranoid type	TAL	tendon achilles lengthening
SSE	soapsuds enema	TAO	Triacetyloleandomycin (antibiotic); thromboangiitis obliterans
SSKI	saturated solution potassium iodide		

## APPENDIX A

### Standard Abbreviations and Symbols

---

TAPVR	total anomalous pulmonary venous return	TUI	transurethral incision
TAR	thrombocytopenia absent radius (syndrome)	TUR	transurethral resection (NOS) (prostate)
TAT	tetanus anti-toxin	TURP	transurethral resection of prostate
TB	tuberculosis; tracheobronchitis	TVP	total anomalous venous return
TBC, Tbc	tuberculosis	UC	ulcerative colitis
TCI	transient cerebral ischemia	UGI	upper gastrointestinal
TEF	tracheoesophageal fistula	UL	upper lobe
TF	tetralogy of Fallot	UNK	unknown
TGV	transposition great vessels	UP	uteropelvic
THA	total hip arthroplasty	UPJ	ureteropelvic junction
TI	tricuspid insufficiency	URI	upper respiratory infection
TIA	transient ischemic attack	UTI	urinary tract infection
TIE	transient ischemic episode	VAMP	vincristine, amethopterin, 6-mercaptopurine, and prednisone
TL	tubal ligation	VB	vinblastine
TM	tympanic membrane	VC	vincristine
TOA	tubo-ovarian abscess	VD	venereal disease
TP	thrombocytopenic purpura	VDRL	venereal disease research lab
TR	tricuspid regurgitation, transfusion reaction	VEE	Venezuelan equine encephalomyelitis
TSD	Tay-Sachs disease		
TTP	thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura		

## APPENDIX A

### Standard Abbreviations and Symbols

---

VF	ventricular fibrillation	WPW	Wolfe-Parkinson-White syndrome
VH	vaginal hysterectomy; viral hepatitis	YF	yellow fever
VL	vas ligation	ZE	Zollinger-Ellison (syndrome)
VM	viomycin	'	minute
V&P	vagotomy and pyloroplasty	"	second(s)
VPC, VPCS	ventricular premature contractions	<	less than
		>	greater than
VR	valve replacement	↓	decreased
VSD	ventricular septal defect	↑	increased; elevated
VT	ventricular tachycardia	$\bar{c}$	with
WBC	white blood cell	$\bar{s}$	without
WC	whooping cough	$\frac{00}{11}$	secondary to
WE	Western encephalomyelitis		
W/O	without	$\frac{00}{11}$ to	secondary to

## Appendix B

### Synonymous Sites/Terms

---

When a condition of a stated anatomical site is indexed in Volume 3, code condition of stated site as indexed. If stated site is not indexed, code condition of synonymous site.

Alimentary canal	Gastrointestinal tract
Body	Torso, trunk
Brain	Anterior fossa, basal ganglion, central nervous system, cerebral, cerebrum, frontal, occipital, parietal, pons, posterior fossa, prefrontal, temporal, III and IV ventricle  Note: Do not use brain when ICD provides for CNS under the reported condition.
Cardiac	Heart
Chest	Thorax
Geriatric	Senile
Greater sac	Peritoneum
Hepatic	Liver
Hepatocellular	Liver
Intestine	Bowel, colon
Kidney	Renal
Larynx	Epiglottis, glottis, subglottis, supraglottis, vocal cords
Lesser sac	Peritoneum
Nasopharynx, pharynx	Throat
Pulmonary	Lung
Right\left hemispheric	Code brain
Hemispheric NOS	Do not assume brain
Right\left ventricle	Heart
Third\fourth ventricle	Brain
LLL, LUL, RLL, RML, RUL	Lobes of the lungs when reported with lobectomy, pneumonia, etc

# Appendix C

## Geographic Codes

<u>State</u>	<u>FIPS Alpha</u>	<u>State</u>	<u>FIPS Alpha</u>
Alabama	AL	Nebraska	NE
Alaska	AK	Nevada	NV
Arizona	AZ	New Hampshire	NH
Arkansas	AR	New Jersey	NJ
California	CA	New Mexico	NM
Colorado	CO	New York	NY
Connecticut	CT	North Carolina	NC
Delaware	DE	North Dakota	ND
District of Columbia	DC	Ohio	OH
Florida	FL	Oklahoma	OK
Georgia	GA	Oregon	OR
Hawaii	HI	Pennsylvania	PA
Idaho	ID	Puerto Rico	PR
Illinois	IL	Rhode Island	RI
Indiana	IN	South Carolina	SC
Iowa	IA	South Dakota	SD
Kansas	KS	Tennessee	TN
Kentucky	KY	Texas	TX
Louisiana	LA	Utah	UT
Maine	ME	Vermont	VT
Maryland	MD	Virginia	VA
Massachusetts	MA	Virgin Islands	VI
Michigan	MI	Washington	WA
Minnesota	MN	West Virginia	WV
Mississippi	MS	Wisconsin	WI
Missouri	MO	Wyoming	WY
Montana	MT		
<b>Territories and Outlying Areas</b>			
American Samoa	AS	<u>US Minor Outlying Islands</u>	UM*
Federated States of Micronesia	FM	Baker Island	
Guam	GU	Howland Island	
Marshall Islands	MH	Jarvis Island	
Northern Mariana Islands	MP	Johnston Atoll	
Palau	PW	Kingman Reef	
Puerto Rico	PR	Midway Islands	
Virgin Islands (US)	VI	Navassa Island	
		Palmyra Atoll	
		Wake Island	

\*Not recognized as a valid USPS State abbreviation

## Appendix D

### Code for Place of Occurrence

---

#### 0. Home

**Excludes:** Abandoned or derelict house (8)  
Home under construction, but not yet occupied (6)  
Institutional place of residence (1)  
Office in home (5)

About home  
Apartment  
Bed and breakfast  
Boarding house  
Cabin (any type)  
Caravan (trailer) park - residential  
Condominium  
Farm house  
Dwelling  
Hogan  
Home premises  
Home sidewalk  
Home swimming pool  
House (residential) (trailer)  
Noninstitutional place of residence  
Penthouse  
Private driveway to home  
Private garage  
Private garden to home  
Private walk to home  
Private wall to home  
Residence  
Rooming house  
Storage building at apartment  
Swimming pool in private home, private garden,  
apartment or residence  
Townhome  
Trailer camp or court  
Yard (any part) (area) (front) (residential)  
Yard to home

## Appendix D

### Code for Place of Occurrence

---

1. Residential institution

Almshouse  
Army camp  
Assisted Living  
Board and care facility  
Children's home  
Convalescent home  
Correctional center  
Detox center  
Dormitory  
Fraternity house  
Geriatric center  
Halfway house  
Home for the sick  
Hospice  
Institution (any type)  
Jail  
Mental Hospital  
Military (camp) (reservation)  
Nurse's home  
Nursing home  
Old people's home  
Orphanage  
Penitentiary  
Pensioner's home  
Prison  
Prison camp  
Reform school  
Retirement home  
Sorority house  
State hospital

## Appendix D

### Code for Place of Occurrence

---

#### 2. School, other institution and public administrative area

**Excludes:** Building under construction (6)  
Residential institution (1)  
Sports and athletic areas (3)

Armory	Police station or cell
Assembly hall	Post office
Campus	Private club
Child center	Public building
Church	Public hall
Cinema	Salvation army
Clubhouse	School (grounds) (yard)
College	School (private) (public) (state)
Country club (grounds)	Theatre
Court house	Turkish bath
Dance hall	University
Day nursery (day care)	YMCA
Drive in theater	Youth center
Fire house	YWCA
Gallery	
Health club	
Health resort	
Health spa	
Hospital (parking lot)	
Institute of higher learning	
Kindergarten	
Library	
Mission	
Movie house	
Museum	
Music hall	
Night club	
Opera house	
Playground, school	
Police precinct	

## Appendix D

### Code for Place of Occurrence

---

#### 3. Sports and athletics area

**Excludes:** Swimming pool or tennis court in private home or garden (0)

Baseball field  
Basketball court  
Cricket ground  
Dude ranch  
Fives court  
Football field  
Golf course  
Gymnasium  
Hockey field  
Ice palace  
Racecourse  
Riding school  
Rifle range - NOS  
Skating rink  
Sports ground  
Sports palace  
Squash court  
Stadium  
Swimming pool (private) (public)  
Tennis court

#### 4. Street and highway

Alley  
Border crossing  
Bridge NOS  
Freeway  
Interstate  
Motorway  
Named street/highway/interstate  
Pavement  
Road (public)  
Roadside  
Sidewalk NOS  
Walkway

## Appendix D

### Code for Place of Occurrence

---

#### 5. Trade and service area

**Excludes:** Garage in private home (0)

Airport  
Animal hospital  
Bank  
Bar  
Body shop  
Cafe  
Car dealership  
Casino  
Electric company  
Filling station  
Funeral home  
Garage - place of work  
Garage away from highway except home  
Garage building (for car storage)  
Garage NOS  
Gas station  
Hotel (pool)  
Laundry Mat  
Loading platform - store  
Mall  
Market (grocery or other commodity)  
Motel  
Office (building) (in home)  
Parking garage  
Radio/television broadcasting station  
Restaurant  
Salvage lot, named  
Service station  
Shop, commercial  
Shopping center (shopping mall)  
Spa  
Station (bus) (railway)  
Store  
Subway (stairs)  
Tourist court  
Tourist home  
Warehouse

## Appendix D

### Code for Place of Occurrence

---

#### 6. Industrial and construction areas

Building under construction  
Coal pit  
Coal yard  
Construction (area, job or site)  
Dairy processing plant  
Dockyard  
Dry dock  
Electric tower  
Factory (building) (premises)  
Foundry  
Gas works  
Grain elevator  
Gravel pit  
Highway under construction  
Industrial yard  
Loading platform - factory  
Logging operation area  
Lumber yard  
Mill pond  
Oil field  
Oil rig and other offshore installations  
Oil well  
Plant, industrial  
Power-station (coal) (nuclear) (oil)  
Produce building  
Railroad track or trestle  
Railway yard  
Sand pit  
Sawmill  
Sewage disposal plant  
Shipyard  
Shop  
Substation (power)  
Subway track  
Tannery  
Tunnel under construction  
Water filtration plant  
Wharf  
Workshop

## Appendix D

### Code for Place of Occurrence

---

#### 7. Farm

**Excludes:** Farm house and home premises of farm (0)

Barn NOS  
Barnyard  
Corncrib  
Cornfield  
Dairy (farm) NOS  
Farm buildings  
Farm pond or creek  
Farmland under cultivation  
Field, numbered or specialized  
Gravel pit on farm  
Orange grove  
Orchard  
Pasture  
Ranch NOS  
Range NOS  
Silo  
State Farm

## Appendix D

### Code for Place of Occurrence

---

#### 8. Other specified places

Abandoned gravel pit	Military training ground
Abandoned public building or home	Mountain
Air force firing range	Mountain resort
Balcony	Named city
Bar pit or ditch	Named lake
Beach NOS (named) (private)	Named room
Beach resort	Named town
Boy's camp	Nursery NOS
Building NOS	Open field
Bus stop	Park (amusement) (any) (public)
Camp	Parking lot
Camping grounds	Parking place
Campsite	Pier
Canal	Pipeline (oil)
Caravan site NOS	Place of business NOS
Cemetery	Playground NOS
City dump	Pond or pool (natural)
Community jacuzzi	Porch
Creek (bank) (embankment)	Power line pole
Damsite	Prairie
Derelict house	Private property
Desert	Public place NOS
Ditch	Public property
Dock NOS	Railway line
Driveway	Reservoir (water)
Excavation site	Resort NOS
Fairgrounds	River
Field NOS	Room (any)
Forest	Sea
Fort	Seashore NOS
Hallway	Seashore resort
Harbor	Sewer
Hill	Specified address
Holiday camp	Stream
Irrigation canal or ditch	Swamp
Junkyard	Trail (bike)
Kitchen	Vacation resort
Lake NOS	Woods
Lake resort	Zoo
Manhole	
Marsh	

## Appendix D

### Code for Place of Occurrence

---

9. Unspecified place

Bathtub  
Bed  
Camper (trailer)  
Commode  
Country  
Downstairs  
Fireplace  
Hot tub  
Jobsite  
Near any place  
On job  
Outdoors NOS  
Parked car  
Rural  
Sofa  
Table  
Tree  
Vehicle (any)

## Appendix E

### Activity Codes

---

The ICD-10 provides a subclassification for use with external causes and injuries to indicate the activity of the injured person at the time the event occurred. This appendix is designed to document the ICD-10 activity code information but it is not entered in manual coding.

Information may be scattered over different parts of the medical certification, Part I, Part II, 41, 43, etc. However, do not use the information in “Injury at work?” block to code this variable.

If no information concerning the activity of the injured person is reported on the certificate, the item is left blank. “While drinking alcohol” or “while driving” is not considered as a codable activity. When two or more codes appear to be appropriate for the information reported, activity code 8 is assigned.

#### **0 While engaged in sports activity**

Physical exercise with a described functional element such as:

- . golf
- . jogging
- . riding
- . school athletics
- . skiing
- . swimming
- . trekking
- . waterskiing

#### **1 While engaged in leisure activity**

Hobby activities

Leisure time activities with an entertainment element such as going to the cinema, to a dance or to a party

Participation in sessions and activities of voluntary organizations

**Excludes:** sport activities (0)

#### **2 While working for income**

Paid work (manual) (professional)

Transportation (time) to and from such activities

Work for salary, bonus and other types of income

## Appendix E

### Activity Codes

---

- 3     While engaged in other types of work**  
Domestic duties such as:  
  . caring for children and relatives  
  . cleaning  
  . cooking  
  . gardening  
  . household maintenance  
Duties for which one would not normally gain an income  
Learning activities, e.g. attending school session or lesson  
Undergoing education
- 4     While resting, sleeping, eating and other vital activities**  
Personal hygiene
- 8     While engaged in other specified activities**

## Appendix F

### Invalid and Substitute Codes

The following categories are invalid for multiple cause coding in the United States registration areas. Substitute code(s) for use in multiple cause coding appears to the right.

Use the substitute codes when conditions classifiable to the following codes are reported:

<u>Invalid Codes</u>	<u>Substitute Codes</u>
A150-A153	A162
A154	A163
A155	A164
A156	A165
A157	A167
A158	A168
A159	A169
A160-A161	A162
B95-B97	Code the disease(s) classified to other chapters modified by the organism. Do not enter a code for the organism.
F70.-	F70 (3-characters only)
F71.-	F71 (3-characters only)
F72.-	F72 (3-characters only)
F73.-	F73 (3-characters only)
F78.-	F78 (3-characters only)
F79.-	F79 (3-characters only)

<u>Invalid Codes</u>	<u>Substitute codes</u>
I151-I158	R99
I23.-	I21 or I22
I240	I21 or I22
I252	I258
I65- I66	I63
O80.-	O95
O81-084	O759
P95	P969
R69	R95-R99
T000, T001, T006	Superficial injuries of specified sites
T010, T011, T016, T018	Open wound of specified sites
T020, T026, T027	Fractures of specified sites
T030, T034	Dislocations, sprains, and strains of specified sites
T040, T044, T047	Crushing injuries of specified sites
T051, T054, T056	Traumatic amputations of specified site
T060, T061, T068	Injuries of specified sites
T29.-	Burns of specified sites

## Appendix G

### Codes for Special Purposes (U00 - U99)

---

#### Provisional assignment of new codes (U00-U99)

#### 1. Terrorism Classification (\*U01-\*U03)

NCHS has developed a set of new codes within the framework of the ICD that will allow the identification of deaths from terrorism reported on death certificates through the National Vital Statistics System. Terrorism-related ICD-10 codes for mortality have been assigned to the “U” category which has been designated by WHO for use by individual countries. The asterisk preceding the alphanumeric code indicates the code was introduced by the United States and is not officially part of the ICD.

To classify a death as terrorist-related, it is necessary for the incident to be designated as such by the Federal Bureau of Investigation (FBI). Neither a medical examiner nor a coroner who would be completing/certifying the death certificate, nor the nosologist coding the death certificate would determine that an incident is an act of terrorism. If an incident or event is confirmed by the FBI as terrorism, it may be so described on the certificate. If the incident is confirmed as terrorism after the death certificate is completed, the certificate can be recoded at a later date.

#### **Not to be used unless notified by NCHS**

#### Tabular List

#### **Assault (homicide)**

#### **\*U01-\*U02**

#### **\*U01**

#### **Terrorism**

***Includes:*** assault-related injuries resulting from the unlawful use of force or violence against persons or property to intimidate or coerce a Government, the civilian population, or any segment thereof, in furtherance of political or social objectives

#### **\*U01.0**

#### **Terrorism involving explosion of marine weapons**

Depth-charge  
Marine mine  
Mine NOS, at sea or in harbor  
Sea-based artillery shell  
Torpedo  
Underwater blast

## Appendix G

### Codes for Special Purposes (U00 - U99)

---

- \*U01.1**      **Terrorism involving destruction of aircraft**  
*Includes:* aircraft used as a weapon
- Aircraft:
- burned
  - exploded
  - shot down
- Crushed by falling aircraft
- 
- \*U01.2**      **Terrorism involving other explosions and fragments**  
Antipersonnel bomb (fragments)  
Blast NOS  
Explosion (of):
- NOS
  - artillery shell
  - breech-block
  - cannon block
  - mortar bomb
  - munitions being used in terrorism
  - own weapons
- Fragments from:
- artillery shell
  - bomb
  - grenade
  - guided missile
  - land-mine
  - rocket
  - shell
  - shrapnel
- Mine NOS

## Appendix G

### Codes for Special Purposes (U00 - U99)

---

<b>*U01.3</b>	<b>Terrorism involving fires, conflagration and hot substances</b>	
	Asphyxia Burns Other injury	} originating from fire caused directly by fire-producing device or indirectly by any conventional weapon
	Petrol bomb	
	Collapse of Fall from Falling from Hit by object Jump from	} burning building or structure
	Conflagration	
	Fire Melting Smoldering	} of fittings or furniture
<b>*U01.4</b>	<b>Terrorism involving firearms</b>	
	Bullet:	
	• carbine	
	• machine gun	
	• pistol	
	• rifle	
	• rubber (rifle)	
	Pellets (shotgun)	
<b>*U01.5</b>	<b>Terrorism involving nuclear weapons</b>	
	Blast effects	
	Exposure to ionizing radiation from nuclear weapon	
	Fireball effects	
	Heat	
	Other direct and secondary effects of nuclear weapons	

## Appendix G

### Codes for Special Purposes (U00 - U99)

---

- \*U01.6**      **Terrorism involving biological weapons**  
Anthrax  
Cholera  
Smallpox
- \*U01.7**      **Terrorism involving chemical weapons**  
Gases, fumes and chemicals:  
• Hydrogen cyanide  
• Phosgene  
• Sarin
- \*U01.8**      **Terrorism, other specified**  
Lasers  
Battle wounds  
Drowned in terrorist operations NOS  
Piercing or stabbing object injuries
- \*U01.9**      **Terrorism, unspecified**
- \*U02**        **Sequelae of terrorism**

## Appendix G

### Codes for Special Purposes (U00 - U99)

---

**Intentional self-harm (suicide)**

**\*U03**

**\*U03            Terrorism**

**\*U03.0           Terrorism involving explosions and fragments**

*Includes:* destruction of aircraft used as a weapon

Aircraft:

- burned
- exploded
- shot down

Antipersonnel bomb (fragments)

Blast NOS

Explosion (of):

- NOS
- artillery shell
- breech-block
- cannon block
- mortar bomb
- munitions being used in terrorism
- own weapons

Fragments from:

- artillery shell
- bomb
- grenade
- guided missile
- land-mine
- rocket
- shell
- shrapnel

Mine NOS

**\*U03.9           Terrorism by other and unspecified means**

## Appendix G

### Codes for Special Purposes (U00 - U99)

---

#### SECTION II – External causes of injury

##### **Air**

- blast in terrorism U01.2

##### **Asphyxia, asphyxiation**

- by

- - chemical in terrorism U01.7

- - fumes in terrorism (chemical weapons) U01.7

- - gas (*see also* Table of drugs and chemicals)

- - - in terrorism (chemical weapons) U01.7

- from

- - fire (*see also* Exposure, fire)

- - - in terrorism U01.3

##### **Bayonet wound**

- in

- - terrorism U01.8

##### **Blast (air) in terrorism U01.2**

- from nuclear explosion U01.5

- underwater U01.0

##### **Burn, burned, burning (by) (from) (on)**

- chemical (external) (internal)

- - in terrorism (chemical weapons) U01.7

- in terrorism (from fire-producing device) NEC U01.3

- - nuclear explosion U01.5

- - petrol bomb U01.3

##### **Casualty (not due to war) NEC**

- terrorism U01.9

##### **Collapse**

- building

- - burning (uncontrolled fire)

- - - in terrorism U01.3

- structure

- - burning (uncontrolled fire)

- - - in terrorism U01.3

##### **Crash**

- aircraft (powered)

- - in terrorism U01.1

## Appendix G

### Codes for Special Purposes (U00 - U99)

---

#### **Crushed**

- by, in
- - falling
- - - aircraft
- - - - in terrorism U01.1

#### **Cut, cutting (any part of body) (by)** (*see also* Contact, with, by object or machine)

- terrorism U01.8

#### **Drowning**

- in
- - terrorism U01.8

#### **Effect(s) (adverse) of**

- nuclear explosion or weapon in terrorism (blast) (direct) (fireball) (heat) (radiation) (secondary) U01.5

#### **Explosion (in) (of) (on) (with secondary fire)**

- terrorism U01.2

#### **Exposure to**

- fire (with exposure to smoke or fumes or causing burns, or secondary explosion)
- - in, of, on, starting in
- - - terrorism (by fire-producing device) U01.3
- - - - fittings or furniture (burning building) (uncontrolled fire) U01.3
- - - - from nuclear explosion U01.5

#### **Fall, falling**

- from, off
- - building
- - - burning (uncontrolled fire)
- - - - in terrorism U01.3
- - structure NEC
- - - burning (uncontrolled fire)
- - - - in terrorism U01.3

#### **Fireball effects from nuclear explosion in terrorism U01.5**

#### **Heat (effects of) (excessive)**

- from
- - nuclear explosion in terrorism U01.5

#### **Injury, injured NEC**

- by, caused by, from
- - terrorism – *see* Terrorism
- due to
- - terrorism – *see* Terrorism

## Appendix G

### Codes for Special Purposes (U00 - U99)

---

#### **Jumped, jumping**

- from
- - building (*see also* Jumped, from, high place)
- - - burning (uncontrolled fire)
- - - - in terrorism U01.3
- - structure (*see also* Jumped, from, high place)
- - - burning (uncontrolled fire)
- - - - in terrorism U01.3

#### **Poisoning (by)** (*see also* Table of drugs and chemicals)

- in terrorism (chemical weapons) U01.7

#### **Radiation (exposure to)**

- in
- - terrorism (from or following nuclear explosion) (direct) (secondary) U01.5
- - - laser(s) U01.8
- laser(s)
- - in terrorism U01.8

#### **Sequelae (of)**

- in terrorism U02

#### **Shooting, shot** (*see also* Discharge, by type of firearm)

- in terrorism U01.4

#### **Struck by**

- bullet (*see also* Discharge, by type of firearm)
- - in terrorism U01.4
- missile
- - in terrorism – *see* Terrorism, missile
- object
- - falling
- - - from, in, on
- - - - building
- - - - - burning (uncontrolled fire)
- - - - - in terrorism U01.3

#### **Suicide, suicidal (attempted) (by)**

- explosive(s) (material)
- - in terrorism U03.0
- in terrorism U03.9

#### **Terrorism (by) (in) (injury) (involving)** U01.9

- air blast U01.2
- aircraft burned, destroyed, exploded, shot down U01.1
- - used as a weapon U01.1
- anthrax U01.6

## Appendix G

### Codes for Special Purposes (U00 - U99)

---

#### **Terrorism**----*continued*

- asphyxia from
  - chemical (weapons) U01.7
  - fire, conflagration (caused by fire-producing device) U01.3
  - - from nuclear explosion U01.5
  - gas or fumes U01.7
- bayonet U01.8
- biological agents (weapons) U01.6
- blast (air) (effects) U01.2
  - from nuclear explosion U01.5
  - underwater U01.0
- bomb (antipersonnel) (mortar) (explosion) (fragments) U01.2
  - petrol U01.3
- bullet(s) (from carbine, machine gun, pistol, rifle, rubber (rifle), shotgun) U01.4
- burn from
  - chemical U01.7
  - fire, conflagration (caused by fire-producing device) U01.3
  - - from nuclear explosion U01.5
  - gas U01.7
- burning aircraft U01.1
- chemical (weapons) U01.7
- cholera U01.6
- conflagration U01.3
- crushed by falling aircraft U01.1
- depth-charge U01.0
- destruction of aircraft U01.1
- disability as sequelae one year or more after injury U02
- drowning U01.8
- effect (direct) (secondary) of nuclear weapon U01.5
  - sequelae U02
- explosion (artillery shell) (breech-block) (cannon block) U01.2
  - aircraft U01.1
  - bomb (antipersonnel) (mortar) U01.2
  - - nuclear (atom) (hydrogen) U01.5
  - depth-charge U01.0
  - grenade U01.2
  - injury by fragments (from) U01.2
  - land-mine U01.2
  - marine weapon(s) U01.0

## Appendix G

### Codes for Special Purposes (U00 - U99)

---

#### **Terrorism**----*continued*

- - mine (land) U01.2
- - - at sea or in harbor U01.0
- - - marine U01.0
- - missile (explosive) (guided) NEC U01.2
- - munitions (dump) (factory) U01.2
- - nuclear (weapon) U01.5
- - other direct and secondary effects of U01.5
- - own weapons U01.2
- - sea-based artillery shell U01.0
- - torpedo U01.0
- exposure to ionizing radiation from nuclear explosion U01.5
- falling aircraft U01.1
- fire or fire-producing device U01.3
- firearms U01.4
- fireball effects from nuclear explosion U01.5
- fragments from artillery shell, bomb NEC, grenade, guided missile, land-mine, rocket, shell, shrapnel U01.2
- gas or fumes U01.7
- grenade (explosion) (fragments) U01.2
- guided missile (explosion) (fragments) U01.2
- - nuclear U01.5
- heat from nuclear explosion U01.5
- hot substances U01.3
- hydrogen cyanide U01.7
- land-mine (explosion) (fragments) U01.2
- laser(s) U01.8
- late effect (of) U02
- lewisite U01.7
- lung irritant (chemical) (fumes) (gas) U01.7
- marine mine U01.0
- mine U01.2
- - at sea U01.0
- - in harbor U01.0
- - land (explosion) (fragments) U01.2
- - marine U01.0
- missile (explosion) (fragments) (guided) U01.2
- - marine U01.0
- - nuclear U01.5

## Appendix G

### Codes for Special Purposes (U00 - U99)

---

#### **Terrorism**----*continued*

- mortar bomb (explosion) (fragments) U01.2
- mustard gas U01.7
- nerve gas U01.7
- nuclear weapons U01.5
- pellets (shotgun) U01.4
- petrol bomb U01.3
- piercing object U01.8
- phosgene U01.7
- poisoning (chemical) (fumes) (gas) U01.7
- radiation, ionizing from nuclear explosion U01.5
- rocket (explosion) (fragments) U01.2
- saber, sabre U01.8
- sarin U01.7
- screening smoke U01.7
- sequelae effect (of) U02
- shell (aircraft) (artillery) (cannon) (land-based) (explosion) (fragments) U01.2
- - sea-based U01.0
- shooting U01.4
- - bullet(s) U01.4
- - pellet(s) (rifle) (shotgun) U01.4
- shrapnel U01.2
- smallpox U01.6
- stabbing object(s) U01.8
- submersion U01.8
- torpedo U01.0
- underwater blast U01.0
- vesicant (chemical) (fumes) (gas) U01.7
- weapon burst U01.2

## Appendix G

### Codes for Special Purposes (U00 - U99)

---

	Date of death 9/11/2001			
<u>PLACE</u>	I (a) Burns	T300		
5	(b) Terrorist attack on the Pentagon	&U011		
<u>MOD</u>	II			
H	<table border="1"><tr><td>Homicide</td></tr></table>	Homicide	<table border="1"><tr><td>The Pentagon</td></tr></table>	The Pentagon
Homicide				
The Pentagon				
	<table border="1"><tr><td>Date of injury 9/11/2001</td></tr></table>	Date of injury 9/11/2001		
Date of injury 9/11/2001				

Code as terrorism involving destruction of aircraft. The FBI declared the Pentagon incident an act of terrorism.

	Date of death 9/11/2001			
<u>PLACE</u>	I (a) Chest trauma	S299		
5	(b)			
<u>MOD</u>	II World Trade Center Disaster	&U011		
H	<table border="1"><tr><td>Homicide</td></tr></table>	Homicide	<table border="1"><tr><td>World Trade Center</td></tr></table>	World Trade Center
Homicide				
World Trade Center				
	<table border="1"><tr><td>Date of injury 9/11/2001</td></tr></table>	Date of injury 9/11/2001		
Date of injury 9/11/2001				

Code as terrorism involving destruction of aircraft. The FBI declared the World Trade Center incident an act of terrorism.

## 2. Severe Acute Respiratory Syndrome [SARS] (U04)

### Tabular List

**U04 Severe acute respiratory syndrome [SARS]**

**U04.9 Severe acute respiratory syndrome [SARS], unspecified**

SECTION I – Alphabetical index to diseases and nature of injury

### **Syndrome**

- respiratory
- - severe acute U04.9
- severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS) U04.9

## APPENDIX H

### Additional Drug Examples

---

1. Place  
9 I (a) Ingested overdose of opiates and ingested alcohol T406 &X42 F109  
Code I(a) nature of injury and external cause code for opiate overdose. Code ingested alcohol as indexed. No evidence of alcohol and drug synergism is reported.
  
2. Place  
9 I (a) Ingested overdose of (opiates) and ingested alcohol T406 &X42 F109  
Code I(a) nature of injury and external cause code for opiate overdose. Code ingested alcohol as indexed. No evidence of alcohol and drug synergism is reported.
  
3. Place  
9 I (a) Intoxication by the use of cocaine and opiates T405 &X42 T406  
Code I(a) nature of injury and external cause code for cocaine and opiate intoxication. Since the drugs are assigned to the same external cause code, code X42. Do not enter a Chapter V code (F codes).
  
4. Place  
9 I (a) Intoxication by the use of (cocaine and opiates) T405 &X42 T406  
Code I(a) nature of injury and external cause code for cocaine and opiates intoxication. Since the drugs are assigned to the same external cause code, code X42. Do not enter a Chapter V code (F codes).
  
5. Place  
9 I (a) Toxic effects of cocaine abuse T405 &X42 F141  
Interpret I(a) as cocaine poisoning and cocaine abuse. Code nature of injury and external cause code for cocaine poisoning and cocaine abuse as indexed.
  
6. Place  
9 I (a) Toxic effects of illicit drug abuse T509 &X44 F191  
Interpret I(a) as drug poisoning and drug abuse. Code nature of injury and external cause code for drug poisoning and drug abuse as indexed.
  
7. Place  
9 I (a) Mixed drug intoxication alcohol and cocaine T519 X45 T405 &X42  
Interpret I(a) as poisoning and code nature of injury and external cause code for alcohol and cocaine. Precede the external cause code for the cocaine poisoning with an ampersand.

## APPENDIX H

### Additional Drug Examples

---

8. Place I (a) Mixed drug intoxication (alcohol and cocaine) T519 X45 T405 &X42  
9 (b)  
II Used combination cocaine and alcohol F149 F109

Interpret I(a) as poisoning and code nature of injury and external cause code for alcohol and cocaine. Precede the external cause code for cocaine poisoning with an ampersand. In Part II, code cocaine use as indexed under Dependence, due to, cocaine, and alcohol as indexed under Use, alcohol.

9. Place I (a) Multiple drug intoxication including T509 &X44 T402 T424 T430  
9 (b) oxycodone, diazepam, and doxepin

Code the nature of injury code for drug NOS as first entry on I(a). Since the drugs are assigned to different external cause codes, code X44 followed by the nature of injury code for each drug reported.

10. Place I (a) Acute multiple drug intoxication (oxycodone T402 &X44 T424  
9 (b) and alprazolam)  
II Took overdose T509

Code I(a) nature of injury and external cause code for oxycodone and alprazolam intoxication. Since the drugs are assigned to different external cause codes, code X44. Code the nature of injury code for drug NOS in Part II.

11. Place I (a) Acute multiple drug intoxication (ethanol, T510 X45 T402 &X44 T424  
9 (b) oxycodone and alprazolam)

Interpret I(a) as alcohol poisoning and drug poisoning. Code the nature of injury and external cause for the alcohol and drugs. Since the drugs are assigned to different external cause codes, code X44 and precede with an ampersand.

## APPENDIX H

### Additional Drug Examples

---

12. Place I (a) Acute combined drug intoxication T509 &X44  
 9 (b) (oxycodone, with diazepam and ethyl T402 X45 T424 T510  
 (c) alcohol)

MOD II T509 F109

A

Accident

Took drugs and drank alcoholic beverages

Code the nature of injury for drug NOS as first entry on I(a). Since the drugs are assigned to different external cause codes, code X44. Code the nature of injury for each drug reported on I(b) and the nature of injury and external cause for alcohol. Code the nature of injury for drug NOS and code alcohol as indexed under Drinking, drank (alcohol).

13. Place I (a) Acute intoxication due to ethanol T510  
 9 (b) abuse, opiate abuse F101 F111  
MOD II Drug reaction T509 X44 &X45

A

Accident

Code I(a) to the nature of injury code for ethanol since this is the first substance reported in the “due to” position. Code I(b) as indexed. Code Part II to drug poisoning since drug NOS is reported and the certifier stated the death was due to an accident. Code the external code for ethanol poisoning as the last code in Part II and precede with an ampersand.

14. Place I (a) Intoxication T402  
 9 (b) Morphine, Cocaine poisoning T402 &X42 T405

Code I(a) to the nature of injury code for morphine since this is the first substance reported in the “due to” position. Code the nature of injury and external cause code for morphine and cocaine on I(b).

15. Place I (a) Acute intoxication due to the T404  
 9 (b) combined effects of fentanyl T404 X42 T406  
 (c) and opiates

Code I(a) to the nature of injury code for fentanyl since this is the first substance reported in the due to position. Code the nature of injury and external cause code for fentanyl and opiates on ((b).

## APPENDIX H

### Additional Drug Examples

---

16. Place I (a) Cardiac arrhythmia associated with hydroxyzine I499 T435 &X41  
9 (b) injection  
MOD (c)  
A II Hydroxyzine injection T435  

Accident
----------

Code first condition on I(a) as indexed. Code hydroxyzine injection as poisoning since it is a psychotropic drug and the certifier reported the death was due to an accident. Code nature of injury for hydroxyzine Part II.

17. I (a) Cardiac arrhythmia associated with hydroxyzine I499  
(b) injection  
(c)  
II Hydroxyzine injection

Code first condition on I(a) as indexed. No code required for the hydroxyzine injection since no complication is reported. It is considered drug therapy since the certifier did not report accident or undetermined in the manner of death block.

18. Place I (a) Acute cardiac arrhythmia precipitated by I499 T405 &X42 T406  
9 (b) cocaine and opiates  
MOD (c)  
A II Drug abuse, cocaine and opiates F141 F111  

Accident
----------

Code first condition on I(a) as indexed. Code cocaine and opiates as poisoning since the drugs are narcotics and the certifier reported the death was due to an accident. Code the nature of injury and external cause code for cocaine and opiate poisoning. Since the drugs are assigned to the same external cause code, code X42. Code cocaine abuse and opiates abuse as indexed in Part II.

19. Place I (a) Acute intravenous narcotism (heroin) F112  
9 (b)  
II Methadone overdose, heroin injection T403 &X42 T401

Code I(a) F112, acute intravenous heroin narcotism. Consider the methadone overdose and heroin injection as poisoning. Heroin is not used for medical care purposes.

## APPENDIX H

### Additional Drug Examples

---

20. Place I (a) Acute intravenous narcotism heroin overdose F192 T401 &X42  
9 II  
MOD  
A 

Accident
----------

Intrepret I(a) as two separate entities. Code acute intravenous narcotism as first entity and code a nature of injury and an external cause code for heroin overdose as second entity.

21. Place I (a) Acute intravenous narcotism F112  
9 (b) Morphine  
II Intravenous use of drugs F199

Consider I(b) as continuation of I(a). Code I(a) acute intravenous morphine narcotism and Part II as indexed.

22. I (a) Drug dependence (heroin, cocaine) F112 F142

Code I(a) heroin and cocaine dependence as indexed.

23. Place I (a) Renal failure N19  
9 (b) Drug induced hepatotoxicity T509 &X44

Code I(a) as indexed. Code I(b) as poisoning since toxicity (of a site) by a drug is one of the terms that is interpreted as poisoning.

24. Place I (a) Effects of cocaine and methamphetamine use F149 F159  
9 (b)  
MOD II Drug intake T509 &X44  
A 

Accident
----------

Code I(a) as indexed applying intent of certifier instructions for coding use of drugs. Code drug intake as poisoning since drug NOS is reported and the certifier reported the death was due to an accident.

## APPENDIX H

### Additional Drug Examples

---

25. Place I (a) Adverse effects of drugs T509 &X44  
9 II T509  
MOD Accident Subject took drugs  
A

Code I(a) to drug poisoning since drug NOS is reported and the certifier stated the death was due to an accident. Code the nature of injury for drug in Part II.

26. I (a) Gastric ulcer K259  
(b) Drug intake Y579  
(c) Arthritis &M139

Code the gastric ulcer as a complication of the drug reported on I(b). Code the E-code for drug therapy on I(b). It is considered drug therapy since the certifier did not indicate the death was due to an accident or it occurred under undetermined circumstances or the drug was taken in conjunction with alcohol. Code I(c) as indexed and precede with an ampersand.

27. Place I (a) Combined toxicity T659 &X44  
9 (b) Heroin and amphetamine T401 T436  
MOD II  
A Accident

Code I(a) to nature of injury for Toxicity NOS, T659 as indexed. Code external cause to X44 since the drugs are classified to different external cause codes.

28. Place I (a) Poisoning T659 &X44  
9 (b) Heroin and amphetamine T401 T436  
MOD II  
A Accident

Code I(a) to nature of injury for Poisoning NOS, T659 as indexed. Code external cause to X44 since the drugs are classified to different external cause codes.

## APPENDIX H

### Additional Drug Examples

---

29.	<u>Place</u> 9	I	(a) Mixed drug poisoning (cocaine, (b) opiate, ethanol)	T405 &Y12 T406 T510 Y15
	<u>MOD</u> C	II	Consumed ethanol with illicit drugs	F109 T509

Undetermined
--------------

Interpret I(a) as poisoning and code nature of injury and external cause for cocaine, opiate and ethanol. Precede the external cause for the drugs with an ampersand. In Part II, code consumed ethanol as indexed under Consumption, ethanol and code the nature of injury for drug.

30.	<u>Place</u> 9	I	(a) Subdural hematoma (b) Anticoagulation (c) Arrhythmia	I620 Y442 &I499
		II	Amiodarone lung toxicity	T462 &X44

Code I(a) as nontraumatic. Code the E-code for drug therapy on I(b). Code I(c) as indexed and precede with an ampersand to identify the reason for treatment. Code Part II as poisoning since toxicity (of a site) by a drug is one of the terms that is interpreted as poisoning.

31.	<u>MOD</u> N	I	(a) Cardiac Arrest (b) Bleeding (c) Over coumadinization	I469 &R5800 Y442
-----	-----------------	---	--	------------------------

Natural
---------

Code I(a) as indexed. Code the bleeding as a complication of the drug reported on I(c). Drug, medicament or biological substance is assumed to be used for medical care unless there are indications to the contrary.

## APPENDIX H

### Additional Drug Examples

32. <u>Place</u> 9	I	(a) Combined opiate and stimulant poisoning	T406	&X44	T509
		(b) Usage of hydrocodone and cocaine	F119	F149	
<u>MOD</u>	II		T406	T509	
A					

Accident

Used lethal combination of opiates and stimulant drugs

Code I(a) nature of injury and external cause for opiate and stimulant poisoning. Since the drugs are assigned to different external cause codes, code X44. Code I(b) as indexed applying intent of certifier instructions for use of drugs. Refer to Table of drugs and chemicals to find hydrocodone, T402. In Volume 1, the title of category T402 is “Other opioids”. Code hydrocodone use to Addiction, opioids, with fourth character .9, F119. In Part II, code the nature of injury for opiates and stimulant drugs, since “Lethal (amount) (dose) (quantity) of a drug” is interpreted to mean poisoning.

33. <u>Place</u> 9	I	(a) Combined analgesic and antihistaminic antidepressant poisoning	T398	&X44	T450	T432
		(b) Usage of fentanyl promethazine doxylamine	F199			
<u>MOD</u>	II		F199			
A						

Accident

Used combination of prescription drugs

Code I(a) nature of injury and external cause for analgesic, antihistaminic and antidepressant poisoning. Since the drugs are assigned to different external cause codes, code X44. Code I(b) and Part II as indexed applying intent of certifier instructions for use of drugs.

34. <u>Place</u> 9	I	(a) Combined ethanol and methadone intoxication	T510	X45	T403	&X42
	II	Toxic use of drug and ethanol	T509	T510		

Interpret I(a) as poisoning and code nature of injury and external cause code for ethanol and methadone. Precede the external cause code for the methadone poisoning with an ampersand. Interpret Part II as poisoning and code nature of injury for drug and ethanol.

# INDEX

---

## A

Abbreviations.....	379
Abortion.....	192
Abuse .....	225
Accident	
Air and Space .....	256
Motor Vehicle and Plane .....	257
Motor Vehicle, Homicide, Suicide, Undetermined .....	258
Acquired	
Congenital Defects (Anomaly) .....	34, 50, 64, 79, 143, 144
Less than 1 year.....	64
Less than 28 Days.....	64
Activity Codes .....	408
Acute	
Definition .....	69
Intoxication .....	425
Intravenous Narcotism .....	426, 427
Myocardial Infarction with 3 Month Duration.....	69
Myocarditis .....	185
Terms/Chart.....	70
Acute & Chronic	
Chart .....	70
Leukemia.....	160
Additional Drug Examples.....	423
Additional Information (AI)	
Amended Certificates .....	62
Birth Weight in Margin .....	201
Complications of Surgery.....	59
Does Not Modify or State Underlying Cause .....	61
Gives Primary Site of Neoplasm.....	61
Neoplasm with No Mention of Site .....	60
Twin .....	61
Types of Transports .....	247
Adhesions (Lowest Used Line) .....	345
Adjective Modifiers.....	28, 32
List.....	32
Preceding two different conditions .....	32
Age	
Child, Childhood.....	64
Abuse (Battering/Maltreatment) .....	267
Brain Damage reported due to .....	121
Limitations.....	66
Transports less than 14 years.....	251
Effect of Age of Decedent on Classification .....	63
Infant, Infantile .....	63
Gestation, early.....	201
Hypoglycemia.....	202
Hypomagnesemia .....	202
Less than 1 year.....	64

# INDEX

SIDS .....	213
Termination.....	202
Weight.....	201
Limitation.....	66
Newborn, Neonatal	
Less than 1 Year .....	64
Less than 28 Days.....	66, 67
Limitations (28 Days and Over).....	66
Over 5 Years (X60 – X84).....	67
Over/Under 1 year.....	67
AIDS/HIV Due to Blood Transfusion .....	372
Alcohol ( F101, F109, R780, T510, T519)	
Reported with Barbiturates .....	229, 301
Alcohol (F101, F109, R780, T510, T519) .....	303
Poisoning, Alcohol and Drugs Chart.....	301
With Analgesics, Sedatives, Narcotic and Psychotropic Drugs .....	309
Alcohol and Drug Examples – Appendix H.....	423
Alzheimer’s, Dementia .....	33, 393
Amended Certificates .....	62
Ammonia Intoxication .....	294
Ampersand (surgery) (medical) .....	305
Amputation	
Do Not Assume Disease .....	332
Leg (example).....	317
Stump.....	358
Anesthesia .....	366
For Surgery.....	366
Angiogram (example) .....	363
Anthrax – Terrorism.....	241
Aortic Stenosis <1 Yr.....	64
Apparently .....	50
Appendectomy .....	330
Surgical Example .....	339
Appendicitis .....	330
Arrested Pulmonary Tuberculosis .....	204
Arteriosclerosis and Arteriosclerotic	
Additional Modifier.....	30, 31
Cerebral, Sequela.....	211
Do Not Relate.....	79
Reported Due to Surgery .....	317
Arthritis	
(Acquired) (Any Type).....	78
With Contractures.....	78
With Deformity .....	78
Arthrosis (M199).....	135
Aspiration	
Ampersand and Exceptions .....	228
Pneumonia Due to Smoke .....	270
Reported with other External Causes.....	229
Threats to Breathing Tables.....	271
Assuming Nature of Injury	
Exceptions.....	240
Asterisk (*)	
Do Not Use.....	2

# INDEX

---

Unless Notified by NCHS.....	411
Asthma	
Childhood.....	64
Atrial Defect (Q210).....	143
ATV accident.....	254
Auricular Defect (Q211).....	143
<b>B</b>	
Battering.....	267
Biliary Cirrhosis NOS (K745).....	129
Birth Injury, Spinal Cord.....	122
Birth Weight.....	201
Bleeding Varices, Varix NOS (I859).....	124
Blood transfusion.....	372
Brain Damage, Child.....	121
Burns.....	244
Transport.....	253
<b>C</b>	
Carbon Monoxide (Poisoning).....	293, 303
Catheter, Catheterization.....	360
Cause Unknown.....	215, 216
Part II	
(How injury occurred)(Check box).....	216
Surgery.....	346
Caused by Above.....	41
Cesarean Delivery.....	197, 198
For Inertia Uterus (O622).....	140
Charts, Lists, Bullets, etc.	
Abbreviations.....	379
Activity Codes.....	408
Additional Information – Types of Transports.....	247
Anatomical Sites / Systems of Cancer.....	174
Codes to use with Surgery when Condition Not Reported.....	331
Common Sites of Metastasis.....	162
Complications of Drug Therapy.....	306
Do Not Make Assumption.....	309
Conditions Qualified Traumatic	
Bullet Entering / Exiting.....	265
Bullet, Gunshot, Shooting.....	263
Exceptions.....	235
Firearms.....	263
Injury NOS.....	265
Pedestrian Versus Any Vehicle.....	250
Reported With.....	234
Do Not Assume For These Conditions.....	332
Only Condition on Record.....	332
Do Not Relate / Modify These Conditions.....	79
Due To.....	37
E-Code.....	224
External Special Purposes.....	416
Gestation.....	201
HIV.....	33
Interpreting Time / Duration.....	72

# INDEX

---

Manner of Death.....	221
Misadventure Indications .....	370
Not Indicating Due To .....	39
Place of Injury .....	399
Poisoning by Drugs.....	296
Combining Alcohol and Drugs .....	301
Primary Site Unknown .....	178
Radiation.....	369
Ampersand.....	367
Induced .....	367
Placement of Codes .....	367
Reformat Up .....	38
Substitute Codes.....	410
Synonymous Sites .....	397
Terrorism .....	411
Threats to Breathing and Related conditions .....	271
Unknown Cause .....	216
Child, Childhood .....	267
Abuse (Battering / Maltreatment).....	267
Exception.....	268
Brain Damage Reported Due To .....	121
Homicide.....	267
Transports Less than 14 Years .....	251
Chronic	
And Acute .....	71
And Acute Preceding 2 or More Conditions .....	71
Chart .....	70
Condition One Year or More Due To Leprosy.....	203, 206
Condition One Year Or More Due To Polio.....	203, 205
Conditions Reported Due to	
Cerebrovascular Disease .....	211
Hyperalimentation .....	210
Inflammatory Disease of Central Nervous System.....	210
Obstetrical Cause .....	212
Rickets.....	209
Trachoma .....	206
Viral Encephalitis.....	207
Viral Hepatitis.....	208
Definition .....	69
Rheumatic Heart Disease.....	184
Cirrhosis	
Reported With	
Encephalopathy .....	81
Injury Liver .....	82
Codes	
Excessive .....	13
Codes for Place of Injury.....	399
Codes for Special Purposes	
SARS.....	422
Terrorism .....	418
Coding Causes of Death Nomenclature .....	8
Coding Transport Categories (V01 – V89).....	247, 251
Colostomy .....	344
Combined Effects of Two or more Drugs.....	312

# INDEX

---

Combining Alcohol and Drugs .....	301
Common Sites of Metastasis .....	162
Complications	
Administration of Drugs, Radiation, Instruments .....	365
Drug Induced (Stated) .....	298, 310
Complications (Surgery)	
Named Surgery .....	318
Conditions	
Drug Induced or Due To Drug .....	298
First Entry Lowest Used Line	
Ill-Defined .....	347, 348, 349, 351, 352, 353, 354, 355
Necessitating Surgery	
Exception – Appendectomy .....	330
Predating Surgery .....	318
Qualified as Traumatic	
Types of Transports .....	247
To Assume when Condition Not Reported (Partial List) .....	331
Conditions Reported in Part II .....	13, 42
Conflict in Durations .....	73
Congenital	
Anomaly NOS .....	79
Less Than 28 Days .....	64
Less than One Year .....	64
Conditions	
Due To Drug Therapy .....	298
Defects, Nephrosis .....	57
Defects, Plural .....	34
Do Not Relate .....	79
Hydrocephalus, Classified Congenital .....	200
Pregnancy Complicated By .....	195
Syphillis .....	65
Connecting Terms .....	36
Lists (Partial) .....	37, 38, 39
Consider Transports in Motion / Stationary .....	251
Contracture	
Arthritis (M169) .....	78
Joint .....	78
Contrast Medium .....	365
Coronary .....	34
Implied Disease .....	34
Cot death .....	213, 214
Coxarthrosis (M169) .....	133
Created Codes .....	15
C-Section .....	197, 198
Inert Uterus .....	140
<b>D</b>	
Date of Surgery Block .....	343
Death	
Example .....	37
SIDS .....	213, 214, 217, 394
Definitions	
Adjectival Modifiers .....	28
And Types of Diagnostic Entities .....	27

# INDEX

---

Multiple One Term Entity .....	29
Nature of Injury, External Cause .....	222
One Term Entity .....	27
Reported with Multiple Conditions .....	31
Deformity	
<1 Year of Age .....	64
Arthritis .....	78
Deletion of Part II .....	43
Delivery .....	195, 196
Dementia, Alzheimer's .....	33, 393
Diabetic	
Coma Necessitating Surgery .....	330
Diagnostic Term Chart .....	28
Diagnostic Terms	
Special HIV .....	33
Diaphragmatic Hernia in K44 .....	127
Digitalis Intoxication .....	311
Digitalis Toxicity .....	296
Disease	
Classified to Injury .....	81
Implied .....	34
Hypertension .....	34
Renal .....	34
Plural Form .....	34
Dissociative Disorder (F449) .....	115
Do Not Relate .....	79
Dog Bite .....	226
Doubtful Diagnosis	
Apparently .....	48
Doubtful Qualifying Expressions .....	48
Interpretations of .....	48
Perhaps .....	48
Possibly .....	48
Presumably .....	48
Drowning	
ATV .....	254
Motor Vehicle .....	251
Drug Examples (Appendix H) .....	423
Drug Use NOS (F199) .....	109
Drug(s)	
Administered 1 Year or More .....	315
Administered for Procedure .....	365
Anesthesia .....	308
Chemotherapy .....	307, 313
Do Not Assume a Disease Condition .....	310
Do Not Assume Sequela, One Year or More .....	315
E-code Followed by Complication .....	310
Examples (Appendix H) .....	423
Immunosuppression .....	313
For Surgery .....	314
Induced .....	310
Intoxication (Therapy) .....	311
One Drug in Part I, Another in Part II .....	299
Overdose .....	296

# INDEX

Percentage in Blood .....	300
Poisoning.....	292
Combination of Drugs / Poisoning .....	298
Statements .....	296
Reaction .....	308
Two or More Drugs in Therapy .....	312
Due To Named Medical Procedure (Steps 1-5) .....	359
Duration	
Conditions in box .....	47
Conflict in Durations .....	73
Do Not Use to Qualify Condition Congenital .....	72
Inconsistent	
Drug Therapy.....	307
Prefer .....	69
Spaces .....	69
Span of Dates .....	73
Two Conditions with One Duration .....	72
Dysmenorrhea (N946) .....	139
Dysplasia of Lung NOS (Q336)	
Anything Indexed to Q336, see Intent of Certifier.....	144
<b>E</b>	
Early Infancy .....	201
E-Code.....	224
Order of Entry with Complications .....	310
Edema (Acute, Chronic)	
Do Not Relate.....	80
Due To Inhaled Chemicals.....	270
Due To Radiation .....	368
Effect of Duration on Assignment of Codes.....	69
Effects of External Cause of Injury and External Cause of Poisoning .....	218
Embolism	
From a Site .....	78
Implied Site of Disease.....	74
To a Site .....	78
Encephalopathy	
Name Implies Site, Do Not Relate.....	81
Special Diagnostic Entities AIDS / HIV.....	33
Endocrine / Metabolic Disorders, see Infant.....	201
Enema	
Barium.....	365, 366
Water (tap) .....	371
Epilepsy (Traumatic) .....	236
Erythremia (C940).....	98
Exacerbation .....	71
Examples	
Due To Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation .....	372
Fracture Site Qualified Pathological.....	146
Non-Union.....	376
Old Fracture .....	376
Reported with Laceration, Contusions, etc.....	243
Sequela .....	373
Surgical Assumption.....	331
Surgical Example .....	305

# INDEX

---

Transports (In Motion, Stationary) .....	251
Exceptions	
Conditions Classifiable to	
I20 - I25 except I250.....	30
Exceptions To Relating and Modifying (example) .....	79
Excessive Codes To Delete, per line, per record.....	13
External Cause	
Accident NOS .....	231
Anthrax .....	241
Aspiration, Ingestion, Inhalation,.....	286, 287, 288, 289, 290, 291
Assumption Of Nature Of Injury Code When Not Reported, also with Disease Reported .....	240
Burns.....	244
Child Abuse, Battering and Other Maltreatment.....	267
Exceptions, Specifies Homicide .....	268
Complications of	
Cause Code Concept .....	218
Medical and Surgical Care.....	218, 269, 304
Medical Care .....	359
Medical Procedures other than Surgery .....	359
Prophylactic/Non Therapeutic Surgery.....	336
Radiation During Medical Care .....	367
Surgery .....	367
Surgical Procedures (List Not All Inclusive) .....	316
Compression Chest, Crushed Chest .....	271, 284, 285
Conditions Qualified As Traumatic .....	234
Exception Emphysema, Encephalitis, Meningitis .....	235
Exceptions if Due to Nontraumatic Condition .....	234
No Provisions To Code Traumatic .....	236, 237
Stated Traumatic (See List) .....	236
Traumatic Form Only When Stated.....	236
Drowning and Submersion .....	271, 272, 273
Results Of Motor Vehicle Accident .....	251
Drugs, Medicaments, And Biological Substances Causing Adverse Effects in Therapeutic Use .....	304, 306, 366
E - Code Only.....	224
Event Unspecified .....	231
Evidence of Residual Effects .....	203
Falls .....	260
Firearms And Firearm Injuries .....	263
Fires (Includes Burns, Gases, Fumes).....	271, 278, 279, 280, 281
Hanging And Mechanical Strangulation.....	274, 275, 276, 277
Implied Site Of Injury .....	81, 232
Ingestion, Inhalation Of Gasses Fumes, Vapors.....	271, 282, 283
Lightning .....	225, 261
Manner Of Death .....	220
Misadventures to Patients During Surgical And Medical Care .....	304, 370
Most Specific.....	229
Most Specific.....	226
Multiple Injuries.....	242
N and E Code List .....	225
N Code Only List.....	224
Nature Of Injury Without Mention Of External Cause.....	231
Place Of Occurrence .....	220
Placement Of Nature Of Injury .....	226
Order of Entry .....	226

# INDEX

Poisoning.....	292
Poisoning By Alcohol and Drugs.....	301
Poisoning By Combination Of Drugs .....	298
Poisoning By Drugs .....	109, 296, 309
Specified Types/Sites Of Injuries.....	246
Use Of Ampersand .....	228, 305, 367
Use Of Tabular List.....	219
X590 – X599 .....	231
Externals	
Fractures .....	231
<b>F</b>	
Fall, Fell.....	260
Building .....	219
Examples.....	235, 236, 260
Exiting, Entering Transport .....	252
Ladder .....	235, 236
Stairs .....	229
Traumatic Cerebral Thrombosis .....	236
Traumatic Coma.....	237
Fibrosis	
Radiation.....	369, 370
Firearms, see External .....	263
Self Inflicted NOS .....	266
With Injury (Bullet, Entering, Exiting, Shot, Etc.) .....	265
Format	
Condition Entered Above Line 1(a) .....	39
Condition Reported As Due To 1(a), 1(b), or 1 (c).....	41
Condition Reported Between Lines In Part I.....	40
Conditions In Duration Box .....	47
Conditions Reported In Part II.....	42
Connecting Terms .....	36
Death .....	37
Deletion of Due To.....	42
More than 4 Due To Statements .....	36, 58
Not Indicating a Due To Relationship .....	39
Numbering Of Causes Reported In Part I (Partial) .....	44
Punctuation Marks.....	45
Reformat Up .....	38
Reported Between Lines.....	40
Reported In Part II.....	42
Same Line.....	39
Fracture (any site) (T142) .....	146
Bilateral, Both, Multiple.....	242
Circumstances Unknown .....	231
Examples.....	253
Fracture Site Qualified Pathological (All Reported On Certificate as Pathological Of That Site) .....	146
Non-Union.....	376
Old Fracture .....	376
Reported With Laceration, Contusions, etc. ....	242
Sequela.....	373
Surgical Example .....	305
Transports (In Motion, Stationary).....	251
Osteoporosis.....	147

# INDEX

---

Spontaneous .....	147
Fumes & Vapors (Respiratory Conditions).....	269
<b>G</b>	
Gangrene (Necrosis)	
Adjectival Modifier Reported With Multiple Conditions .....	31
Diabetic.....	317
Coma Necessitating Surgery .....	330
Garbage Truck Accident.....	259
Gastrectomy .....	344
Gastrointestinal Bypass .....	322
Genitourinary Conditions Due To Surgical Procedure .....	327
Gonarthrosis (M179) .....	134
Gout (M109) .....	131
Gunshot Wound	
Age less than five .....	67
<b>H</b>	
Hanging, Strangulation (Mechanical), see also Threats to Breathing.....	274
Healed.....	52
Heart Defect (Q212) .....	143
Hematoma	
Non Traumatic .....	83
Subdural With Non-Traumatic Condition	
Natural Box Checked .....	83, 84
Traumatic.....	83
Hemolytic Anemia (D589).....	100
Hemorrhage	
Alveolar (Lung).....	126
Chart And Examples.....	238
During Surgery .....	370
Misadventure.....	370
Traumatic.....	238
Hemorrhage (GI)(Traumatic) .....	236
Hemorrhagic Purpura NOS (D693) .....	102
History of .....	52
HIV / AIDS	
Due To Blood Transfusion (Example).....	372
Related Conditions	
Treat as Separate One-Term Entity.....	33
HIV/AIDS Due to Blood Transfusion .....	372
<u>Home</u> .....	399, 400
Homicide	
Transports.....	258
House	
Fire With Lightning.....	261
Struck By Lightning.....	261
Hyperaldosteronism (E269).....	106
Hyperglycemia (surgery).....	326
Hyperparathyroidism (E213) .....	105
Hypoplasia of Lung (Q336) .....	144
Hypothermia, see Exposure.....	229, 261
Hypothyroidism .....	15, 324

# INDEX

---

I

I20 - I25 except I250 - Exception .....	30
Identical Codes	
Different Lines.....	13
External Codes .....	218
Same Line.....	13
Illegible Entries .....	55
Immunosuppression .....	313, 314, 315
Implication of Malignancy .....	180
Does Not Apply .....	181
Implied Disease.....	34
Coronary .....	34
Implied Site of Disease Condition .....	74
Infant, Infantile	
Endocrine/Metabolic Disorders .....	201
Infarction	
Complications as first entry on lowest used line .....	342
Conditions of Different Site .....	75
Conditions of Unspecified Site .....	74
Effect of Duration.....	69
Sequela of Cerebral.....	211
Infection	
Exceptions to relating .....	79
Injury	
Birth trauma.....	145
Combination Code, code each site separately.....	27
Exceptions (Do Not Relate) .....	232
Injury (ies) (Generalized)(Internal)(Multiple) .....	232
Activity Codes .....	408
As Disease Conditions .....	81
Assume Nature of .....	240
By Terrorism.....	417
Homicide.....	267
Multiple.....	242
N and E Codes .....	225
Nature of.....	223
NOS .....	234
Placement of codes.....	226
Reported due to.....	265
S000 - T149 (Birth Trauma) .....	145
Single site .....	243
Specified types .....	246
Intent of Certifier	
Alveolar Hemorrhage.....	126
Arthrosis (M199).....	135
Biliary Cirrhosis NOS (K745) .....	129
Bleeding Varices, Varices (I839).....	124
Brain Damage, Newborn.....	142
Cataract (H269).....	123
Cerebral Sclerosis (G379).....	119
Cesarean Delivery for Inertia Uterus (O622) .....	140
Coxarthrosis (M169) .....	133
Diaphragmatic Hernia in K44 .....	127

# INDEX

Dissociative Disorder (F449) .....	115
Drug Use NOS - Named Drug Use (F11- F16, F18- F19) .....	109
Dysmenorrhea (N946) .....	139
Dysplasia of Lung NOS (Q336) .....	144
Erythromia (C940) .....	98
Fracture (any site)(T142).....	146
General Paresis (A521).....	89
Gonarthrosis (M179).....	134
Gout (M109) .....	131
Hemolytic Anemia (D589).....	100
Hemorrhagic Purpura NOS (D693).....	102
Hyperaldosteronism (E269) .....	106
Hyperparathyroidism (E213).....	105
Hypoplasia of Lung NOS (Q336).....	144
Injury (S000 - T149).....	145
Intracranial Non Traumatic hemorrhage of Fetus and Newborn (P52) .....	142
Kyphosis (M402) .....	136
Lactase Deficiency (E730) .....	107
Lupus Erythematosus (L930), Lupus .....	130
Mental Disorder (any F99) .....	117
Myopathy (G729).....	120
Organisms and Infections NOS (B99).....	92
Osteonecrosis (M879).....	138
Paralysis (any G81, G82, G83 excluding senile paralysis) .....	122
Personality Change (Enduring) (F629) .....	116
Personality Disorder (F609) .....	116
Pneumoconiosis (J64) .....	125
Polyarthrosis (M159) .....	132
Polycythemia (D45).....	99
Psychosis (any F29) .....	114
Psychotic Episode NOS (F239) .....	113
Scoliosis (M419).....	137
Sideroblastic Anemia (D643).....	101
Starvation NOS (T730) .....	148
Thrombocytopenia (D696).....	103
Tobacco Use (F179).....	112
Viral Hepatitis as Chronic Viral Hepatitis .....	91
Intoxication by Drug .....	297
<b>K</b>	
Kyphosis (M402) .....	136
<b>L</b>	
Laceration	
Misadventure.....	370
Non traumatic fetus and newborn .....	142
Lactase Deficiency (E730) .....	107
Lesion	
With malignant complications .....	182
Less than 28 weeks Gestation of: .....	201
Less than 5 Yrs	
Suicide (X60-X84)(Code Acc).....	67, 218
Lethal .....	296, 430
Due to disease.....	295

# INDEX

---

Lightning .....	261
LSD .....	309
Lung - Special Instruction.....	163
<b>M</b>	
Major Revisions 2008	
Acute Exacerbation .....	71
N & E List	
Firearm, any caliber	
moved from E list .....	225
Punctuation Marks.....	46
Railway Crossing	
Traffic for V05- .....	249
Malignant Hypertension .....	42
Malignant Neoplasms	
All Sites but one Qualified Metastatic .....	175
All Sites Metastatic or on the List .....	174
All Sites Qualified Metastatic.....	174
Anatomical System .....	174
Categories .....	152
Coding Concept.....	27
Common Sites List.....	162
Implication of Malignancy .....	180
Independent (primary) sites .....	159
Lymphatic, Hematopoietic.....	165
Mass or lesion with malignant neoplasms.....	182
Metastases.....	162, 180
Common sites .....	162
NOS .....	180
Metastatic	
From a Site .....	168
More Than One Site Qualified Metastatic .....	174
Morphology Implying Site and Independent Anatomical Site .....	175
Multiple Sites .....	164
Neoplasm Stated to be Secondary.....	155
No Site With Morphological Type.....	172, 173
Other Morphological Types Of Neoplasms.....	158
Primary Site.....	163
Indicated .....	155
Unknown.....	178
Reject Coding .....	56
Secondaries.....	155
Single Morphological Type and Site.....	171
Site Specific Neoplasms .....	155
Sites with Prefixes or Imprecise Definitions .....	181
Special Instruction - Lung.....	163
Special Instruction - Lymph Nodes .....	163
Terms Synonymous With Metastasis or Metastatic .....	169
Two or More Sites Metastatic	
C40, C41, C42, C43, C44, C45, C46, C47, C49, C70, C71, C72 .....	173
C80 .....	172
Without Specification of Site .....	154
Manner of Death .....	220
Homicide, Suicide (Transports).....	258

# INDEX

---

Marks	
Maternal (Diabetes).....	202
Medical Procedures.....	359
Meningioma, subdural hematoma .....	82
Meningitis	
Traumatic.....	235
Mental Disorder (Any F99) .....	117
Metastatic	
All Sites but one Qualified Metastatic .....	175
All Sites Stated Metastatic .....	176
Metastatic Mesothelioma .....	172, 173
Metastatic mesothelioma or Kaposi's sarcoma. Kaposi's Sarcoma.....	30, 234, 268, 303, 330
Metastatic Neoplasms	
of the Same Site (whether stated metastatic or not) .....	177
Metastatic Neoplasms (see also Malignant Neoplasms)	
Single Type Other Than Common Site .....	171
Site Specific .....	170
Misadventure (Surgical/Medical) .....	304, 370
Misadventures Surgical / Medical .....	370
More than	
One External per reocrd.....	229
Motor Vehicle NOS is not a car.....	247
Multiple Injuries	
Bilateral.....	242
Both.....	242
More than One Site.....	243
Multiple.....	242
Single Site.....	243
Multiple One-Term Entity.....	29
Exceptions.....	30
<b>N</b>	
Natural Cause (Check box).....	221
Neoplasm, Neoplasms (see also Malignant Neoplasms)	
Complications of Drugs.....	306
Complications of Surgical Procedures.....	149, 316
Do Not Relate.....	79
Morphological Types.....	150
Newborn or Neonatal	
Endocrine / Metabolic Disorders .....	201
P703 - P720, P722 - P749.....	201
Nontherapeutic Surgery .....	336
Numbering of Causes Reported in Part I .....	44
<b>O</b>	
Occlusion	
Ill-Defined (I99) .....	346
Lowest Used Line in Part I.....	342
NOS reported.....	78
Of a Site.....	286, 288
Old	
Myocardial Infarction.....	61
Old Injuries (dates, no dates).....	376
Old Polio .....	205

# INDEX

One-Term Entity .....	27
Open Verdict Certificate .....	218, 220
Order of Entry	
Drugs .....	311
General .....	13
N&E .....	226
Organisms and Infections NOS (B99).....	92
<b>P</b>	
PAM .....	294
Paralysis	
Less than 1 year .....	63
Parentheticals, Parentheses .....	32
Percentage of Burns .....	245
Percentage of Drugs in Blood .....	300
Perinatal Conditions (P703-P720, P722-P749) .....	202
Place of Occurrence of External Cause .....	220
Plural	
Form of Disease .....	34
Pneumoconiosis (J64) .....	125
Pneumonia	
Complications of Surgery .....	333
Due to trauma .....	236
Exceptions to Modifying .....	79
Infectious Conditions .....	92
Lowest Used Line Complication .....	343
Operative Delivery (Pregnancy) .....	197
Parenthetical .....	32
Post Operative .....	333
Qualified as Post Operative .....	337
Traumatic .....	236
With R00-R99 .....	80
Pneumonia with gangrene .....	80
Polyarthrosis (M159) .....	132
Polycythemia (D45) .....	99
Post Op .....	336
Postmortem .....	54
Post-Operative List	
Qualified Post Operative .....	336
Postsurgical Conditions .....	332
Pregnancy, Childbirth, Puerperium .....	190
Abortion .....	192
Anesthetic .....	196
Childbirth .....	194
C-Section .....	197, 198
HIV .....	191
Operation .....	197
Presumably (End of Line) .....	48
Preterm Delivery .....	201
Preterm Labor .....	201
Probably (End of Line) .....	48
Beginning of Line (Part II) .....	49
Products of Combustion .....	279
Prophylactic Surgery .....	336

# INDEX

Psychosis (Any F29) .....	114
Korsakov's (F106).....	114
Psychotic Episode NOS (F239) .....	113
Punctuation Marks .....	45
<b>R</b>	
R02.....	80
R02 Hemorrhage.....	80
Radiation.....	225, 368, 369, 370, 372, 378, 418
Fibrosis.....	370
Railway Crossing	
Traffic, V05-.....	249
Relating and Modifying	
Do not relate	
Hemorrhage .....	80
Do Not Relate	
Arteriosclerosis .....	79
Congenital Anomaly NOS .....	79
Hernias .....	77
Hypertension.....	79
Infection NOS .....	79
Neoplasms.....	79
Paralysis .....	79
Ulcers .....	77
Hemorrhage.....	80
Residual Effects (Sequela).....	203
Rheumatic Heart Diseases .....	183, 184
Active and Chronic.....	184
Heart Diseases Described as Rheumatic.....	183
Rheumatic Fever and Heart Disease Jointly Reported.....	183
Valvular Disease Not Indicated to be Rheumatic.....	187
Valvular Disease Reported Due To.....	188
Valvular Disease Reported Jointly.....	186
Rickets.....	209
Rule Out (Ruled Out, R/O) .....	54
Russian Roulette .....	264
<b>S</b>	
Scoliosis (M419).....	137
Second Hand Smoke .....	240
Self-Inflicted	
Gunshot .....	264
Sequela	
Created Codes	
Cerebral Infarction .....	22
Intracerebral Hemorrhage .....	22
Stroke .....	23
External.....	375
Paralysis, Traumatic .....	90
Terrorism (U00 - U99).....	418
Sequela of	
Acute Poliomyelitis (B91).....	203, 205
Cerebrovascular Disease.....	211
Direct Obstetric Cause .....	212

# INDEX

---

External Causes (Y850 -Y899).....	373
Hyperalimentations (E68) .....	210
Infectious and Parasitic Diseases (B948-B949) .....	208
Inflammatory Diseases of Central Nervous System (G09) .....	210
Injuries, Poisonings, and Other Consequences of External Cause .....	373
Leprosy (B92) .....	203, 206
Malnutrition and Other Nutritional Deficiencies (E640 - E649).....	209
Special Note for Infectious Categories.....	203
Trachoma (B940).....	206
Tuberculosis (B900 - B909) .....	204
Viral Encephalitis (B941) .....	207
Viral Hepatitis (B942) .....	208
Sex Limitations.....	68
Sideroblastic Anemia (D643) .....	101
SIDS.....	213, 214, 217, 394
Slash.....	45, 46, 73, 151
Snowmobile .....	247, 254
Space Accident.....	256
Stationary Transports	
Alighting, Boarding, Entering, Leaving, Exiting .....	252
Status of Victim.....	250
Status Post .....	340
Status Post Op .....	336
Example .....	341
Subacute (Code Acute) .....	70
Subdural Hematoma.....	82
Surgery	
Brain Tumor Removal .....	317
for Bowel Obstruction.....	337
Pneumonia postgastrectomy.....	337
PO Bowel Obstruction.....	340
PO Ileus .....	340
PO peritonitis .....	338
PO Wound Infection .....	339
Postgastrectomy Dumping Syndrome .....	337
Reason for Postsurgical Condition .....	332
Relating Surgery to Specified Site .....	356
Cancers.....	357
Reported Due To Surgery.....	316
Synonymous Sites.....	397
<b>T</b>	
Therapy.....	362
Drugs.....	365
Instruments.....	365
Named .....	364
Radiation.....	365
Threats to Breathing.....	271
Thrombocytopenia (D696) .....	103
Toxic Conditions .....	295
Toxic Poisoning .....	292
Due to Disease .....	294
Toxicity	
Poisoning By Drugs .....	295

# INDEX

---

Poisoning Due to a Disease .....	294
Transport Accident .....	249
Traffic / Nontraffic .....	249
Traumatic Disease Condition (coma, etc) .....	237
Emphysema, Encephalitis, Meningitis .....	235
Tuberculosis (see Arrested) .....	204
Two or more External Causes .....	229
<b>U</b>	
Ulcer With Internal Hemorrhage .....	75
Unconsciousness .....	262
Underlying Cause .....	8
Undetermined	
Manner of Death .....	220
Unknown, Possibly .....	216
Use of Ampersand .....	228
Surgery .....	305
<b>V</b>	
Varices NOS (I859) .....	124
Viral Hepatitis	
Intent of Certifier .....	91
VS (versus) .....	50, 51, 251, 255, 291
<b>W</b>	
Water Transport Accidents .....	256
Weight (Early Infancy, Newborn) .....	201
<b>Y</b>	
Y40 – Y59	
Drugs/Biologicals in Therapy .....	304
Y60 – Y69	
Misadventures (Surgical/Medical) .....	304, 370
Y83	
Abnormal (Surgical) .....	304
Y84	
Abnormal (Medical) .....	304